Chapter

6.1

External masonry walls

This chapter gives guidance on meeting the Technical Requirements for external masonry walls.

For figure reference tables in this chapter, please go to the end of the chapter

Introduction

This chapter provides guidance on external masonry which is used for the outer and inner leaves of a cavity wall construction, cladding to framed structures and to the limited solid wall construction used in housebuilding such as garages. General guidance on masonry cavity wall construction including the masonry inner leaf of a cavity wall are also provided within this chapter.

The guidance is consistent and complementary to that provided within Chapter 6.9 Curtain walling and cladding which should be used for products and systems falling under that description.

There is a strong link to all chapters in Part 6 of this standards, particularly Chapters 6.2 – 6.5, 6.10 and 6.11.

The aim of this chapter is to provide clarity for external and cavity walls constructed of clay and concrete bricks and blocks as well as natural stone.

Definitions for this chapter

Aggregate concrete masonry unit	Masonry unit manufactured from cementitious binder, aggregates and water and which may contain admixtures and additions and colouring pigments and other materials incorporated or applied during or after unit manufacture
Aircrete masonry unit	Masonry unit manufactured from hydraulic binders such as cement and/or lime, combined with siliceous based fine material, cell generating material and water and cured with high pressure steam in autoclaves
Blocks	Masonry units which when used in its normal aspect exceeds the length or width or height specified for a coursing unit (typical brick size). A common block size is 440mm long x 100mm wide x 215mm high
Bricks	Are designated in terms of their intended use. The coordinating sizes for bricks is generally: 225mm long x 112.5mm wide x 75mm high. The work sizes are in effect coordinating sizes less a nominal thickness of 10mm for the mortar joint
Clay masonry unit	Masonry unit made from clay or other argillaceous materials with or without sand, fuel or other additives fired at a sufficiently high temperature to achieve a ceramic bond
Coastal locations	A site within a distance of 500m from the general coastline of the United Kingdom
Compressive strengths	Where these are quoted in this chapter, they refer to the declared compressive strengths of masonry units
Coordinating size	Size of a coordinating space allocated to a masonry unit including allowances for joints
Coursing unit	Masonry unit, commonly of brick sizes, used to assist in achieving the storey height of a wall in conjunction with full height blocks
Fully filled cavity	The insulation thickness is such that the it will be in full contact with both leaves of masonry when the building meets normal construction tolerances
Manufactured stone masonry unit	Facing masonry unit having at least one exposed face with a close structure formed from either one or two homogeneous mixtures of aggregate, cementitious binder and other materials moulded under pressure and/or vibration and with or without further processing, intended to resemble and be used as an alternative to natural stone
Masonry	Assemblage of masonry units laid in a specified pattern and joined together with mortar
Masonry unit	Preformed component intended for use in masonry construction
Natural stone masonry unit	Masonry unit manufactured from natural stone
Recessed joints	Where the mortar is raked out, about 5mm from the wall face. There are certain exposure conditions where these should not be used (clause 6.1.6)
Work size	Size of masonry unit specified for its manufacture, to which the actual size conforms within permissible deviations

6.1.1 Compliance

Also see: Chapter 2.1

External walls shall comply with the Technical Requirements.

External masonry walls that comply with the guidance in this chapter will generally be acceptable.

6.1.2 Provision of information

Designs and specifications shall be produced in a clearly understandable format, include all relevant information and be distributed to the appropriate personnel.

Designs and specifications should be issued to site supervisors, relevant specialist subcontractors and suppliers, and include the following information:

- construction materials
- wall layout with all dimensions shown
- position and size of openings
- wall layouts and elevations with dimensions shown
- coursing of bricks and blocks in relation to storey heights and opening positions
- all junctions, indicating position of DPCs and cavity trays (isometric sketches are recommended for complicated junctions)
- position and type of lintels
- position of restraint straps
- cavity closers
- reveals
- how support is given to other elements, eg padstones and wall plates
- movement joints
- acceptable methods of pointing or mortar joint finish
- type of insulant to be used
- type, spacing and location of wall ties
- position of fire breaks, cavity barriers and other passive fire-stopping; the required fire resistance period should be specified
- the setting out dimensions should be masonry co-ordinating dimensions.

Where proprietary products are to be used, manufacturers generally have specific requirements for fixing and/or assembly. This information should also be made available for reference on site so that work can be carried out satisfactorily in accordance with the design and specification.

6.1.3 Structural design

External masonry shall be designed to support and transfer loads to foundations safely and without undue movement. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) compliance with relevant standards
b) lateral restraint
c) concentrated loads
d) bonding
e) movement joints
f) damp proof courses.

Compliance with relevant standards

Design of masonry walls should comply with relevant standards:

Structural design	BS EN 1996-1-1 'Eurocode 6. Design of masonry structures. General rules for reinforced and unreinforced masonry structures' PD 6697 'Recommendations for the design of masonry structures to BS EN 1996-1-1 and BS EN 1996-2'
Intermediate floors, roofs and walls designed to provide lateral restraint to external walls	BS 8103 (all parts) 'Structural design of low-rise buildings'
Ancillary components	BS EN 845-1 'Specification for ancillary components for masonry. Wall ties, tension straps, hangers and brackets' BS EN 845-2 'Specification for ancillary components for masonry. Lintels' BS EN 845-3 'Specification for ancillary components for masonry. Bed joint reinforcement of steel meshwork'
Walls of homes, or buildings containing homes, over three storeys high	Designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5

Lateral restraint

Lateral restraint provided by concrete floors:
Concrete floors, with a minimum bearing of 90mm onto the wall, can provide adequate restraint. Concrete floors running parallel to, and not built into, walls require restraint straps to provide restraint to the wall.

Lateral restraint provided by timber floors:
Timber joisted floors can provide adequate restraint when joists are carried by ordinary hangers to BS EN 845-1, and connected to the wall with restraint straps. In buildings up to two storeys, timber joisted floors can provide adequate restraint without strapping when:

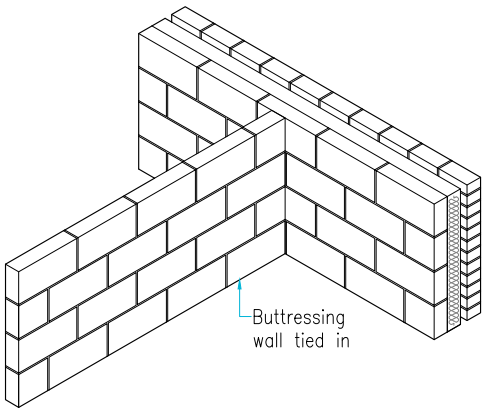
- the minimum bearing onto masonry is 90mm (or 75mm onto a timber wall plate), or
- joists are carried by BS EN 845-1 restraint-type hangers with performance equivalent to a restraint strap spaced at a maximum of 2m centres.

Lateral restraint provided by buttressing walls

The ends of every wall should be bonded or otherwise securely tied throughout their full height to a buttressing wall, pier or frame. Long walls may be provided with intermediate buttressing walls, piers or support dividing the wall into distinct lengths within each storey with each distinct length being a supported wall for the purposes of this section.

The intermediate buttressing walls, piers or supports should provide lateral restraint to the full height of the supported wall, and they may be staggered at each storey.

Figure 1: Lateral restraint by buttressing wall



Lateral restraint and acoustics

The ends of separating walls are only tied into the inner leafs and do not have multiple ties across the separating wall cavity at the end of the wall.

Concentrated loads

Concentrated loads should be designed by a suitably qualified Engineer, for example at the bearing of trimmers, lintels, multi-ply trusses or steel beams.

Where bearing stresses under concentrated loads are greater than the strength of the supporting masonry wall, padstones and spreaders should be provided.

Padstones and spreaders may be required, to support concentrated loads.

Bonding

Where partition walls abut an external wall constructed of similar materials, fully bonded or tied joints are acceptable. Partition walls may act as buttressing walls mentioned above. To reduce the risk of cracking, a tied joint is preferable where:

- materials have dissimilar shrinkage or expansion characteristics, eg dense concrete and aircrete concrete
- there is a connection between a load-bearing wall on foundations and a non load-bearing wall supported on a ground-bearing slab.

Tied joints should be formed using expanded metal, wire wall ties or a proprietary equivalent, spaced at maximum 300mm intervals. Dissimilar materials should not be used in the same wall (eg clay bricks as “make up” courses in concrete blockwork walls).

Movement joints

Movement joints should be included in long lengths of walling to control expansion or contraction of masonry panels and reduce unsightly cracking and detailed so that stability is maintained. Where possible, joints should be hidden in corners, or behind rainwater pipes, and:

- run the full height of the superstructure masonry wall
- should not coincide with window and door openings
- continue from those provided in the substructure to the superstructure (movement joints may be needed in the superstructure and not in the substructure, providing suitable allowance is made for relative movement).

Vertical movement joints should be provided in the outer leaf, in accordance with Table 1.

Table 1: Suitable dimensions and spacings for movement joints[1]

Material	Joint width (mm)	Normal spacing (m)
Clay brick	16[2]	10 – 12
Dense concrete bricks	10	7.5 – 9
Lightweight concrete block and brick (aircrete or using lightweight aggregates)[3]	10	6[4]
Dense concrete block and reconstructed walling (using dense aggregate)[3]	10	7.5 – 9[3]
Any masonry in a parapet wall	10	Half the above spacings and 1.5 from corners (double frequency)
Natural stone masonry	10[5]	15 – 20[6]

Notes

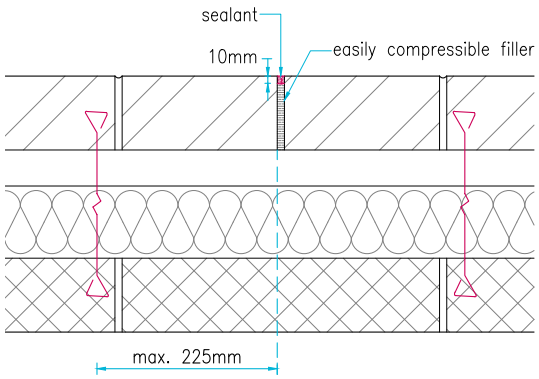
1 Manufacturer's guidance for the provision of movement joints and bed joint reinforcement should be considered.
2 For clay bricks, the joint width in mm should be spacing in metres+30%. i.e at 8m movement joint spacing the joint width should be 10mm.
3 Lightweight concrete masonry units are generally made of aggregates that have a gross density not exceeding 1,500 kg/m³. Dense concrete masonry units are generally made of aggregate that have a gross density exceeding 1,500 kg/m³.
4 The ratio of length to height of the panels should generally not exceed 3:1.
5 As defined within PD 6697.
6 Located no more than 7.5m from an external corner.

The spacing of the first movement joint from a return should not be more than half of the dimension in Table 1.

Movement joints are not generally necessary in the inner leaf of cavity walls, but consideration should be given to providing:

- movement joints in rooms with straight unbroken lengths of wall over 6m
- bed joint reinforcement as an alternative to movement joints in areas of risk, eg under window openings.

Figure 2: Movement joint sealant



Wall ties should be provided on either side of movement joints, in accordance with Clause 6.1.18.

Where masonry walls form panels in a framed structure, movement joints should be provided in accordance with BS EN 1996-2 and PD 6697.

Movement joints should be formed using the correct materials, and account taken of:

- joint width and depth
- anticipated movement and capability of the material
- surface preparation and backing materials
- likely design life of the joint.

Clay bricks expand and require movement joints formed from easily compressible materials, such as:

- flexible cellular polyethylene
- cellular polyurethane
- foam rubber.

Concrete bricks and blocks contract, and the following materials are acceptable for use in contraction joints:

- hemp
- fibreboard
- cork.

The joints should be formed using semi-rigid, closed cell polyethylene or other suitable materials.

To perform effectively a sealant in a movement joint should be applied against a suitable debonding joint filler board/backing rod so that the sealant only adheres to the two opposing masonry faces.

Damp proof courses

Damp proof course (DPC) materials should conform to BS 8215 and PD 6697 Table 1.

Designers should pay adequate attention to the characteristics of the materials chosen for DPCs. Materials that squeeze out or are impaired on highly stressed walls are undesirable and should not be used as DPCs. DPCs adhesion to mortar and their ability to resist sliding and/or shear stresses should be considered especially in relation to lateral loading.

Where DPCs are required to provide resistance to shear eg in frame or crosswalled structures, the design of wall panels should reflect this and the deemed to satisfy rule of Approved Document A or equivalent regulation may not be appropriate.

In general, advice on the resistance to compression, tension, sliding and shear should be sought from the manufacturers of the DPC.

6.1.4 Fire resistance

External cavity walls shall adequately resist the passage of fire.

The cavity in the masonry cavity wall of a building can provide a route for the spread of smoke and flames. Cavities should be closed with cavity barriers, in accordance with Building Regulations.

Cavity barriers should be provided:

- at the edges of cavities, including around openings eg window and doors,
- where the cavity abuts compartment walls and floors,
- where to break up extensive cavities which could act as a route for fire spread.

Cavity barriers need to achieve a minimum of 30 minutes' integrity (E 30) and 15 minutes' insulation (I 15).

Vertical cavity barriers, where required, should extend below the DPC and care should be taken to ensure continuity of cavity barriers where cavity barriers are installed at DPC level.

Where cavity barriers are used, they should be sized appropriately for the dimensions of the cavity. Normally they are installed under compression and as such maintaining the design cavity width is critical.

Significant reduction in cavity width will mean that the barrier cannot be fitted without creating problems for the following leaf of masonry. Significant widening in the cavity width will mean that the barrier may not be fitted with the appropriate level of compression and its performance may be impaired.

Concealed spaces

Where cladding is fitted to a masonry substrate wall, cavity barriers should be provided. Cavity barriers to concealed spaces behind external cladding should be positioned:

- at the edges of cavities including eaves and verges, around openings such as windows and doors and entry/exit points for services
- at the junction between an external cavity wall and every compartment floor and compartment wall.

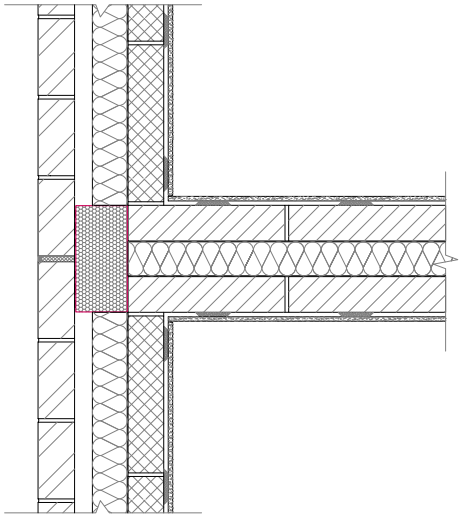
6.1.5 Acoustic resistance

External walls adjacent to separating walls shall be designed to resist flanking sound transmission.

Acceptable levels of sound reduction between homes may be achieved by:

- the inner leaf of an external cavity wall having sufficient density
- sealing air paths, particularly at junctions between the masonry cavity and separating elements
- allowing appropriate spacing between the openings in external walls
- structural members not transferring across or breaching separating walls.

Figure 3: Lateral restraint and acoustics



The density of external walls and the position of openings adjacent to separating walls should be in accordance with Building Regulations and, where relevant, an assessment which complies with Technical Requirement R3. Refer to the Robust Details Handbook for the specification of separating wall and floor constructions and their associated flanking walls.

Where different block materials are used eg, aggregate separating wall with aircrete inner leaf, differential drying and cracking can occur, so it is important that the separating wall goes through (and not up to) the inner leaf.

6.1.6 Exposure

Also see: Chapter 6.7

External walls shall be suitable for their exposure and resist the passage of moisture to the inside of the home. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) durability
b) rain penetration
c) freeze/thaw cycles.

Durability

Masonry can become saturated, and may remain so for long periods. Therefore, precautions should be taken to resist frost damage and sulfate attack affecting:

- parapet walls and copings
- sills and projections
- masonry below the DPC at ground level
- freestanding walls.

Masonry units and mortar should comply with BS EN 1996-1-1 and be used in accordance with Table 15 of PD6697 and the manufacturer's recommendations. In addition, mortar mixes should be selected from BS EN 998-2 Table NA.1, and only cement types listed in BS EN 998-2 NA1.2 should be used.

Cement with sulfate-resisting properties should be used where S1 clay bricks are used in the following situations:

- below the DPC where there are sulfates present in the ground
- below the DPC where there is a high risk of saturation
- retaining walls
- parapets
- freestanding walls
- rendered walls
- areas of severe, or very severe, exposure to driving rain.

Reclaimed bricks should only be used where in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Rain penetration

In prolonged periods of driving rain, water will penetrate the outer leaf of a masonry wall. The following should be taken into account:

- site-specific exposure to wind-driven rain
- suitability of the wall construction and insulation method
- design detailing for the local exposure, and the likely quality of workmanship on site
- single skin garage walls, additional care needs to be taken to ensure this type of structure does not allow for water penetration prematurely
- wall tie drips should be located in the centre of the clear cavity
- cavity trays, DPCs and weep vents should be installed in accordance with this guidance.

Exposed parts of the building should be given particular attention when selecting a suitable construction method, as this may affect the choice for the whole building.

Complete resistance can only be achieved with an impervious cladding. However, the following approaches can reduce the risk of rain penetration:

- providing cladding to the wall
- increasing the clear cavity width (minimum 50mm) or the width of full-fill cavity insulation (increasing the cavity width for full-fill cavity insulation greatly reduces the risk of rain passing through the cavity)
- rendering the wall and specifying crack-resistant backing material
- designing protective features to keep the wall dry, eg projecting sills and deep overhanging eaves and verges
- ensuring mortar joints are fully filled. Where full-fill cavity insulation is proposed, recessed joints should not be used
- following the recommendations of any assessment of the insulation and the manufacturer's recommendations
- ensuring that cavities are not bridged.

Cavities should be continuous around enclosed porches and habitable areas.

Insulation should be in accordance with Clause 6.1.7 and Table 2.

In Scotland, Northern Ireland, the Isle of Man and in other places where the exposure to driving rain is very severe, masonry should form a rebate at the reveals of openings to avoid a straight through joint where the frame abuts the masonry, or a proprietary cavity closer assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3 should be used.

Sills, copings and similar features should be weathered and throated unless adequate alternative provision is made to protect the brickwork from saturation, frost damage and staining and meet the requirements of BS 5642 parts 1 & 2.

Variations to the exposure shown on the map can only be made by site-specific calculations using BS 8104 'Code of practice for assessing exposure of walls to wind-driven rain'.

Adapted from BRE report 'Thermal Insulation: avoiding risks'.

Figure 4: Check reveal

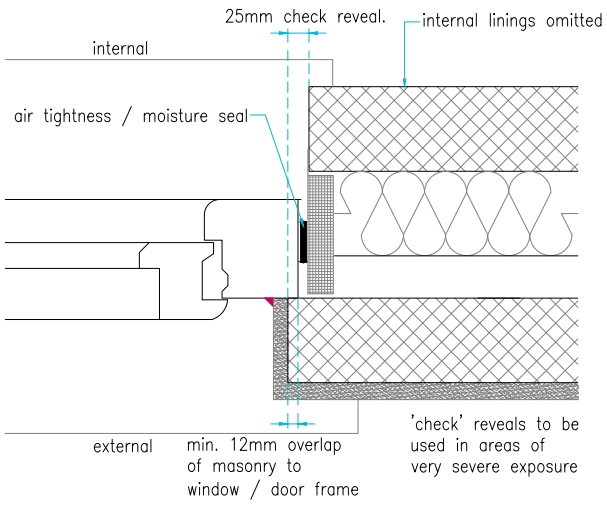


Figure 5: Exposure zones

Exposure zones	Exposure to wind-driven rain (litres/m² per spell)
Very severe	100 or more
Severe	56.5 to less than 100
Moderate	33 to less than 56.5
Sheltered	Less than 33

Freeze/thaw cycles

Common factors which affect the level of freeze/thaw cycles include:

- degree of exposure (incidence of frost)
- saturation of the masonry
- frost resistance of the masonry
- localised protection of the masonry by roof overhangs, trees and other buildings.

Good detailing can limit persistent wetting and reduce the risk of frost attack:

- paths should drain away from walls to avoid saturating bricks near the ground
- sills, copings and similar features should have a weathered upper surface
- a coping or capping should be provided for all parapet walls, chimneys and freestanding walls, unless clay bricks of F2 and S2 classification to BS EN 771-1 are used
- masonry units and mortar should be used in accordance with Table 15 of PD6697.

Copings should have:

- an overhang
- throatings a minimum of 30mm clear of the wall
- a continuous supported DPC which projects beyond the line of the wall.

The following should be taken into account when selecting bricks:

- manufacturers' recommendations, including the choice and use of mortar and the type of joint finish
- bricks that are not frost-resistant (F0,S2 or F0,S1 to BS EN 771) may not be acceptable for use externally, unless completely protected by a cladding which can adequately resist the passage of water
- where there is a risk that brickwork may be persistently wet, bricks should be specified that are low in soluble salts
- painted or decorated finishes can trap moisture in external brickwork and increase the risk of frost damage, sulfate attack or other detrimental effects.
  The manufacturer should be consulted to ensure that the proposed decorative finish will not have a detrimental impact on the brickwork durability
- in Scotland, all clay bricks used as facings should be frost-resistant, F2,S2 or F2,S1 to BS EN 771-11 and all concrete bricks used as facings should be 22 N/mm² to BS EN 771-3.

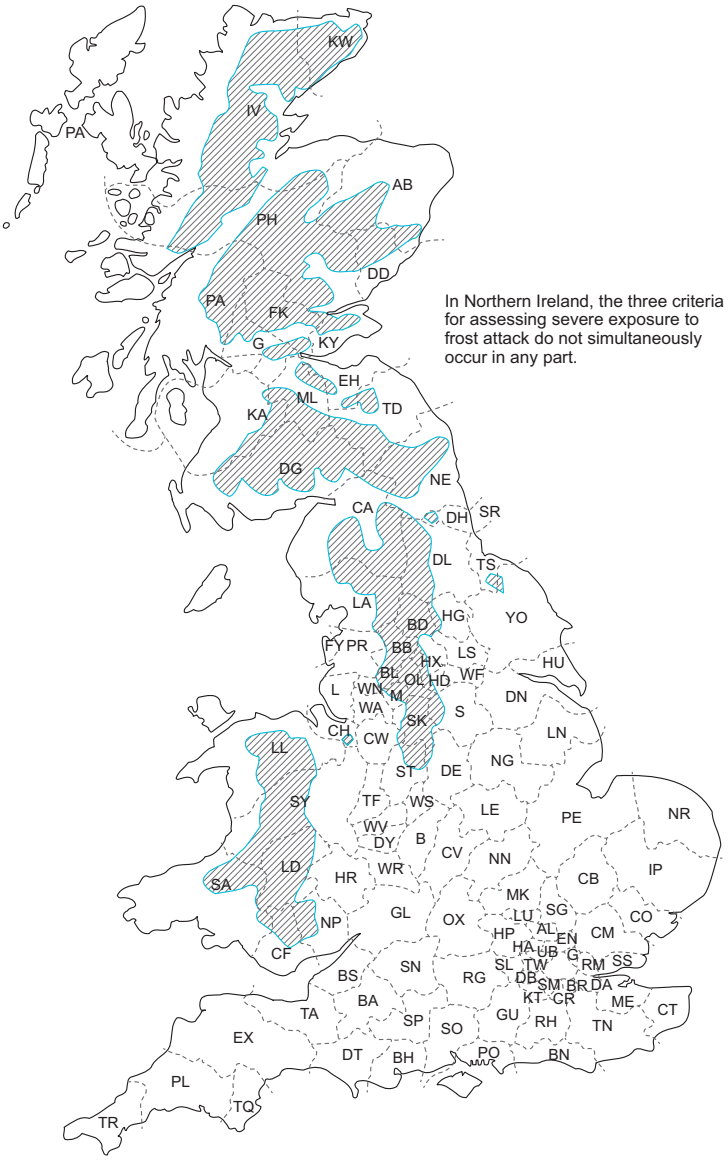
Severe exposure to frost attack

The hatched areas on the map opposite have a frost over 60 days in a year, annual rainfall over 1m and are 90m above sea level. They are therefore all considered to be at severe exposure to frost.

In areas of severe exposure to frost, the following types of brick are acceptable:

- clay facing bricks which are frost-resistant F2,S2 or F2,S1 to BS EN 771-1
- clay bricks which are classified in the manufacturer's published recommendations as satisfactory for the exposure
- concrete bricks with a minimum strength of 20N/mm² to BS EN 771-3
- concrete blocks with a minimum density of 1,500kg/m³ or compressive strength greater than 7.3N/mm²
- most types of aircrete blocks with render.

Figure 6: Frost exposure zones



In Northern Ireland, the three criteria for assessing severe exposure to frost attack do not simultaneously occur in any part.

Exceptionally severe frost exposure
These are locations which face long stretches of open countryside and are within an area of severe frost exposure, where only frost-resistant bricks F2,S2 or F2,S1 to BS EN 771 are acceptable for the superstructure.

Where there is doubt about the suitability of a facing brick for sites in areas of exceptionally severe frost exposure, written confirmation should be obtained from the brick manufacturer that the brick is suitable for the geographical location, and location in the structure.

6.1.7 Thermal insulation

Thermal insulation shall be adequate and installed correctly. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) thermal insulation materials
b) installation
c) injected and blown fill insulation
d) construction type.

The insulation value of the wall must meet the requirements of the Building Regulations. Cold bridging should be avoided. Particular care is needed:

- at openings
- between external walls and roofs, internal walls and floors
- behind or around components installed in the cavity such as sub-floor vents, inset meter boxes, cavity trays or windposts.

Thermal Insulation materials

Thermal Insulation materials, either full, partial, or injected and blown fill that will be placed in the cavity between the outer and inner leaf of masonry should be:

- satisfactorily assessed by an appropriate independent technical approvals authority accepted by NHBC as suitable for the proposed use
- assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement.

Thermal Insulation materials may:

- either be built in during, or retrofitted after the construction process
- fully or partially fill the cavity.

Materials shall be considered as full fill cavity insulation where:

- they are designed to be in full contact with both leaves of masonry
- described as full fill in their technical approval document although a narrow residual cavity is retained between the outer leaf and the outer face of the insulation.

Partial fill cavity insulation materials shall be installed on the cavity face of the inner leaf and the appropriate residual cavity to the outer leaf as specified in ‘Construction Type’ is maintained.

All injected and blown fill insulation systems, including blown mineral wool, and expanded polystyrene beads should be:

- installed by the certificate holder or their approved installers subject to the certification bodies assessment and surveillance scheme
- installed by operatives trained by the assessment holder and approved by the assessment holder and the assessing organisation.

Installation

Workmanship should be maintained when installing insulation to minimise the risk of damp penetration or condensation to the inner leaf. Gaps in the insulation layer can provide routes for moisture ingress from the outer leaf to the inner leaf and also create localised cold spots where condensation can form. Gaps between the board and the inner leaf can result in thermal bypass (this is exacerbated by gaps at board junctions). Insulation material should be:

- close butted with no gaps
- in full contact with the inner leaf
- taped at the joints where it is formed of rigid boards with non-compressible edges[1]
- fully engaged with the adjacent board edges where a ship lap or other interlocking edge detail is provided
- installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations.

Note
1 Where the insulation has a low e facing the tape face shall have the same low e value.

Where cavity insulation is used:

- mortar joints, including perpends, should be solidly filled with mortar
- mortar droppings should be removed from wall ties and the edges of insulation materials
- excess mortar should be struck flush from the inside of the outer leaf
- excess mortar should be struck flush from the cavity side of the inner leaf.

The first row of insulation boards or batts should be supported on wall ties:

- with a minimum of two ties to each board or batt
- which coincide with horizontal joints in the insulation.

Where wall ties need to be closely spaced, eg at reveals, it is acceptable to make a neat cut in the insulation to accept the extra ties.

Rigid insulation boards should:

- be stored flat without bearers, otherwise they may distort, making them difficult to fix against the wall
- be rejected where warped.

When installing full fill insulation:

- ensure fibres in the insulation are laid parallel to the wall
- butt joint slabs and do not bend at internal and external corners
- cover all exposed areas of insulation slabs at the end of each day or in driving rain to prevent excessive moisture in the cavity and pressure on freshly laid masonry from expansion of the insulation
- ensure vertical joints are staggered when layering slabs of insulation.

Figure 7: Full fill insulation

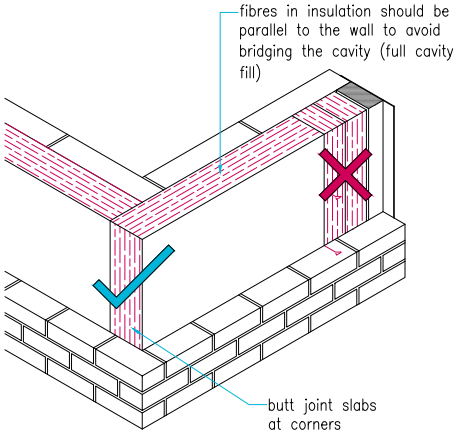


Figure 8: Insulation to combined lintel ends

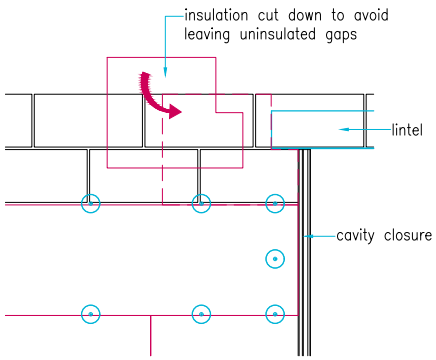
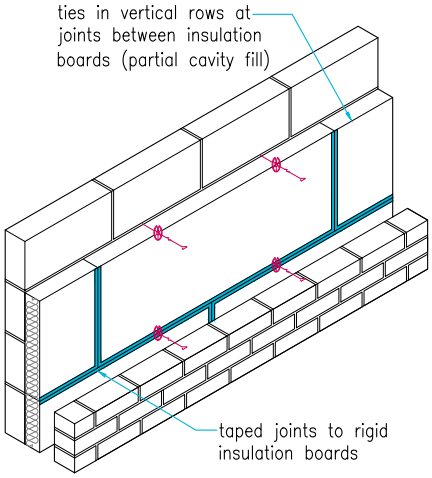


Figure 9: Cavity ties to rigid partial fill insulation



Rigid insulation should not be continuous across the end of a separating wall or floor. A flexible (mineral wool) cavity closer should be used in line with these elements, and the rigid insulation butted up to these.

Injected and blown fill insulation

Injected and blown fill insulation should comply with the relevant standards:

Material	Standard	Settlement class
Mineral wool	BS EN 14064-1 'Thermal insulation products for buildings. In-situ formed loose-fill mineral wool (MW) products - Specification for the loose-fill products before installation' BS EN 14064-2 'Thermal insulation products for buildings. In-situ formed loose-fill mineral wool (MW) products - Specification for the installed products'	S1
Expanded polystyrene (EPS) beads	BS EN 16809-1 'Thermal insulation products of buildings. In-situ formed products from loose-fill expanded polystyrene (EPS) beads and bonded expanded polystyrene beads - Specification for the bonded and loose-fill products before installation' BS EN 16809-2 'Thermal insulation products of buildings. In-situ formed products from loose-fill expanded polystyrene (EPS) beads and bonded expanded polystyrene beads - Specification for the bonded and loose-fill products after installation'	N/A

Injected and blown fill insulation systems should meet the requirements of the relevant standards and hold a satisfactory assessment by an appropriate technical approvals authority acceptable to NHBC confirming suitability for use in a masonry cavity wall and for the exposure rating of the site.

Separating wall and floor constructions and their associated flanking walls should be detailed correctly when using injected and blown fill insulation. Cavity stops should be installed at the ends of separating walls and separating floors. Refer to the Robust Details Handbook for the specification of materials and construction details.

Before installing injected or blown fill insulation materials the home should be in a condition ready to receive the insulation, this will be defined in each systems instruction documents, but as a minimum would require that:

- the cavity wall is inspected by the installing team
- the roof is in place, tops of the walls are protected from rain
- all edges of cavities at window, door, and other openings are closed with the permanent cavity closers, as per the design.

Areas that cannot be accessed during the fill process by appropriate adaptation of the installation method (eg, below gas membranes or low level continuous DPCs, where there is a cavity tray one course above a lintel, or where separate lintels are used for each leaf) should be insulated with appropriate built-in materials.

On completion of the work, the Installer shall provide a declaration of compliance in accordance with the relevant standard for the product.

Construction type

The following are recommendations and guidance according to construction type:

Partial fill cavity insulation

Where partial cavity insulation is installed:

- it should only be fixed against the cavity face of the inner leaf
- a minimum 50mm clear cavity between the partial cavity insulation and the outer leaf should be maintained
- wall ties long enough to allow a minimum 50mm embedment in each masonry leaf should be used.

In areas of very severe exposure in England and Wales, a residual cavity of 75mm is required where the outer leaf is fair faced masonry.

Full fill cavity insulation

Where the cavity is to be fully filled with insulation:

- the type of insulation, its thickness and the wall construction should be suitable for the exposure of the home (see Table 2)
- render on an external leaf of clay bricks (F2,S1 or F1,S1 designation bricks to BS EN 771) is not permitted in areas of severe or very severe exposure to wind-driven rain
- recessed mortar joints should only be used in sheltered areas
- fair faced masonry includes clay, concrete bricks and blocks and dressed natural stone laid in an appropriate mortar preferably with struck, weathered or bucket handle joints
- cavity walls of random rubble or random natural stone should not be used
- painted finishes on bricks or render are not acceptable where they are likely to cause damage (including frost damage or sulfate attack).

Table 2: Suitable wall constructions for use with full-fill cavity insulation

Exposure category	Suitable wall construction	Minimum insulation thickness (mm)		
		Built-in insulation	Retro-fill (other than UF foam)	UF foam
Very severe	Any wall with impervious cladding	50	50	50
	Fair faced masonry with impervious cladding to all walls above ground storey	100	125	N/A
	Any wall fully rendered(2)	75	75	N/A
	Fair faced masonry(1)	150	150	N/A
Severe	Any wall with impervious cladding or render(2)	50	50	50
	Fair faced masonry with impervious cladding or render(2) to all walls above ground storey	50	75	50
	Fair faced masonry	75	75	N/A
Moderate	Any wall with impervious cladding or render	50	50	50
	Fair faced masonry with impervious cladding or render to all walls above ground storey	50	50	50
	Fair faced masonry	50	75	75
Sheltered	Any wall with impervious cladding or render	50	50	50
	Fair faced masonry with impervious cladding or render to all walls above ground storey	50	50	50
	Fair faced masonry	50	50	50

Notes

1 In very severe exposure locations, fair faced masonry with full cavity insulation is not permitted in cavity widths of less than 150mm.
2 Render on an external leaf of clay bricks (F2,S1 or F1,S1 designation bricks to BS EN 771) in severe or very severe exposures is not permitted where the cavity is to be fully filled with insulation.
3 This table covers walls where the external leaf does not exceed 12m in height.
4 The exposure category of the home is determined by its location on the map showing categories of exposure to wind-driven rain.
5 Fair faced masonry includes clay and concrete bricks and blocks and dressed natural stone laid in an appropriate mortar preferably with struck, weathered or bucket handle joints. Cavity walls of random rubble or random natural stone should not be fully filled.

Multiple layers of insulation may be used where in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and within the scope of satisfactory assessment by an independent technical approvals authority accepted by NHBC.

The thickness of materials should be as required in the design, and in accordance with Building Regulations.

Insulated dry linings

Where an insulated dry lining contains a combustible insulant, to prevent early collapse of the lining in a fire, the plasterboard should be:

- a minimum of 12.5mm thick
- mechanically fixed to the masonry inner leaf.

6.1.8 Concrete blocks

Concrete blocks shall be capable of supporting intended loads, have appropriate thermal resistance and be resistant to the adverse effects of climate. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) intended loads
b) freeze/thaw and sulfate attack
c) other characteristics.

Intended loads

Concrete blocks should:

- comply with BS EN 771-3 & 4 and PD 6697 and be used in accordance with BS EN 1996-2 and PD6697
- be of sufficient compressive strength for the application
- be used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

The maximum load-bearing capacity of the wall should not be exceeded. Other factors may dictate the strength of blocks required in certain circumstances, eg sulfate resistance may require blocks of greater strength.

For one and two storey homes, blocks with a minimum compressive strength of 2.9N/mm^2 could be used.

For three storey homes or those with storey heights over 2.7m, 7.3N/mm^2 blocks are required for certain parts of the structure, unless structural design shows that strengths lower than 7.3N/mm^2 are suitable.

Freeze/thaw and sulfate attack

Concrete blocks used in the outer leaf without protective cladding or render should:

- have a compressive strength >7.3N/mm^2 or have a density of at least 1,500kg/m^3
- be made with dense aggregate to BS EN 12620, or
- be aircrete concrete blocks having had their suitability confirmed by the manufacturer.

Where the level of sulfates in the ground, at the level where blockwork is to used, is DS-2 or above their suitability for use should be confirmed by the manufacturer. Where this is permissible, the mortar should be sulfate-resisting with a mix suitable for the level of sulfates in the ground.

Other characteristics

Concrete blocks may have been specified according to their specific characteristics.

Tolerances

Tolerances should be declared in accordance with the relevant product standard.

6.1.9 Bricks

Bricks shall be capable of supporting intended loads and have appropriate resistance to the adverse effects of freeze/thaw and sulfate attack.

The design strength of bricks should comply with:

- BS EN 1996-1
- the design.

Clay bricks

Table 3: Classification of clay bricks according to their freeze/thaw resistance and active soluble salt content in accordance with BS EN 771-1

Durability	Freeze/thaw resistance	Active soluble salt content
F2,S2	Freeze-/thaw-resistant (F2), durable in all building situations	(S2) low
F2,S1	Freeze-/thaw-resistant (F2), durable in all building situations	(S1) normal
F1,S2	Moderately freeze-/thaw-resistant (F1), durable except when saturated and subject to repeated freezing and thawing	(S2) low
F1,S1	Moderately freeze-/thaw-resistant (F1), durable except when saturated and subject to repeated freezing and thawing	(S1) normal
F0,S2	Not freeze-/thaw-resistant (F0), liable to be damaged by freezing and thawing	(S2) low
F0,S1	Not freeze-/thaw-resistant (F0), liable to be damaged by freezing and thawing	(S1) normal

Bricks that are freeze-/thaw-resistant (F2,S2 or F2,S1 to BS EN 771) should be used where there is a high risk of prolonged wetting and freezing including:

- external facing work in Scotland
- exposed parts, including copings, sills, parapets and chimneys which have no overhang to provide protection
- areas of the country subject to exceptionally severe freeze/thaw exposure. See Clause 6.1.6.

In areas of severe freeze/thaw exposure outside Scotland, bricks that are moderately freeze-/thaw-resistant (F1,S1 or F1,S2 to BS EN 771) may be used for general wall areas, provided they are classified in the manufacturer's published recommendations as satisfactory for the exposure. Further guidance can also be found within the Brick Development Association "Severely exposed brickwork" publication.

Bricks that are not freeze-/thaw-resistant (F0,S2 or F0,S1 to BS EN 771) are not acceptable for use externally, unless completely protected by a cladding which can satisfactorily resist the passage of water.

Where brickwork may become saturated, moderately freeze-/thaw-resistant bricks (F1,S1 or F1,S2 to BS EN 771) are not appropriate where there is a risk of vulnerability to frost. In saturated conditions, sulfate-resisting cement mortar is required for S1 designation bricks.

For one and two storey homes, clay bricks to BS EN 771, with a minimum compressive strength of 9N/mm^2 should be adequate.

For three storey homes; clay bricks to BS EN 771 with a minimum compressive strength of 13N/mm^2 are acceptable.

Tolerances of clay bricks

Guidance on tolerances for clay bricks can be found within the BDA publication 'Designing to brickwork dimensions'.

Concrete bricks

Concrete bricks have a direct relationship between strength and durability, including freeze/thaw resistance. Most concrete bricks have a strength of 22N/mm^2 and are durable in most situations and are equivalent to frost resistance class F2 for clay bricks. For copings and sills, bricks with a compressive strength of 36N/mm^2 should be used. For one, two or three storey homes, concrete bricks to BS EN 771-3, having a minimum compressive strength of 22N/mm^2 are acceptable.

Reclaimed bricks

Reclaimed bricks:

- should be used in accordance with Technical Requirement R3
- if the durability category cannot be determined may require independent certification of suitability
- may require independent certification of suitability
- may be unsuitable for external work because of a high salt content or a lack of freeze/thaw resistance
- which have previously been used internally or which were fully protected may be unsuitable in external situations.

It is advisable to know where reclaimed bricks came from, and if they were used internally or externally.

Special shaped bricks (only applicable to clay bricks and concrete bricks)

Special shaped bricks should conform to BS 4729.

Projecting brickwork

Where architectural detailing of brickwork is used to form decorative patterns that include projecting brickwork, exposing either all or part of the width or length of the brick, consideration should be given to:

- perforations or frogs that may be exposed
- visual appearance of exposed bed or differing face surfaces
- suitable weathering of flat surfaces or 'ledges'.

Exposure of projecting bricks, particularly those with frogs or perforations may affect the durability and service life of the brick. Written confirmation should be obtained from the brick manufacturer that the brick can achieve the required durability for the proposed use.

6.1.10 Stone masonry

Stone masonry shall be constructed to an acceptable standard, including the performance standards for brick and block where applicable. Walls shall be capable of supporting the intended loads and have appropriate resistance to the adverse effects of freeze/thaw.

Stone masonry as the outer leaf of a cavity wall should comply with the following:

Stone for masonry	BS EN 771-6 'Specification for masonry units. Natural stone masonry units'
Cast stone masonry units	BS EN 771-5 'Specification for masonry units. Manufactured stone masonry units', or BS 1217 'Cast stone. Specification'
Stone masonry, natural or cast	BS EN 1996 'Design of masonry structures' PD 6697 'Recommendations for the design of masonry structures to BS EN 1996'
Stone for copings and sills	BS EN 12059 'Natural stone products. Dimensional stone work. Requirements'

Stone masonry as the outer leaf of a cavity wall will be acceptable where it:

- provides an adequate weather-resisting structure in conjunction with any brick or block backing, and/or vertical DPMs
- complies with the guidance in this chapter for brickwork/blockwork
- complies with BS EN 12370 or has evidence that it is not susceptible to salt crystallisation when used below DPC level
- follows good local recognised practice to provide a high standard.

Where squared or random rubble is used it is important that the stone masonry is "brought to course" at regular intervals of not more than 450mm. Bed joints of up to 25mm wide can be acceptable, and the selection and installation of the correct wall ties should be carefully considered.

6.1.11 Construction of masonry walls

Also see: Chapter 7.1, 9.1 and PD 6697

Construction shall ensure a satisfactory standard of brickwork and blockwork. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) finished appearance
b) bonding
c) construction
d) openings
e) corbelling
f) chasing for services
g) protection of ancillary components.

The construction of masonry walls should comply with the following:

- requirements of BS EN 1996-2 'Eurocode 6. Design of masonry structures. Design considerations, selection of materials and execution of masonry'
- and BS 8000-3 'Workmanship on construction sites. Masonry. Code of practice'.

Finished appearance

A site reference panel should be constructed to agree a benchmark for workmanship and products.

The appearance of a masonry wall depends upon the:

- materials used
- setting out
- workmanship.

When setting out masonry:

- avoid cutting bricks or blocks, except when it is essential
- avoid irregular or broken bonds, particularly at openings
- fair faced masonry bricks should be set out dry, prior to commencement of works.

All work should be reasonably level and true, and:

- the bond detailed in the design used
- perpendicular joints kept in line and plumb
- courses kept level by using lines and spirit levels
- meet the tolerances defined within Chapter 9.1.

To keep courses to the correct height, use a gauge rod marked with the height of windows, doors and floors.

Where a number of openings of similar width are being formed, use a rod cut to the required size to check the width of openings as the work rises.

Brickwork and blockwork should not be subjected to vibration until the mortar has set.

Bonding

A regular bonding pattern should be maintained. External walls should be bonded to partitions and party walls as required by the design. Either:

- tooth every alternate course, or
- tie with wall ties, expanded metal or equivalent at maximum 300mm vertical centres.

Figure 10: Internal to external wall bonded connection

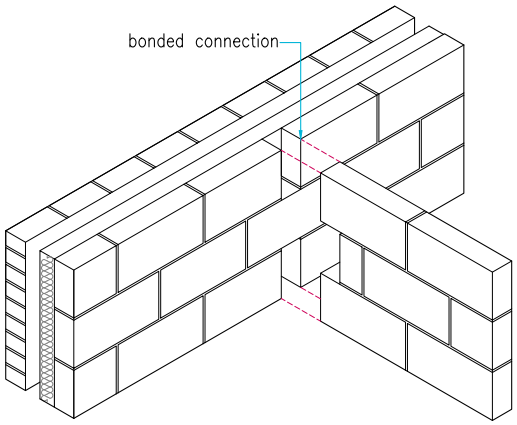
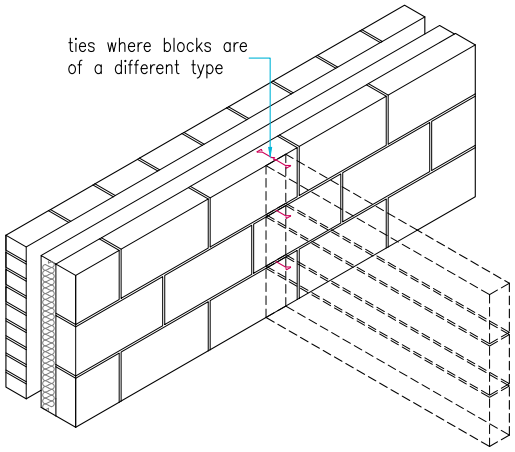


Figure 11: Internal to external wall tied connection



Where joist hangers are not used, joist filling should be brickwork or blockwork and without excessive mortar joints.

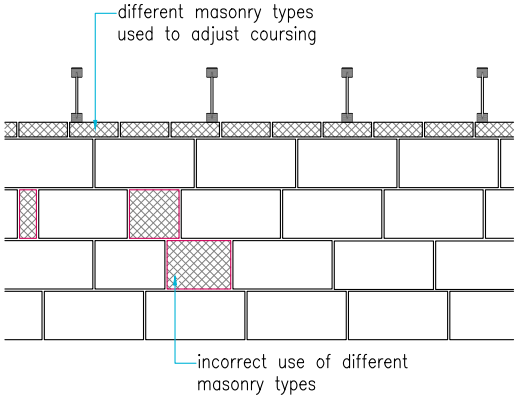
Joist filling should be:

- 12mm below the top of flat roof joists to allow for timber shrinkage
- the recessed portion of timber joists should be treated
- checked to ensure the cold roof ventilation is not blocked.

Clay bricks and concrete blocks should not be mixed. Where a different size of masonry unit is needed to ensure correct coursing, small units of the same material should be used to reduce cracking and problems due to different thermal insulation properties.

Where the inner leaf of a cavity wall is being used for thermal insulation, and where a different size of masonry unit is used to ensure correct coursing, the unit should have similar thermal insulation properties to the masonry used for the rest of the wall.

Figure 12: Dissimilar masonry types



Construction

The difference in heights between the two leaves of a cavity wall under construction can be up to six block courses, provided the ties are sufficiently flexible to ensure coursing is achieved without breaking the bond. To keep the wall plumb, do not over-reach at changes of lift; wait for the next scaffolding lift. With thin layer mortar construction having an assessment which complies with Technical Requirement R3, it is normally permissible to build the inner leaf to storey height ahead of the outer leaf. In such cases the recommendations of the assessment and the manufacturer's recommendations should be followed.

Cavities should be constructed so that:

- they are uniform and in accordance with the design, including wall tie specification and cavity width
- mortar is struck from all joints as work proceeds
- cavity trays and wall ties are clear of droppings and debris
- mortar droppings are removed
- where cavity insulation is used, mortar droppings are removed from the top edge
- where partial cavity insulation is used, it is against the inner leaf of the cavity
- the thickness of the external leaf is consistent, any stone used should not project into the cavity
- cavity barriers are installed as the work progresses.

Figure 13: Masonry cavity wall plumb level

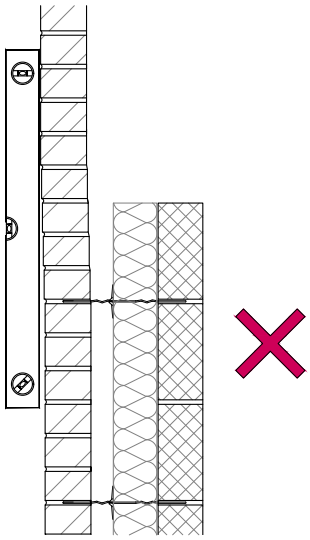
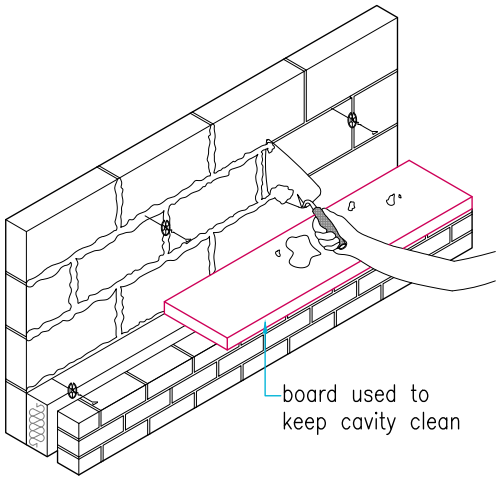


Figure 14: Striking of mortar



Laying bricks and blocks

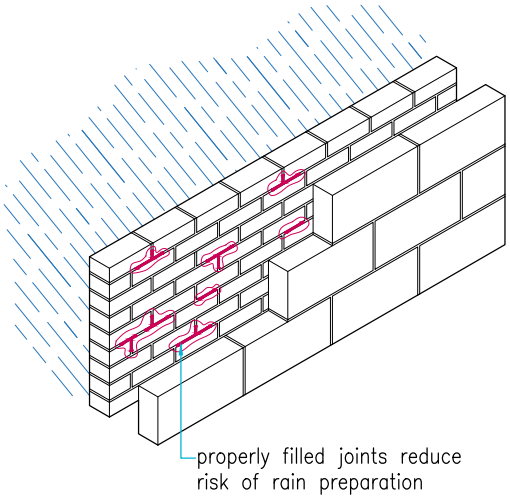
Bricks and blocks should have a solid mortar bedding and fully filled perpends, to reduce the risk of rain penetration and dampness in the wall.

Unless otherwise advised by the manufacturer, bricks with single frogs should be laid with the frog facing upwards and double frog bricks should be laid with the deeper frog facing upwards. All frogs should be fully filled with mortar.

Where cutting of bricks is required to achieve bond:

- standard work sizes of cut bricks should be used, ie, quarter, half, and three-quarter cuts
- bricks should be cut cleanly and accurately
- cutting of facing brickwork with a trowel should be avoided.

Figure 15: Rain penetration to mortar joints



Special bricks in accordance with BS 4729 should be used to form curves, features (eg plinths or cappings) or angles other than 90 degrees (eg bay windows), which cannot be satisfactorily formed with standard bricks. Cut and stuck specials may be used in accordance with the design where a standard special is not available.

Protection of cavity walls during construction

Masonry cavity walls shall be protected whenever work stops eg for inclement weather or overnight. The tops of both leaves, as well as the cavity and any insulation, should be covered with sacking or plastic sheet and appropriately secured in place.

Openings

Masonry may be built around either:

- the frame in-situ, or
- a profile or template to enable the frame to be fitted later.

Openings should be the correct size, square and:

- the spacing between the masonry and frame should allow for movement and tolerance
- the frame should not be distorted by forcing bricks against the jamb.

When window and door frames are built-in, they should be fixed with:

- frame cramps
- proprietary cavity closers, or
- plugs and fixings.

Proprietary cavity closers should be fitted in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Cavity closers should be fitted in one continuous piece unless jointing is accepted by the manufacturer and suitable details and installation instructions are provided. The closer should be assessed as suitable for the exposure zone of the site.

Where opening sizes and locations do not match brickwork setting out, brick bonding pattern should be set out at the base of the wall to ensure that cut bricks occur below openings.

Figure 16: Squareness of window openings

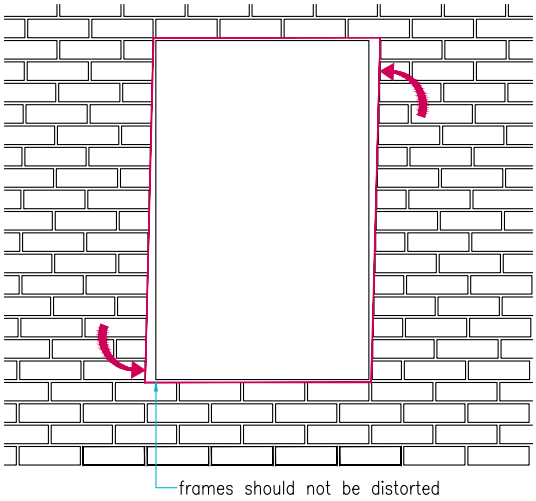
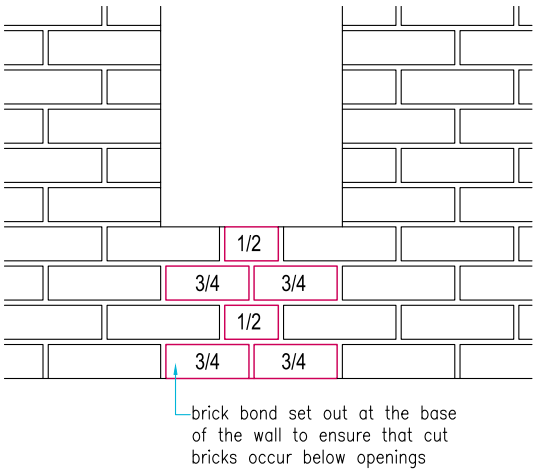


Figure 17: Masonry setting out at window openings



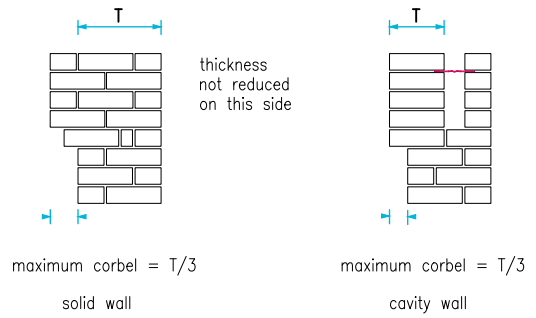
Corbelling

For feature brickwork sections the masonry should only be self-supporting.

Where courses are corbelled outwards in ordinary masonry, one above another; the extent of corbelling should not exceed that shown in the diagrams on the right.

Where reinforcing is used, corbels should be designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

Figure 18: Corbelling



Chasing for services

Chases should:

- not be cut with impact power tools, as they can damage the wall
- not cut into hollow blocks unless specifically permitted by the manufacturer
- be cut with care
- be limited to 1/6 of the depth of the leaf where horizontal
- be limited to 1/3 of the depth of the leaf where vertical
- maintain a residual thickness of 15mm between the chase and the void for hollow or cellular blocks unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer.

Protection of ancillary components

Table 4 contains guidance for a selection of ancillary components for use in buildings up to three storeys in height, in a non-aggressive environment.

Table 4: Protection of ancillary components

Product type	EN 845 ref[1]	Material/coating specification (the zinc coating masses are for one surface)
Wall ties, tension straps and hangers conforming to BS EN 845-1	1	Austenitic stainless steel (molybdenum chrome nickel alloys)
	3	Austenitic stainless steel (chrome nickel alloys)
	8 or 9	Zinc coated (940g/m^2) steel wire or component
Tension straps and hangers conforming to BS EN 845-1 (internal uses[2])	10	Zinc coated (710g/m^2) steel component
	11	Zinc coated (460g/m^2) steel component
	12.1 or 12.2	Zinc coated (300g/m^2) steel strip or sheet with organic coating over all outer surfaces of finished component
	13	Zinc coated (265g/m^2) steel wire
	14	Zinc coated (300g/m^2) steel strip or sheet with all cut edges organic coated
	15	Zinc precoated (300g/m^2) steel strip or sheet
	16.1 or 16.2	Zinc precoated (137g/m^2) steel strip or sheet with organic coating over all outer surfaces of finished component
	17	Zinc precoated (137g/m^2) steel strip or sheet with organic coating over all outer surfaces of finished component
Lintels conforming to BS EN 845-2	L1	Austenitic stainless steel (molybdenum chrome nickel alloys)
	L3	Austenitic stainless steel (chrome and nickel alloys)
	L10	Zinc coated (710g/m^2) steel component
	L11.1 or L11.2	Zinc coated (460g/m^2) steel component with organic coating over all outer surfaces of finished component
	L12.1 or L12.2	Zinc coated (300g/m^2) steel strip or sheet with organic coating over all outer surfaces of finished component
	L16.2	Zinc coated (137g/m^2) steel strip or sheet with organic coating over all outer surfaces of finished component
Lintels conforming to BS EN 845-2, where used with a separate DPC	L11	Zinc coated (460g/m^2) steel component
	L14	Zinc coated (300g/m^2) steel strip or sheet with all cut edges organic coated
	L16.1	Zinc coated (137g/m^2) steel strip or sheet with organic coating over all outer surfaces of finished component
Bed joint reinforcement conforming to BS EN 845-3	R1	Austenitic stainless steel (molybdenum chrome nickel alloys)
	R3	Austenitic stainless steel (chrome nickel alloys)
	R23	Austenitic-ferritic stainless steel to EN 10088 (all parts)
Windpost[3][4]	1	Austenitic stainless steel (molybdenum chrome nickel alloys)
	3	Austenitic stainless steel (chrome nickel alloys)

Notes
1 Material/coating reference in accordance with the relevant part of BS EN 845.
2 These products are not suitable for use in contact with the outer leaf of an external cavity wall or a single leaf cavity wall.
3 Outside the scope of BS EN 845 but meets the specification requirements of BS EN 845-1 for the material/coating reference.
4 Alternative material/coating specification may be provided in accordance with Cl. 5.12 and Table 2 of PD 6697:2019 where windposts are not connected to or embedded in an external cavity wall.

Components in contact with, or embedded in, an inner leaf which is damp or exposed to periodic wetting (eg below the DPC) should be protected in the same way as components in contact with, or embedded in, an outer leaf.

6.1.12 Lintels

Also see: Chapter 6.5

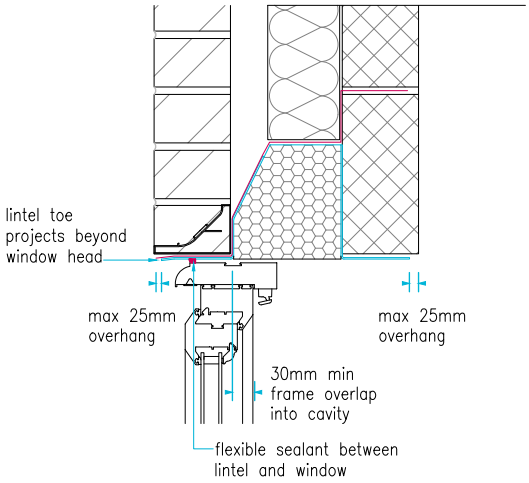
Lintels, and supporting beams, shall be installed correctly, safely support the applied loads and be of the type and dimensions appropriate to their position within the structure. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) thermal insulation and condensation
b) durability and resistance to water entering the home
c) placing lintels.

Concrete, steel and reinforced brickwork are acceptable materials for use as lintels. Timber lintels should not be used, unless:

- protected from weather
- they do not support masonry or other rigid or brittle materials.

Figure 19: Masonry overhang to openings



Lintels should:

- comply with BS EN 845-2 'Specification for ancillary components for masonry', where steel or concrete
- be designed in accordance either with Technical Requirement R5 or the manufacturer's recommendations
- be provided where frames are not designed to support superimposed loads
- be wide enough to provide adequate support to the walling above
- not have brickwork or masonry which overhangs more than 25mm
- have cavity trays where they are specified in the design
- have padstones and spreaders provided under the bearings, where necessary
- not have concentrated loads applied before the manufacturer's requirement of fully bedded brickwork is met (this is to avoid overstressing).

Lintels should extend beyond the opening (at each end) by the minimum lengths shown in Table 5.

Table 5: Lintel bearing

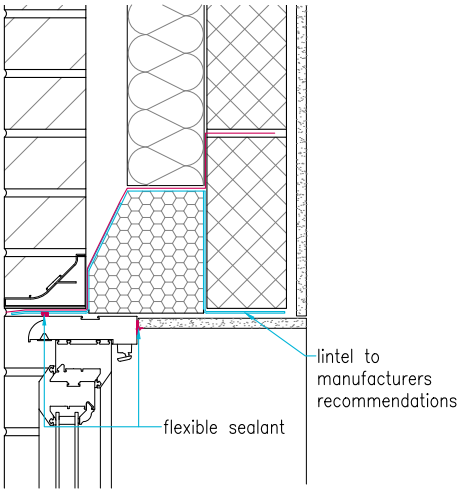
	Minimum bearing length (mm)	
Span (m)	**Simple lintel**	**Lintel combined with cavity tray**
Up to 1.2	100(1)	150
Over 1.2	150	150

Notes
1 Minimum bearing lengths should be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

Where steel lintels are used:

- the manufacturer's recommendations for providing adequate fire resistance should be followed, particularly to the lower steel flange
- the inner and outer leaf should be built up together to avoid twisting the lintel flange
- the difference in height between the leaves should not exceed 225mm.

Figure 20: Combined lintel



Where separate lintels are used to support the inner and outer masonry leaves:

- the cavity, at the head of the opening, should be closed off with an insulated cavity closer
- a cavity tray should be installed to protect the cavity closer from moisture in the cavity
- the cavity tray should be built into the inner leaf and taken to the outer face of the external wall directly over the outer lintel and not between the cavity closer and lintel.

Figure 21: Separate lintels - reconstituted stone or concrete

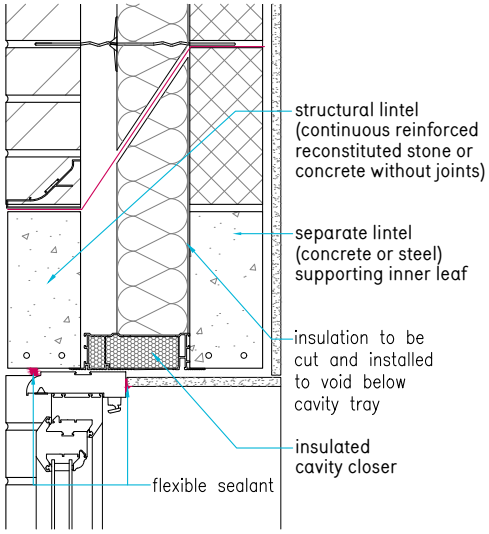
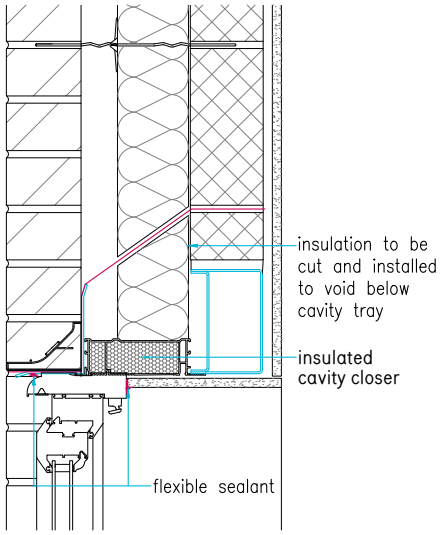


Figure 22: Separate lintels - steel



Thermal insulation and condensation

The risk of condensation at potential cold bridges, such as reveals and soffits, increases as the level of wall insulation increases. To avoid cold bridging:

- wall insulation should abut the head of the window frame
- insulation should be provided at the underside of the lintel unless the manufacturer produces an alternative.

Durability and resistance to water entering the homes

Cavity tray/damp proof protection should be provided:

- over all openings, either combined as part of the lintel or separate
- where the outer leaf is fair faced masonry or where full-fill insulation is used, all cavity trays (separate or combined) should have stop ends.

Separate cavity tray protection should be provided when corrosion protection to the lintel is inadequate, or where required by the manufacturer, or the shape of the lintel is unsuitable, such as when:

- the profile of the lintel does not form a cavity tray
- steel lintels in external walls have material/coating in accordance with L11, L14 and L16.1, see Table 4.

In Scotland, Northern Ireland, the Isle of Man and areas of severe or very severe exposure to driving rain, a separate cavity tray should be provided over all lintels.

Lintels should be:

- austenitic stainless steel (molybdenum chrome nickel alloys) where used in aggressive environments, eg coastal locations
- located and sized so that the external edge of the lintel projects beyond, and therefore offers protection to, the window head.

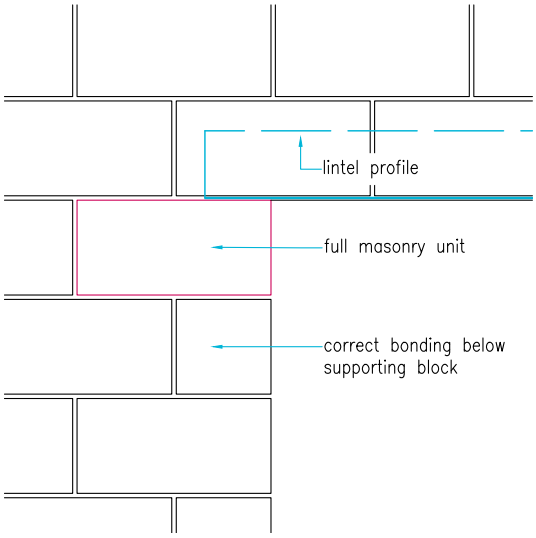
Placing lintels

The design should be checked and lintels should:

- be an appropriate size for the opening and the end bearings (at each end)
- have padstones where required, eg for long spans
- be installed level on a solid bed of mortar (not soft or non-durable packing)
- be set out to ensure that lintels bear on a full masonry unit
- not have brickwork or masonry which overhangs more than 25mm.

Concrete floor units or other heavy components which bear on lintels should be positioned carefully to avoid damage or shock load.

Figure 23: Lintel end bearing



6.1.13 Materials suitable for mortar

Materials used for mortar should comply with the appropriate requirements and standards.

Relevant standards include:

BS EN 197-1	'Cement. Composition, specifications and conformity criteria for common cements'
BS EN 197-1 or BS EN 413-1	'Masonry cement'
BS EN 459-1	'Building lime'
BS EN 998-2	'Specification for mortar for masonry. Masonry mortar'
BS EN 934-3	'Admixtures for concrete, mortar and grout – Admixtures for masonry mortar'
BS EN 12878	'Pigments for the colouring of building materials based on cement and/or lime. Specifications and methods of test'
BS EN 13139	'Aggregates for mortar'

6.1.14 Mortar

Also see: Chapter 3.2

Mortar shall be of the mix proportions necessary to achieve adequate strength and durability and be suitable for the type of masonry. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) sources of sulfate
b) admixtures and additives
c) preparing mortar
d) joints.

Unless recommended otherwise by the brick manufacturer, the mixes in Table 6 should be used for clay bricks. In the case of concrete bricks, particular attention should be paid to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Table 6: Mortar mixes using ordinary Portland or sulfate-resisting cements

Location		Recommended cement:lime: sand mix	Recommended cement:sand mix	Recommended masonry cement: sand mix	Mortar designation to BS EN 1996-1-1	Equivalent Mortar Class to BS EN 1996-1-1
General wall area above the DPC	In areas of severe or very severe exposure – high durability	1:½:4½	1:3½	1:3	(ii)	M6
	Other exposure categories – general use	1:1:5½	1:5½	1:4½	(iii)	M4
Below DPC level and in chimney stacks	High durability	1:½:4½	1:3½	1:3	(ii)	M6
Cappings, copings and sills	Low permeability	1:0 to ¼:3	–	–	(i)	M12

Air-entraining plasticiser can be incorporated in the following general use and high durability mortars:

- 1:1:5½, cement:lime:sand, or
- 1:1:4½, cement:lime:sand.

Retarded mortar

Retarded mortar and most premixed mortars can be used over a longer period of time than site-mixed, cement:lime:sand mortars. When using retarded mortar:

- follow manufacturer's recommendations and timescales
- do not use it beyond the time for which it is effective
- protect it against freezing prior to use
- temporary bracing of larger walls, eg at gable peaks and long walls, may be necessary due to delayed setting times.

Sources of sulfate

Mortar is vulnerable to deterioration by sulfates, especially when masonry is saturated for long periods of time. Clay bricks contain soluble sulfate (S1 designations have no limit on their sulfate content) and so a suitable mortar should be used.

To reduce risk, cement types listed in BS EN 998:2 NA1.2 with sulfate resisting properties or alternatively CEM II cements based on blast-furnace slag are in widespread use where sulfate resistance is required, and should be used:

- below the DPC level when sulfates are present in the ground
- when clay bricks (F2,S1 and F1,S1 to BS EN 771) are used
- when there is a high saturation risk (examples below).

High saturation risk situations are:

- below the DPC
- areas of severe or very severe exposure to driving rain
- parapets
- retaining walls
- freestanding walls
- rendered walls
- chimney stacks.

Admixtures and additives

Admixtures should:

- only be used where agreed with the designer
- not contain calcium chloride
- be dosed and used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Mortars containing an air-entraining plasticiser are more resistant to freeze and thaw damage when set, but do not prevent freezing before the mortar is cured.

White cement to BS EN 197 and pigments to BS EN 12878 may be used, but pigments should not exceed 10% of the cement weight, or 3% where carbon black is used.

Preparing mortar

When preparing mortar:

- ensure the mix is appropriate for the use and location
- plant and banker boards should be kept clean
- mixers should be kept clean to operate efficiently
- the colour should be consistent.

When laying bricks and blocks:

- mortar should be the correct mix and used within two hours, unless it is retarded mortar
- mortar which has started to set should not be retempered.

Notes
Thin layer mortars are supplied in bag form and should be mixed with water on site strictly following the manufacturer's recommendations.

Joints

Jointing is preferable to pointing because it leaves the mortar undisturbed. Struck (or weathered) and bucket handle joints are preferable for external walls. Unless the design states otherwise, only bucket handle or weathered joints should be used.

Recessed joints should not be used where:

- bricks are not frost-resistant, eg clay F1,S1 or F1,S2 to BS EN 771, unless the brick manufacturer has confirmed their use for that particular location in writing
- the home is built on steep sloping ground, facing open countryside or within 8km of a coast or large estuary
- bricks are perforated closer than 15mm to the face
- there is no reasonable shelter from driving rain, eg from buildings or groups of trees within 50m and of similar height to the home
- the cavity is to be fully filled with cavity insulation.

6.1.15 Render

Also see: Chapter 6.11

The surface to which render is applied, shall be appropriately constructed and satisfactorily resist the passage of moisture.

Walls to be rendered should be constructed in accordance with the relevant parts of this chapter. For detailed guidance on 'Render', see Chapter 6.11.

6.1.16 Cladding

Also see: Chapter 3.3, 6.2 and 6.9

Cladding shall satisfactorily resist the passage of moisture and be of the quality, type and dimensions required by the design. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) masonry cladding to framed structures
b) joints
c) materials for cladding
d) vertical tile or slate cladding
e) stone veneer cladding.

This clause is for low rise applications where the masonry is used directly for weather tightness or used in conjunction with other vertical cladding for weather tightness. Chapter 6.9 covers curtain walling and other structural cladding.

Refer to the Robust Details Handbook to check compatibility of lightweight external treatments.

- flexible movement joints should be provided at the underside of each horizontal support member
- the masonry outer leaf should have a minimum two-thirds of its width supported securely by the concrete frame or a metal angle. See diagram (water exclusion detail not included for clarity)
- vertical movement joints should be provided at corners
- the inner leaf should be adequately tied to the structural frame.

Where external claddings such as fibre cement, timber or tile hanging are installed on masonry walls, cavity barriers should be provided:

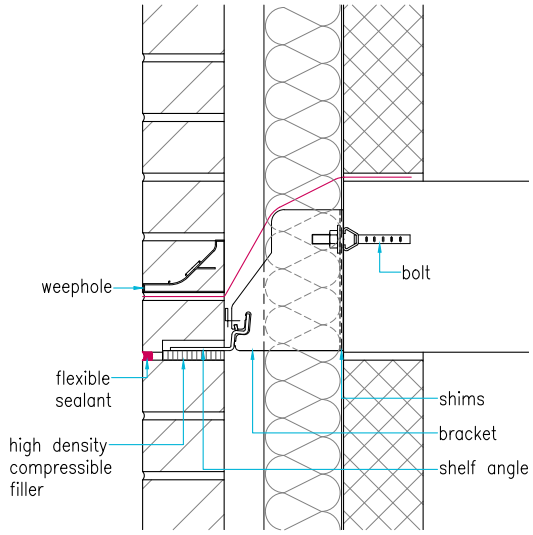
- at the edges of cavities including eaves and verges, around openings such as windows and doors and entry/exit points
- at the junction between an external cavity wall and every compartment floor and compartment wall.

Masonry cladding to framed structures

Allowance should be made for differential movement between cladding and the frame. The following precautions should be taken to prevent buckling and fracturing of masonry panels:

- flexible movement joints should be provided at the underside of each horizontal support member
- the masonry outer leaf should have a minimum two-thirds of its width supported securely by the concrete frame or a metal angle. See diagram (water exclusion detail not included for clarity)
- appropriately detailed horizontal joint to be provided which can accommodate all movements anticipated at the joint including deflection of substrate and the angle support system, as well as the limited compressibility of both the joint fillers & sealant
- additionally, horizontal movement joints should be capable of accommodating at least 1mm movement per continuous meter of vertical clay masonry
- vertical movement joints should be provided at corners, where appropriate
- the inner leaf should be adequately tied to the structural frame.

Figure 24: Masonry support



Joints

Joints between claddings and adjacent materials should:

- be detailed to be watertight under the particular exposure conditions of the site
- have provision for differential movement, where necessary.

Materials for cladding

Table 7: Materials for cladding

Component	Requirement	Notes
Tiles and slates	BS EN 1304, BS EN 490, BS EN 12326-1	Clay tiles for tile hanging, concrete tiles for tile hanging, slates for vertical slating
Timber boarding	BS EN 942	Timber should: • comply with and be at least J50 • be a naturally durable species or pre-treated with preservative
Battens		Battens should be: • of the size specified in the design • pre-treated with preservative
Proprietary cladding systems	Technical Requirement R3	Satisfactory assessment by an appropriate independent technical approvals authority accepted by NHBC

Timber cladding should be in accordance with Chapter 3.3 ‘Timber preservation (natural solid timber)’.

Prefabricated lightweight brick clad arches

Prefabricated lightweight brick clad arches comprising cement particle or fibre cement boards, injected polyurethane core, clay fired brick slips attached with epoxy adhesive for use a decorative non-loadbearing arch above openings in masonry cavity walls should:

- hold a satisfactory assessment by an appropriate technical approval’s authority acceptable to NHBC
- be supported by a loadbearing lintel
- be installed in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions
- include a cavity tray over all openings (where manufacturer’s recommendations require cavity tray to be located over prefabricated lightweight arches, a lintel with suitable profile and durability and proprietary stop-ends and weepholes should be provided).

Vertical tile or slate cladding

Vertical tile or slate cladding to walls should:

- conform with Chapter 6.9 ‘Curtain walling and cladding’
- be fixed in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations.

Stone veneer cladding systems

Stone veneer cladding systems should be in accordance with:

- BS 8298 when mechanically fixed
- technical Requirement R3 when adhesive fixed
- Chapter 6.9 when used as a brick slip/rainscreen system.

6.1.17 DPCs and cavity trays

Also see: BS 8215

DPCs and related components shall be provided to prevent moisture rising or entering the building. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) provision of DPCs and cavity trays
b) stepped cavity trays
c) parapet details.

Provision of DPCs and cavity trays

DPCs and flexible cavity trays should be of the correct dimensions to suit the detailed design.

High Bond DPC can be used for applications including parapet walls, beneath copings and cappings.

High load DPC should be used where it will be subject to a full storey of masonry.

The following materials are acceptable for use as DPCs:

Bitumen based materials	BS 6398, BS EN 14967
Polyethylene (except as cavity trays in walls, below copings and in parapets)	BS 6515, BS EN 14909
Proprietary materials	Technical Requirement R3

Table 8: Positions where DPCs and cavity trays are generally required

Location	Provision of DPCs and cavity trays
Base of walls, piers, etc	A DPC should be provided a minimum 150mm above adjoining surfaces and linked with the DPM in solid floors
Base of partitions built off oversite where there is no integral DPM	The DPC should be the full width of the partition
Base of wall built off beam, slab, etc	Detail to prevent entry of damp by driving rain
Parapets	Beneath coping, and 150mm above adjoining roof surface to link with the roof upstand
In cavity walls over openings, air bricks, etc	A cavity tray should be provided to direct any water that enters the cavity to the outside. The cavity tray should fully protect the opening
At the horizontal abutment of all roofs over enclosed areas and balconies to walls	A cavity tray should be provided 150mm above any adjoining roof or balcony surface. The tray should be lapped over any roof upstand or flashing to ensure water penetrating into the cavity does not enter the enclosed area
At sloping abutments of all roofs over enclosed areas to cavity walls	Preformed stepped cavity trays should be provided above the roof surface and linked to the roof upstand or flashing to ensure any water penetrating into the cavity does not enter the enclosed area
Doorsteps	A DPC should be provided behind a doorstep where it is higher than a wall DPC
Sills	Where precast concrete or similar sills incorporate joints or are of a permeable material, a DPC should be provided beneath them for the full length and be turned up at the back and the end of the sill
Jambs in cavity	The reveal should be protected throughout its width by a continuous DPC. The width of the DPC should be sufficient to be fixed to, or overlap, the frame and fully protect the reveal For very severe exposure conditions, rebated reveal construction or a proprietary closer, suitable for the conditions, should be used
Stone heads	Where precast concrete or similar stone heads incorporate joints or are made of a permeable material, a DPC should be provided beneath them for the full length and built into or fixed to the inner leaf wall
Above gas membranes bridging the cavity	Where gas membranes bridge the cavity a cavity tray should be provided. Cavity trays should be sealed to the gas membrane in accordance with manufacturers instructions to prevent capillary damp ingress at the joint

Figure 25: Low level DPC

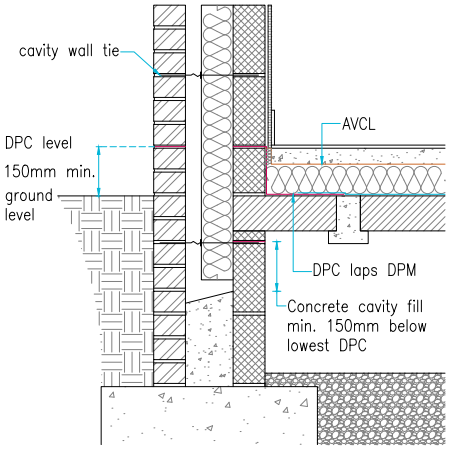
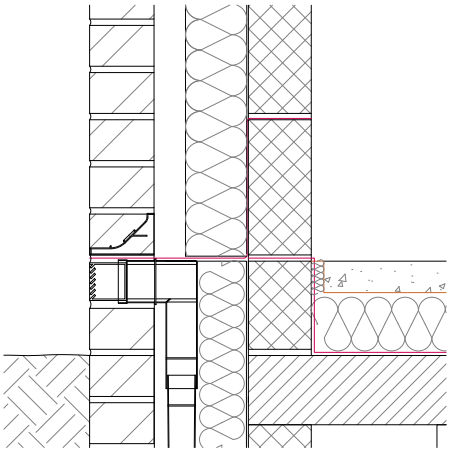


Figure 26: Cavity tray to air brick/meter box



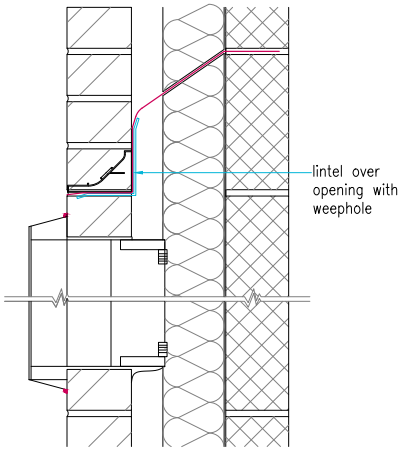
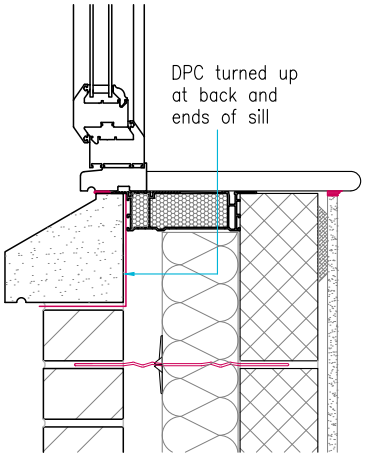


Figure 27: DPC to stone cill



Cavity trays

Cavity trays should be provided at all interruptions to the cavity (eg window and door openings and air bricks) unless otherwise protected (eg by overhanging eaves). Cavity trays should:

- meet the requirements of BS EN 14909 and hold certification from an appropriate independent technical approvals authority accepted by NHBC confirming suitability for use as a cavity tray
- provide an impervious barrier and ensure that water drains outwards
- always be provided with stop ends where discontinuous
- project sufficiently beyond the lintel ends and cavity face of the cavity closer or vertical DPC; forming a stop end in the nearest naturally occurring perpend joint
- be laid on a wet, even bed of mortar, free from projections which could puncture or adversely affect the DPC material; with masonry above bedded on wet mortar to ensure the DPC material is ‘sandwiched’
- provide drip protection to door and window heads
- have a 140mm minimum upstand from the inside face of the outer leaf to the outside of the inner leaf
- not be low-density polyethylene (LDPE) to BS 6515
- be shaped to provide 100mm minimum vertical protection above points where mortar droppings could collect
- be provided where the cavity is bridged by air bricks, etc and the DPC should extend 150mm beyond each side of the bridge
- where not otherwise protected (eg by a roof at an appropriate level), be provided over meter boxes
- be in one continuous piece or where necessary have sealed or welded joints which are provided with rigid support and lapped at least 100mm
- be preformed where used at complicated junctions
- be used in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendation.

Figure 28: Cavity tray to openings

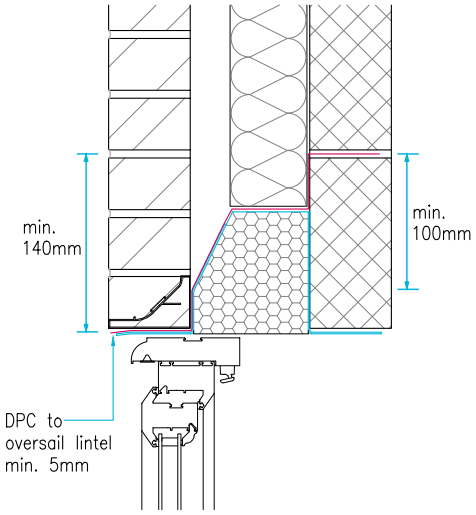
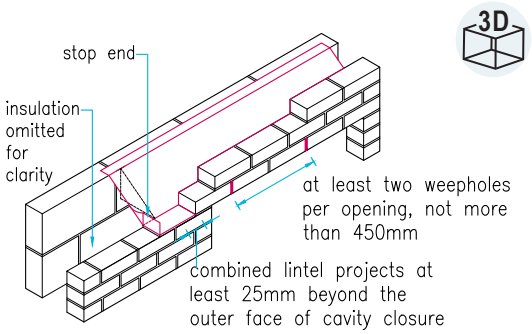


Figure 29: Cavity tray stop ends and weepholes



The upstand part of the cavity tray should be returned into the inner leaf unless it is stiff enough to stand against the inner leaf without support. In Scotland, Northern Ireland, the Isle of Man and areas of very severe exposure to driving rain, the upstand part of the damp proof protection should be returned into the inner leaf of masonry (this does not apply at sloping abutments).

Where fair faced masonry is supported by lintels:

- weepholes should be provided at a maximum of 450mm intervals
- each opening should have at least two weepholes
- cavity trays or combined lintels should have stop ends.

Where the lintel does not require a DPC, it should:

- have a suitable profile and durability
- give complete protection to the top of the reveal and vertical DPC, where provided.

Where the cavity has full-fill insulation, a cavity tray should be used above the highest insulation level, unless the insulation is taken to the top of the wall and is in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

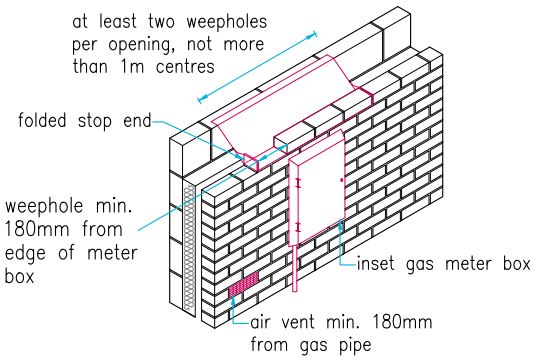
Weepholes

Weepholes in cavity walls should be the equivalent of a full brick perpend joint, eg 65mm x 10mm where exposed within the cavity. The size of the discharge opening in proprietary weepholes may be smaller, provided it is designed to discharge any water collected, safely. The end of the weephole within the cavity should be kept clear of mortar droppings.

Weepholes to cavity walls should be provided:

- to cavity trays above openings and penetrations through the wall (such as sub-floor vents, ducts, or flues), at least two per opening at not more than 450mm centres
- at least one to the bottom tray in a series of stepped cavity trays, eg at pitched roof abutments
- on cavity trays in parapet walls or at horizontal roof abutments at not more than 1m centres
- to cavity trays above inset gas meter boxes, a minimum of 180mm from the edge of the meter box at not more than 1m centres. See figure 30.

Figure 30: Weepholes to inset gas meter box



For guidance on weepholes to rendered walls see Chapter 6.11 'Render'.

Where masonry cladding is installed to timber framed structures, the guidance on design of weep vents in Chapter 6.2 'External timber framed walls' should be followed.

Complicated junctions

Changes of direction of a cavity tray or interfaces with other elements in the cavity are more complicated than simple joints and would involve complex bending, folding, or cutting and sealing if fabricated on site. At complicated junctions, clear drawings and the design should be provided, and preformed cavity trays used.

Complicated junctions include:

- pitched roof abutments (ie, stepped trays)
- steps in horizontal level
- internal corners
- external corners
- t-junctions (ie, intersection of parapet wall)
- door thresholds (in conjunction with gas membranes, flat roofing detailing etc)
- penetrations in horizontal cavity tray arrangements (ie, telescopic vents, services etc)
- interfaces with windposts, balcony supports, balustrading or guarding.

Where preformed cavity trays are used, the joint with the flexible DPC cavity tray should be sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Horizontal DPCs

DPCs should:

- be the correct width
- lap the DPM where appropriate
- be laid on a wet, even bed of mortar, free from projections which could puncture or adversely affect the DPC material; with masonry above bedded on wet mortar to ensure the DPC material is 'sandwiched'
- at ground level, generally be a minimum of 150mm above finished ground or paving level
- where intended to prevent rising damp, joints should have 100mm lapping, or be sealed or welded
- be considered in the design of masonry wall panel
- be used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

The concrete fill in a cavity wall should stop at least 225mm below the base DPC. This may be reduced to 150mm where special foundations, such as rafts, are used.

Figure 31: Concrete cavity fill

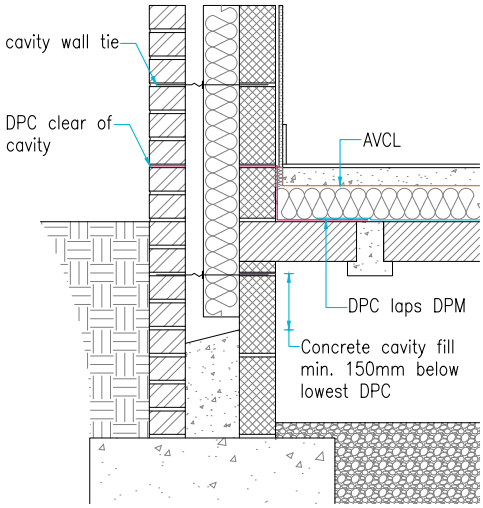
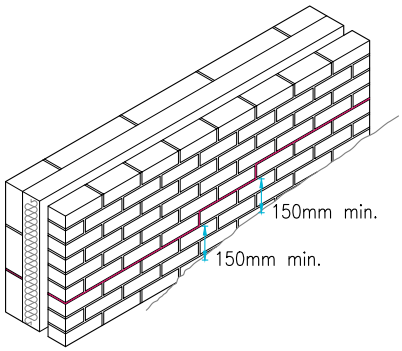


Figure 32: Stepped horizontal DPC



Where a jointed or permeable sill is used, a DPC should be:

- placed between the sill and the outer leaf
- turned up at the back and ends of the sill.

At sills where there is:

- a DPC, it should be lapped with the reveal DPC
- no DPC, the vertical DPC should be continued 150mm below the sill level.

Special DPC detailing may be required at accessible thresholds.

Vertical DPCs

A separate vertical DPC should be provided around openings, extend to the underside of the lintel, and:

- be of a proprietary material assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3, or
- 150mm wide DPC material, nailed to the full height of the frame and protrude 25mm into the cavity.

A fillet joint of sealant should not be considered a substitute for good workmanship or DPCs. However, a bead of mastic should be used around openings.

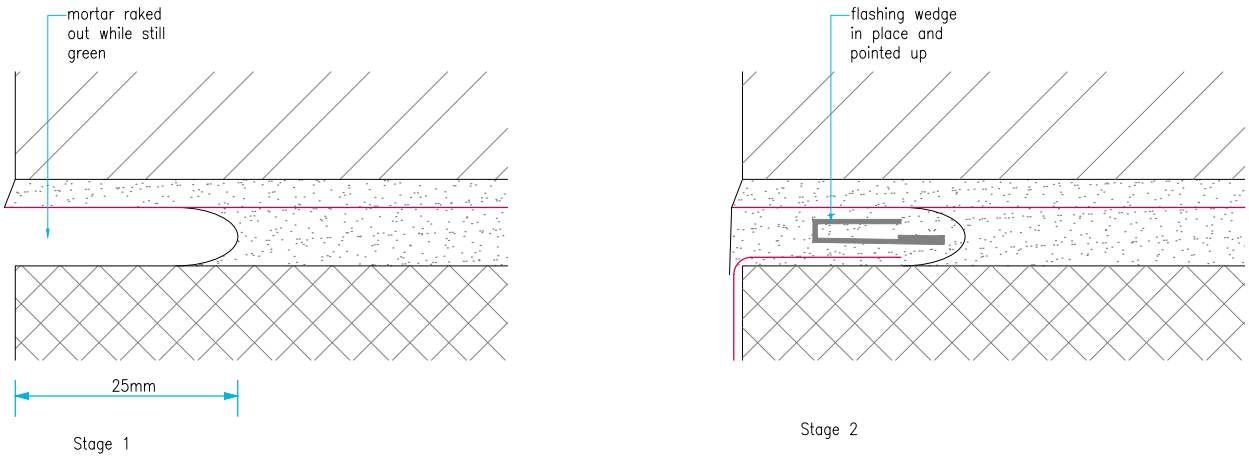
Cavity trays and insulation material

Where full fill or partial fill insulation is installed, particular care needs to be taken to ensure the insulation continuity is maintained around the cavity tray.

Connections with flashings

Where flashings link with DPCs, (eg horizontal or preformed stepped cavity trays), 25mm of mortar below the DPC should also be raked out as the work proceeds to allow for the flashing to be tucked in.

Figure 33: DPC to flashing interface



Joints between the masonry and flashing should be pointed with cement mortar or suitable exterior grade sealant (polysulfide or neutral-cured silicone) in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Arches

At openings with an arched head or circular windows it is not practical to shape a flexible DPC and achieve the correct protection and a preformed cavity tray should be used.

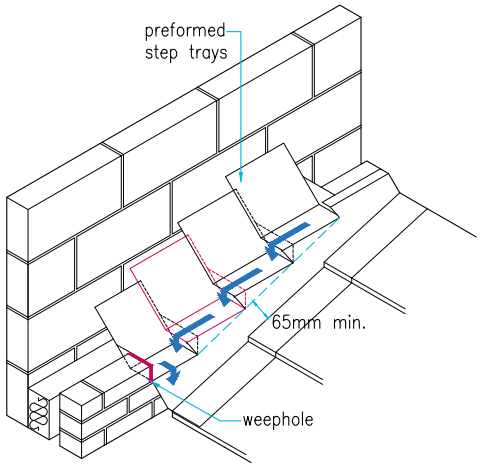
Stepped cavity trays

Where the roof abuts at an angle with the wall, preformed stepped cavity trays should be provided.

To minimise the risk of water ingress below the abutment, preformed stepped cavity trays:

- should be provided where a roof abuts a cavity wall above an enclosed area, eg an attached garage
- should have two stop ends at the lowest cavity tray and a weephole to allow water to drain from the cavity
- are not necessary where the roof is not over an enclosed area, eg open car ports and open porches.

Figure 34: Stepped cavity trays



Preformed stepped cavity trays should be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and positioned:

- to suit the dimension of the flashing (which should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations or a minimum width of 65mm)
- so that the stepped cavity tray cannot discharge behind flashing (where it is necessary to cut bricks or blocks, the bond should be maintained in the following joint).

Parapet details

Parapet walls should have:

- a DPC under the coping, and a DPC tray starting 150mm minimum above the roof
- coping throating which is 30mm clear of the brickwork
- copings should comply with BS 5642 Parts 1 & 2.

DPCs in parapet walls should be:

- supported over the cavity to prevent sagging below copings
- fully bedded in mortar
- specified to achieve a good key with the mortar
- sealed to prevent water seeping through the joints.

Figure 35: Parapet walls

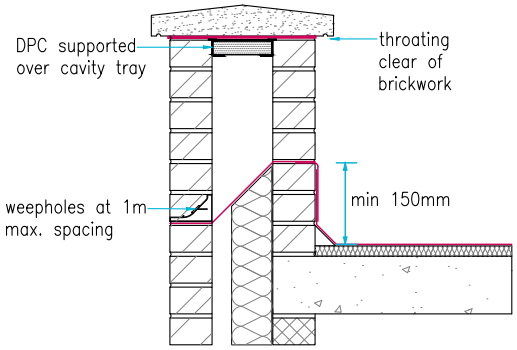


Figure 36: Copings/cappings to parapet walls

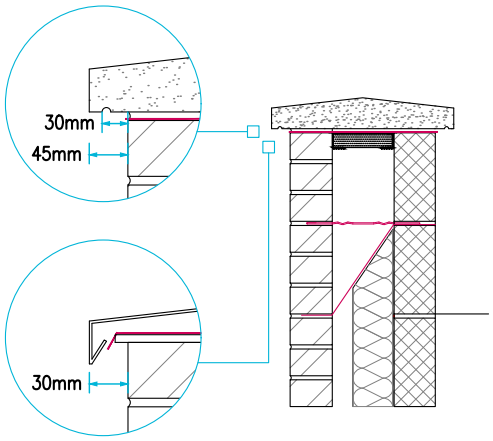
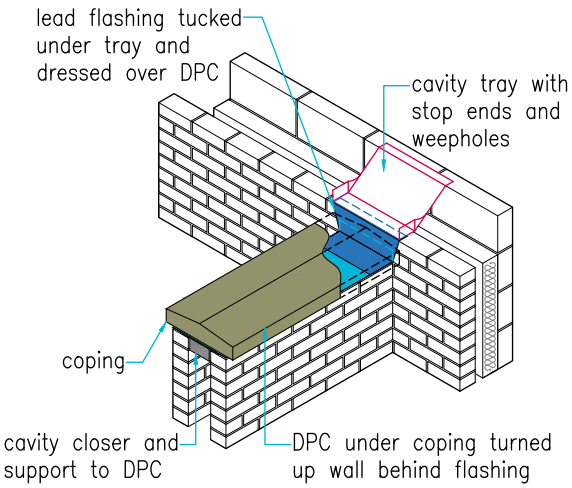
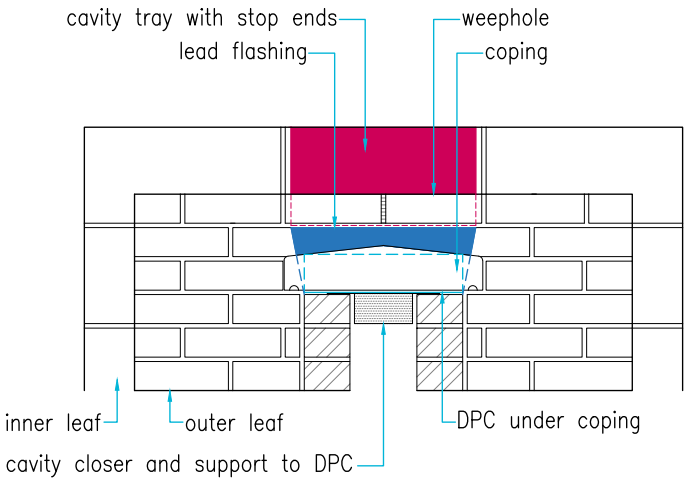
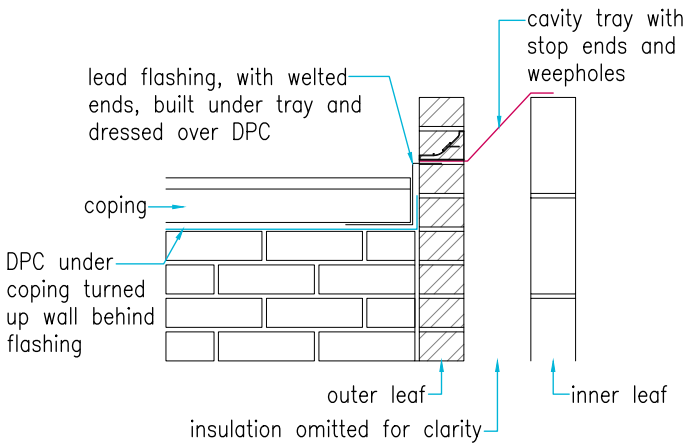


Figure 37: Parapet to external wall junction - DPC/cavity tray arrangement







6.1.18 Wall ties, bed joint reinforcements and windposts

Wall ties, bed joint reinforcements and windposts of the correct type shall be installed where required, and be suitable for their intended use and location. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) position
b) ties for partial fill insulation
c) cavity widths of over 100mm.

Wall ties should:

- be in accordance with BS EN 845-1 or Technical Requirement R3
- be of the type as specified in the design
- be long enough to be embedded a minimum of 50mm into each leaf
- be stainless steel or non-ferrous
- be spaced above and below the DPC in accordance with Table 9
- be of the type or classification that is appropriate for the end use (including cavity width) and geographical location
- be specified to accommodate movement where required by the design
- be used in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.

Bed joint reinforcements should:

- be in accordance with BS EN 845-3 or Technical Requirement R3
- be of the type as specified in the design
- be sufficiently wide so that minimum cover of 20mm is provided from the external face of masonry
- be stainless steel or non-ferrous
- have a minimum lap length of 225mm and laps between lengths should always be staggered
- be used strictly in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.

Windposts should:

- be designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5
- comply with Cl. 5.12 and Table 2 of PD 6697:2019 'Recommendations for the design of masonry structures to BS EN 1996-1-1 and BS EN 1996-2'
- be austenitic stainless steel (chrome nickel alloys) or austenitic stainless steel (molybdenum chrome nickel alloys) where connected to or embedded in an external cavity wall
- be austenitic stainless steel (molybdenum chrome nickel alloys) where used in aggressive environments, eg coastal locations.

Position

Table 9: Spacing of wall ties

	Maximum horizontal spacing (mm)	Maximum vertical spacing (mm)
General wall area	900	450
Jamb openings, movement joints, etc	Within 225 of opening	Not more than 300(1)
Top of gable walls	225 (parallel to the top of the wall)	Not more than 300(2)
Top and bottom of openings	450	N/A

Notes
1 Vertical spacing and number of ties may need adjusting to produce equivalent number of ties when using insulation boards.
2 Vertical spacing and number of ties may need adjusting to produce equivalent number of ties when using studded or spandrel panels.

Water should be prevented from crossing the cavity. Care should be taken to avoid:

- ties sloping down to the inner leaf
- drips being off-centre
- ties having mortar droppings on them.

Cavity walls should be coursed so that the wall tie is level or slopes outwards.

Figure 38: Wall tie locations

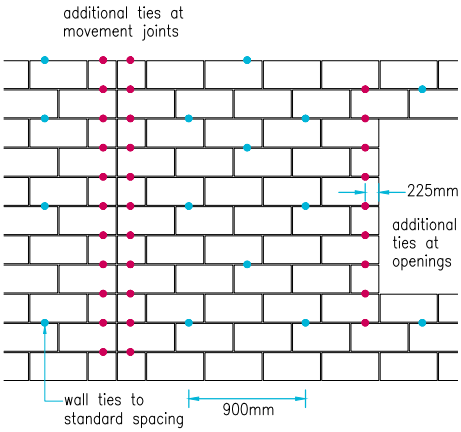


Figure 39: Wall tie embedment

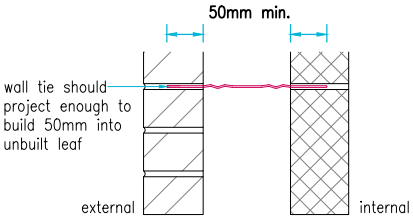
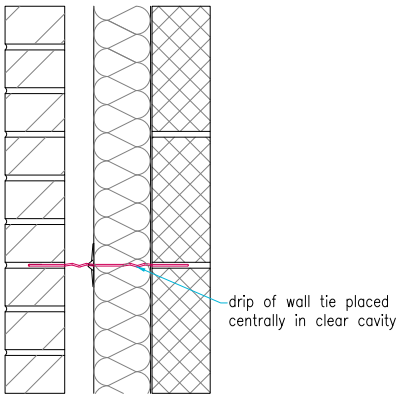


Figure 40: Wall tie to partial fill insulation



Wall ties should be:

- built in and not pushed into joints
- be of sufficient length to achieve a minimum 50mm embedment into each leaf of masonry, allowing for normal tolerances in cavity width
- positioned so that the drip is centred in the clear cavity and faces downwards.

Ties for partial fill insulation

Where partial cavity fill insulation is being used, it should be held against the inner leaf by retaining devices, which may be clipped to the wall ties. Retaining devices should be:

- compatible with the wall ties
- used in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Where 1,200mm boards are used with partial fill cavities, the wall ties should:

- be spaced closer to provide adequate support and restraint
- be spaced at 600mm centres in rows, ie, not staggered.

Cavity widths of over 100mm

Where cavity to masonry walls is to be between 100-150mm, wall tie spacing in Table 9 above may still be used in dwelling of up to three storeys high in sheltered and moderate exposure locations, provided they are of the right length with 50mm minimum embedment in the masonry.

Where dwellings are exposed to severe and very severe winds including on exposed and elevated locations of over 150m above sea level as well as coastal locations, site specific assessment of wall tie requirements should be undertaken. The wall tie spacing in Table 9 above may still be acceptable, if used in conjunction with stiffer wall tie types – eg Type 1 or 2 in accordance with PD 6697.

6.1.19 Handling materials

Materials shall be handled in such a way as to ensure that the construction is neat, clean and undamaged upon completion.

Materials should be stored properly. Issues to be taken into account include the following:

- deliveries should be undertaken safely to protect both the operatives and materials only using pallets provided by the manufacturer
- stacks of bricks and blocks should be protected from rain and mud splashes, etc by covering them with waterproof covers
- a suitable level and safe place should be identified on each site for the masonry deliveries
- cement should be stored off the ground and protected from weather
- sand should be prevented from spreading and be protected so that it remains clean
- insulation materials should be handled and stored in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Normally insulation materials should be protected from the weather.

Materials should be handled with care during construction to avoid damage and staining. Chipped or fractured bricks are not acceptable for facework.

Bricks that are tipped on delivery or moved about the site in dumper trucks often have a high degree of wastage.

The unloading of all bricks and blocks, especially facing bricks, should be:

- by mechanical means
- directly onto a firm level surface.

Unless bricks have been blended by the manufacturer, bricks from different batches should be mixed to avoid colour patching.

To reduce the risk of efflorescence, newly erected masonry should be covered. This also prevents the mortar being washed out of the joints by rain and stops masonry becoming saturated. Bricks and blocks that become excessively wet can suffer from:

- staining and efflorescence
- lack of mortar adhesion to mud-stained surfaces.
- increased drying shrinkage, with a greater risk of cracking

The work place should be kept clean to reduce mortar splashes to a minimum. Any accidental mortar smears should be lightly brushed off the face after the mortar has taken its first set.

6.1.20 Protection of the works during construction

Also see: Chapter 3.2

Precautions shall be taken to protect walls from damage during construction. Issues to be considered include:

a) cold weather working
b) hot weather working
c) excessive rain working.

Cold weather working

Freshly laid mortar may fail where it freezes.

The use of air entraining agents in cold weather gives better frost resistance to set mortar but does not aid the set. The use of accelerating admixtures and other admixtures should not:

- be relied on as an anti-freeze precaution
- contain calcium chloride.

Ensure the setting times of additives are checked and adhered to in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Cold weather retarders increase setting times.

In cold weather:

- brickwork and blockwork should not be built when the air temperature is below 3°C and falling
- work can resume when the temperature is 1°C and rising with the expectation the temperature will exceed 3°C
- walls should be protected from frost until the mortar has set sufficiently to resist frost damage
- covers should be provided to form a still air space to insulate the wall
- walling damaged by frost will not regain strength and should be taken down and rebuilt when conditions improve.

Note Thin joint mortars that can be shown to have been successfully tested for use down to 0°C are acceptable when the temperature is 0°C and rising. The mortar should be used strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Chapter 3.2 'Cold weather working'.

Hot weather working

In very hot weather above 30°C the main concern is the rate water is removed from the mortar either by suction of the warm masonry or evaporation, the mortar will also tend to lose its plasticity at a faster rate due to the evaporation of the water from the mix.

Mortar mixed at high temperatures may have a higher water content, a lower air content and a shorter board life. The quality of the bond between the mortar and the brick or block is dependent on having the correct amount of water and so this bond may be affected.

To reduce the impact of higher temperatures:

- store bricks and blocks in the shade to help control heat gain
- spraying with modest amounts of clean water can keep their temperature down and to stop the suction but, do not soak them
- mixing equipment can be shaded from direct sunlight prior to use
- mortar tubs and mortar boards should be rinsed with cool water before coming into contact with the mortar
- where ready-to-use mortar is being stored on site it is important to keep it well covered in the tub
- dry Silo Mortar - where the dry sand and cement mortar is stored on site in a hopper and mixed with water on demand, this offers the added advantage of being able to mix small batches which can be used up quickly.

In dry hot weather absorbent clay masonry units may be wetted by lightly spraying to reduce suction. Care should be taken not to over wet units. Low absorption units such as engineering bricks should not be wetted.

Newly built masonry should be protected with suitable material ie, hessian or sheeting, to insulate and prevent drying out too quickly. Hessian should not be wetted and laid dry.

Excessive rain working

Do not lay bricks or blocks in excessive wet conditions.

Ensure new brickwork and blockwork is completely covered to protect it from the elements.

If brickwork and blockwork is exposed to water for a prolonged period of time, the risk of leaching, cement residues and efflorescence will increase.

Protection of cavity walls during construction

Masonry cavity walls shall be protected whenever work stops eg for inclement weather or overnight. The tops of both leaves, as well as the cavity and any insulation, should be covered with sacking or plastic sheet and appropriately secured in place.

Figure reference table

Figure reference table 6.1

Fig No	Title/Description	Clause	Page
Figure 1	Lateral restraint by buttressing wall	6.1.3	3
Figure 2	Movement joint sealant	6.1.3	4
Figure 3	Lateral restraint and acoustics	6.1.5	6
Figure 4	Check reveal	6.1.6	7
Figure 5	Exposure zones	6.1.6	8
Figure 6	Frost exposure zones	6.1.6	9
Figure 7	Full fill insulation	6.1.7	11
Figure 8	Insulation to combined lintel ends	6.1.7	11
Figure 9	Cavity ties to rigid partial fill insulation	6.1.7	11
Figure 10	Internal to external wall bonded connection	6.1.11	17
Figure 11	Internal to external wall tied connection	6.1.11	17
Figure 12	Dissimilar masonry types	6.1.11	17
Figure 13	Masonry cavity wall plumb level	6.1.11	18
Figure 14	Striking of mortar	6.1.11	18
Figure 15	Rain penetration to mortar joints	6.1.11	18
Figure 16	Squareness of window openings	6.1.11	19
Figure 17	Masonry setting out at window openings	6.1.11	19
Figure 18	Corbelling	6.1.11	19
Figure 19	Masonry overhang to openings	6.1.12	21
Figure 20	Combined lintel	6.1.12	21
Figure 21	Separate lintels - reconstituted stone or concrete	6.1.12	22
Figure 22	Separate lintels - steel	6.1.12	22
Figure 23	Lintel end bearing	6.1.12	23
Figure 24	Masonry support	6.1.16	26

Chapter

6.2

External timber framed walls

This chapter gives guidance on meeting the Technical Requirements for external walls of timber framed homes up to seven storeys high, substantially timber framed homes and timber wall panels.

For figure reference tables in this chapter, please go to the end of the chapter

6.2.1 Compliance

Also see: Chapter 2.1

External timber framed walls shall comply with the Technical Requirements.

External timber framed walls that comply with the guidance in this chapter will generally be acceptable. For guidance on internal walls and floors within timber frame buildings, see Chapters 6.3 and 6.4.

Where the components of the timber frame cannot be inspected on site (eg closed panels or fully fitted out volumetric units) the system should be subject to review by NHBC. Please refer to the NHBC Accepts website at **www.nhbc.co.uk/builders/products-and-services/techzone/accepts**.

6.2.2 Provision of information

Designs and specifications shall be produced in a clearly understandable format, include all relevant information and be distributed to all appropriate personnel.

Clear and fully detailed drawings should be available on site to enable work to be carried out in accordance with the design. Design and specification information should be issued to site supervisors, relevant specialist subcontractors and suppliers, and includes the following:

- a full set of drawings
- materials specification
- the position and materials for cavity barriers in accordance with relevant Building Regulations
- fixing schedules
- manufacturer's recommendations relating to proprietary items.

The fixing schedule should detail every connection which is to be made on site, including those for structural connections, framing, wall ties, breather membranes, sheathing and vapour control layers, and should show as appropriate:

- number and spacing of fixings
- size and type of fixing, including material and corrosion protection
- method of fixing, eg skew nailing.

Further guidance on the contribution of plasterboard to racking resistance can be found in Clause 6.2.7. Where wall design relies on plasterboard to take racking forces, the design should:

- clearly define those walls
- include the type and spacing of fixings required.

6.2.3 Design checking and certification

Contact Us: ***technical@nhbc.co.uk***

Design of the superstructure shall be adequately checked.

Homes with a timber frame superstructure require certification confirming that the design has been checked by an NHBC approved timber frame certifier.

The timber frame certifier should:

- be listed on NHBC's list of timber frame certifiers
- be a suitably qualified civil or structural engineer with a minimum of three years' experience in timber frame construction
- not be the designer of the timber frame nor be from the same practice
- complete and sign a certificate confirming assessment of structural adequacy for each specific project
- provide the registered builder with the completed and signed certificate.

The registered builder should ensure that the completed timber frame certificate is available on site for inspection by NHBC.

Contact NHBC Standards, Innovation and Research via ***technicalsupport@nhbc.co.uk***

- if you require contact details of frame certifiers, or
- to apply to become a timber frame certifier.

Alternatively, timber frame superstructures from Gold level members of the Structural Timber Association's Assure scheme, who have engaged Silver/Gold level structural designers and engineers, are acceptable without additional certification.

The registered builder should ensure that a letter from the manufacturer is available on site for inspection by NHBC.

Designs should be submitted to NHBC when proposed buildings are four storeys or more and the floor joists are solid timber.

6.2.4 Load-bearing walls

Also see: Chapter 6.3, Structural Timber Association Advice Note 4 Tolerances (www.structuraltimber.co.uk)

Load-bearing timber framed walls shall be constructed to support and transfer loads to foundations safely and without undue movement. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) timber elements
b) joints between panels and other elements
c) positioning of sole plates
d) packing under sole plates
e) fixing panels
f) timber frame erection tolerances
g) support of prefabricated chimneys.

Timber elements

Load-bearing timber framed walls should be in accordance with BS EN 1995-1-1, and take into account:

- wind loads
- roof loads
- floor loads
- cladding loads.

Structural timber components should be of a suitable strength class as specified by the designer to BS EN 338. Solid structural timber should be:

- machine graded to BS EN 14081, or visually graded to BS 4978 for softwoods or BS 5756 for hardwoods
- assigned a strength class based on BS EN 1912 when visually graded
- dry graded
- marked in accordance with BS EN 14081.

Further guidance on strength classes for certain timber species can be found in PD 6693.

Engineered wood products such as I-section or metal-web studs should be assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Individual timber studs should have:

- a minimum width of 38mm
- a maximum spacing of 600mm, unless other adequate support is provided for wall boards and fixings.

Narrow or inaccessible gaps between studs which are difficult to insulate should be avoided.

Lintels and cripple studs should be provided at openings in load-bearing panels except where:

- the opening does not affect the stud spacing, or
- supported loads are carried by a ring beam or header joist.

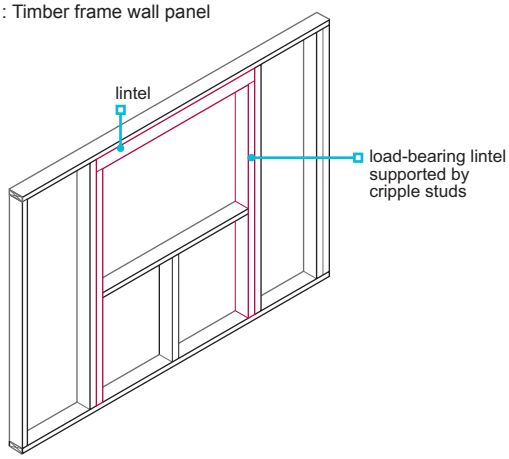
Sheathing and associated fixings should be structurally adequate, and resist racking due to wind and other forces.

Where masonry cladding is used, additional studs may be required at openings and vertical movement joints to fix wall ties.

Where cavity barriers do not align with structural framing members, additional studs and full-depth noggings should be provided.

Multiple studs should be included to support multiple joists and other point loads, unless otherwise specified by the designer. Where head binders are not provided, joists and roof trusses, including girder trusses and other similar loads, should bear directly over studs.

Figure 1: Timber frame wall panel



Joints between panels and other elements

Wall panels should be:

- securely fixed together, and securely fixed to the floor and roof framing
- constructed to prevent buckling.

At joints between wall panels, sole plates and head binders should be provided to bind panels together. Joints in sole plates and head binders should:

- occur over a stud
- not coincide with joints between panels.

Positioning of sole plates

When setting out:

- the substructure should be correctly set out to receive the timber frame
- the timber frame should be checked to ensure that it is erected accurately, both horizontally and vertically
- the load from the frame should be supported as intended in the design
- protection should be provided where foundation ledges form moisture traps.

Figure 2: Sole plate foundation overhang

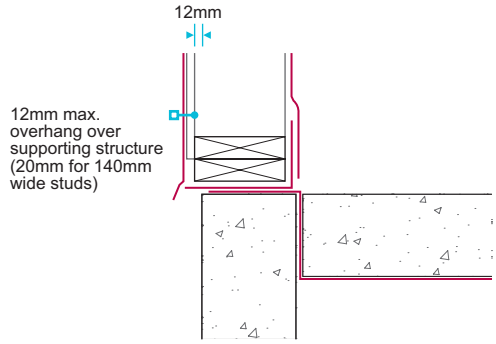
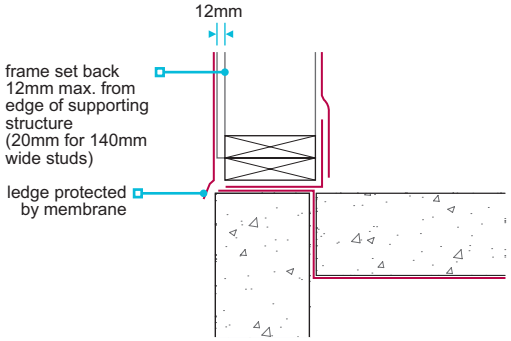


Figure 3: Sole plate foundation set back



Packing under sole plates

Where packing is required to ensure the timber frame or sole plate is level:

- permanent packing should be used for gaps less than 5mm
- grout and mortar should not be used for gaps less than 5mm
- hollow plastic packing with reduced bearing surfaces should not be used
- temporary spacers can remain in place provided they are durable and non-degradable.

Permanent packing should be:

- designed and approved by the timber frame designer to suit the horizontal and vertical loads on the sole plate
- at least the same plan area as the load points, eg studs or posts.

Packing exceeding 20mm should be agreed between the timber frame manufacturer's engineer and NHBC. The following methods are generally acceptable to NHBC for packing up to 20mm.

Permanent structural packing under sole plate

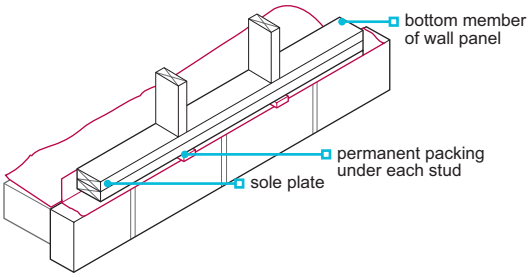
The sole plate should be levelled on temporary spacers.

When the first lift construction (including wall panels, first floor structure, or roof structure in a single storey building) has been erected, permanent packing should be placed under the sole plate, which can be:

- free-flowing non-shrinkable grout for the full length and width of the sole plate, or
- individual packers placed under each load point, eg stud or post.

Where grout is used as permanent structural packing, installation should be checked to ensure full bearing is achieved.

Figure 4: Permanent structural packing under each stud

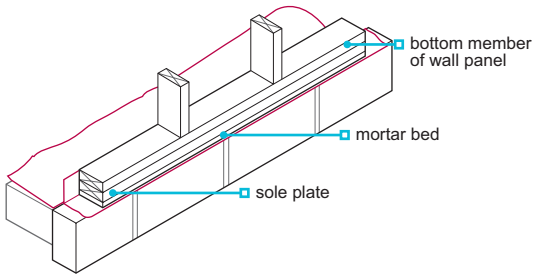


Bedding of the sole plate

The sole plate should be laid and levelled on a continuous bed of mortar prior to the erection of the wall panels.

The bedding should extend the full width of the sole plate. Care is needed to ensure that the bedding is not disturbed during the fixing of the sole plate.

Figure 5: Bedding of sole plate on mortar



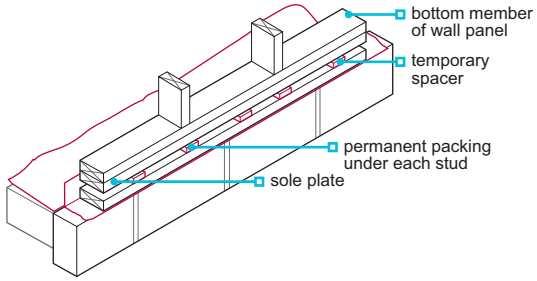
Double sole plate 'sandwich'

The lower sole plate should be fixed to follow the contours of the supporting structure.

The upper sole plate should then be fixed on top and levelled with temporary spacers inserted between the sole plates.

When the first lift construction has been erected, permanent packing should be inserted under each load point, eg stud or post.

Figure 6: Double sole plate sandwich



Fixing panels

The wall panels should be adequately fixed to the sole plate so that the frame can resist both lateral and vertical forces.

When fixing panels:

- fixings, including nailed joints and sheathing, should be as scheduled in the design
- they should be securely fixed together, to the floor and to the roof framing
- sole plates and head binders should be provided to bind the panels together.

Timber frame erection tolerances

Timber frame erection tolerances based on guidance from the Structural Timber Association will generally be acceptable.

Support of prefabricated chimneys

Prefabricated chimneys should be supported by either the:

- masonry cladding, or
- the timber frame, including any roof construction supported by the timber frame.

6.2.5 Fixing the frame

The timber frame shall be suitably fixed to the substructure.

Shotfiring

Where shotfiring:

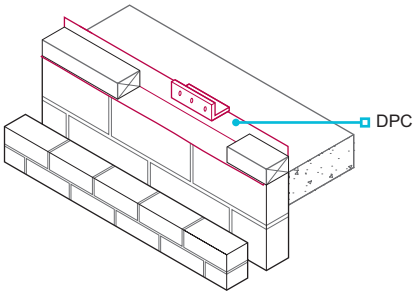
- into masonry, solid concrete blocks should be specified as BS EN 771 with a minimum crushing strength of 7.3N/mm^2 and positioned to receive fixings
- the blocks in beam and block floors should be grouted
- care should be taken not to spall edges of masonry or slabs.

Anchoring

When anchoring the frame:

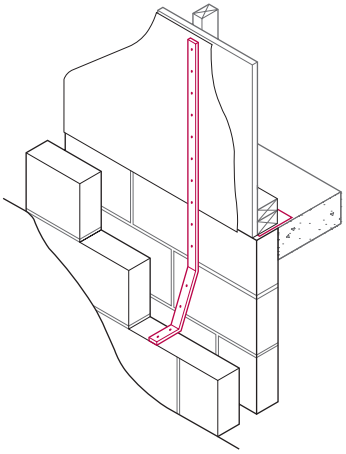
- the sole plate should be adequately anchored to the substructure so that the frame can resist both lateral and vertical forces
- care should be taken to avoid splitting timber plates or damaging the substructure.

Figure 7: Sole plate anchor brackets



Fixing to plate

Figure 8: Hold down straps built into masonry cladding



Fixing to stud

Holding-down devices should be durable, as detailed in the design and manufactured from:

- austenitic stainless steel to BS EN 10088-1, minimum grade 1.4301
- galvanised mild steel with zinc coating to BS EN ISO 1461, minimum coating 940 g/m^2 on each side.

Sole plate anchors within the internal envelope should be galvanised mild steel, minimum coating Z275.

6.2.6 Nails and staples

Nails and staples shall be durable and of the correct type to provide adequate mechanical fixing.

Nails for fixing sheathing or timber should be either:

- austenitic stainless steel, or
- galvanised, or
- sherardised.

Staples for fixing breather membranes should be:

- austenitic stainless steel, or
- other material of similar strength and corrosion resistance.

6.2.7 Sheathing

Sheathing shall be durable and capable of providing structural resistance to racking.

The following materials are acceptable:

Plywood	BS EN 636-2S or BS EN 636-3S
Oriented strand board	BS EN 300 type OSB/3 or OSB/4
Moisture-resistant chipboard	BS EN 312 type P5 or P7
Medium board	BS EN 622-3 type MBH.HLS1 or MBH.HLS2
Impregnated soft board	BS EN 622-4 type SB.HLS
Proprietary sheathing materials	Technical Requirement R3 and used in accordance with the assessment

Plasterboard may contribute to racking resistance when used in accordance with PD 6693-1. Limitations or exclusions apply to walls that are not separating walls comprising two or more built-up layers of plasterboard having a minimum thickness of 30mm, and walls where plasterboard is combined with a wood-based sheathing on the same wall diaphragm.

6.2.8 Differential movement

*Also see: Institution of Gas Engineers and Managers (**www.igem.org.uk**) and 'Differential Movement in Platform Timber Frame' **(www.structuraltimber.co.uk)***

Timber structures shall account for differential movement between the timber frame wall and other building elements.

As the timber frame dries out, it will shrink and the overall height will reduce. The extent of the differential movement increases with the number of storeys, and will typically occur between the timber frame and other parts of the construction, including:

- door and window openings with masonry cladding
- eaves and verges with masonry cladding
- openings for drive-throughs with masonry cladding
- balconies (including Juliet balconies)
- service entries
- staircases and lift shaft enclosures (where they are not timber framed)
- the interface of the timber frame with any other construction at each floor level where cladding is fixed to the timber frame.

Where lightweight cladding is fixed to the timber frame, movement across floor zones should be allowed for in the cladding system and its supporting structure.

Movement joints should be provided to accommodate the expected movement. Joints should be detailed to:

- accommodate the expected amount of shrinkage or expansion safely
- provide an additional allowance for the residual thickness of any compressible filler materials after movement has occurred
- provide a weather resistant and durable joint
- be protected by a cover strip where the movement gap/joint is expected to be more than 35mm.

Where compressible filler materials are specified, they should be specified based on the anticipated residual gap size after movement has occurred.

In the absence of project-specific calculations, gaps in accordance with Table 1 should be provided.

Table 1: Gap sizes with masonry cladding to accommodate differential movement

Gap location	Opening and closing gaps (mm)	
	Floor joists	
	Solid timber (mm)	Engineered I-joist (mm)
Eaves/verge	Add 5mm to gap dimension at level below	
Sixth floor	Specialist calculations to be submitted to NHBC(2)	61
Fifth floor		53
Fourth floor		45
Third floor	45	35
Second floor	35	25
First floor	20	15
Ground floor(1)	5	5

Notes

1 Ground floor or lowest level of timber frame.

2 Calculations, where required, are to be based on BS EN 1995-1-1.

Table 1 is based on the following:

- the table allows for a 2mm thickness of compressible material in closing gaps. Check the manufacturer's product details
- timber components are not saturated and have normal moisture contents at the time of construction, eg less than 20% and tight-jointed construction
- the ground floor is concrete. For ground floors of timber joists, add 15mm for solid timber and 10mm for engineered timber joists
- timber joist and ring beam/header joist have a maximum depth of 240mm
- timber frame floor cross-section is as shown below, with maximum 45mm deep timber plates/binders
- single head binder at the eaves. Maximum double sole plates
- outer leaf brickwork with expansion rates no greater than 2.5mm per storey
- brickwork up to five storeys, with lightweight cladding above five storeys
- lightweight cladding – floor level joints must be 15mm for solid timber joists and 10mm for engineered timber joists.

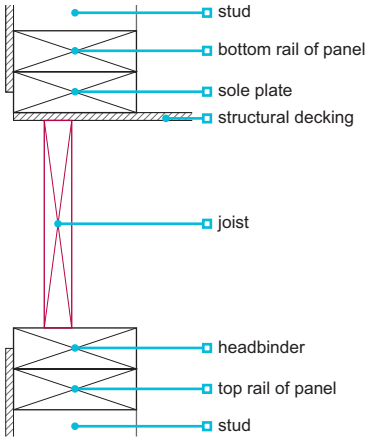
Differential movement should be accommodated by the services where they:

- are within the timber frame construction/envelope and pass across floor zones
- pass through the external envelope.

Common details

The following sketches consider downward movement of the timber frame and upward brick expansion, taken as 2.5mm per storey of clay masonry. Cavity trays, cavity barriers, open perpend vents etc are omitted for clarity.

Figure 9: Platform timber frame floor zone



Timber frame construction on which Table 1 is based

Figure 10: Window head and sill with masonry cladding

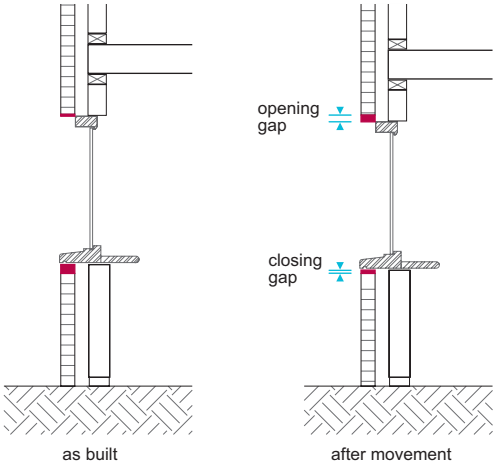


Figure 11: Movement allowance at window sill with masonry cladding

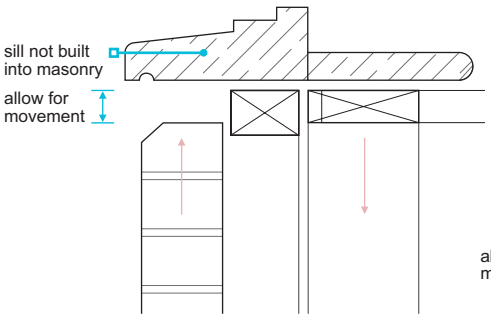


Figure 12: Movement allowance at window head with masonry cladding

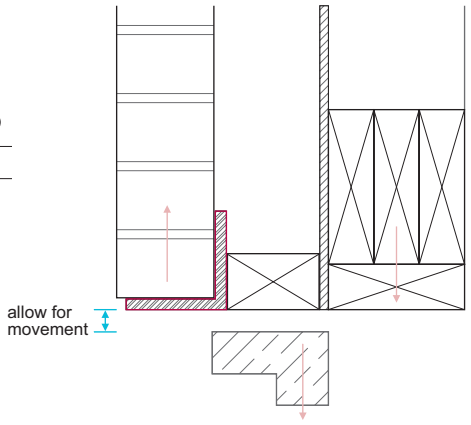


Figure 13: Movement allowance at window head with masonry cladding

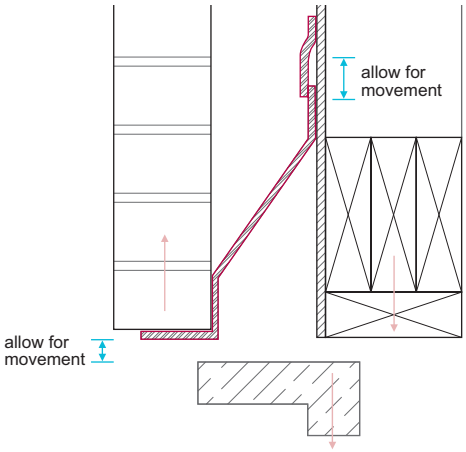


Figure 14: Lightweight cladding window head

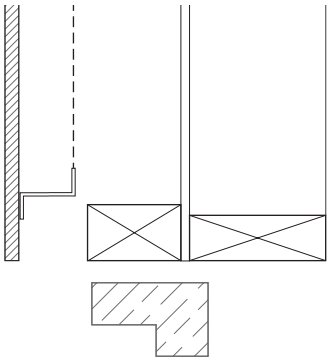


Figure 15: Lightweight cladding window sill

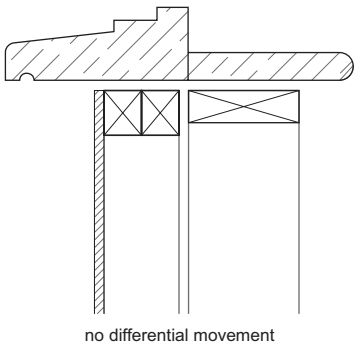


Figure 16: Movement allowance at roof to vertical abutment – before movement

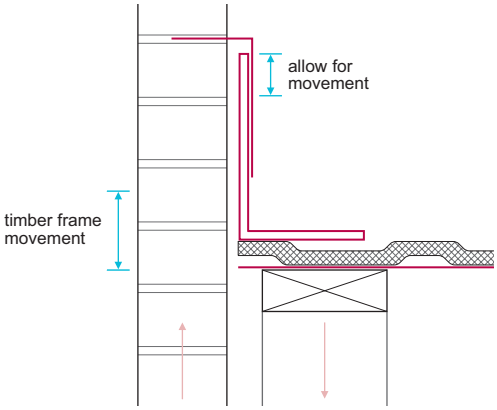


Figure 17: Movement allowance at roof to vertical abutment – after movement

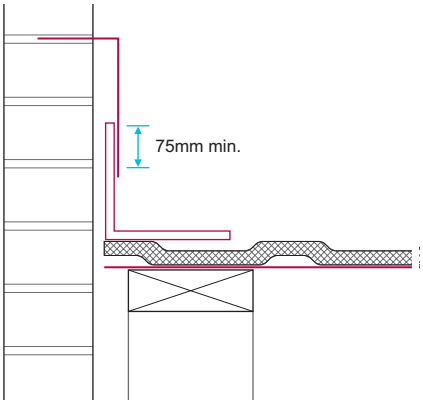


Figure 18: Timber frame interface with concrete or masonry communal areas – before movement

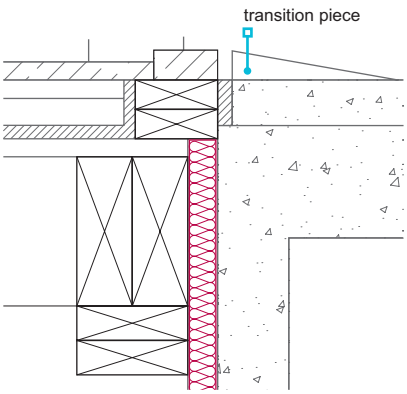
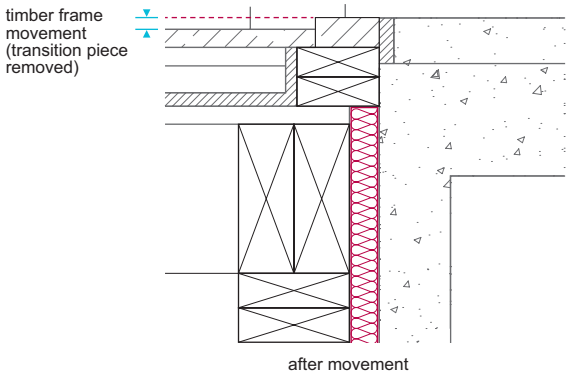


Figure 19: Timber frame interface with concrete or masonry communal areas – after movement



Eaves and verges

Where a movement gap provided between the top of an exterior cladding of masonry and the eaves or verge soffit exceeds 10mm and is not protected by a purposely designed overhang, the gap should be protected with a compressible filler material or mesh to prevent the entry of birds, etc. The filler material or mesh should be flexible so as not to inhibit the differential movement between the exterior cladding of masonry and timber frame. Where a flexible filler is used, it should be sized based on the anticipated residual gap after movement has occurred.

Figure 20: Movement allowance at roof eaves

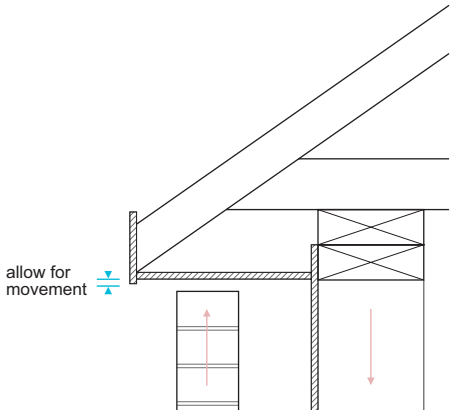
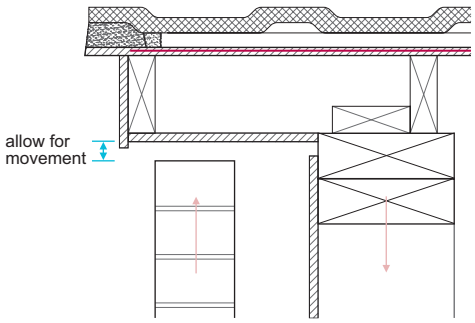
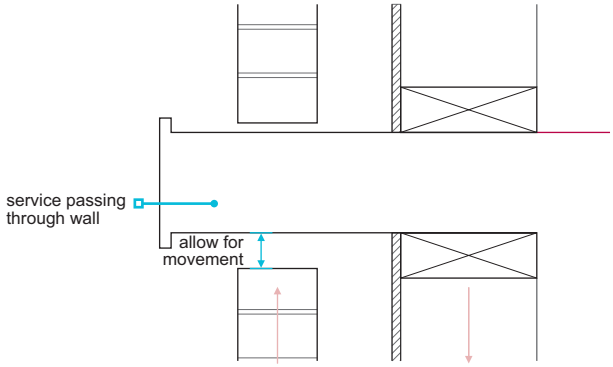


Figure 21: Movement allowance at roof verge



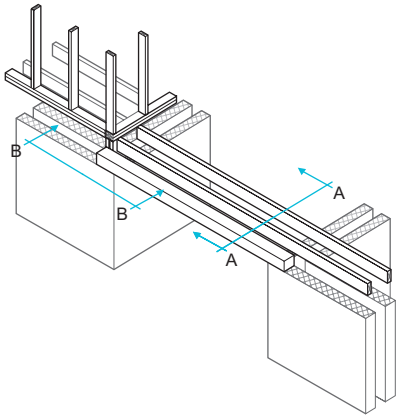
Services

Figure 22: Movement allowance at service penetrations through masonry cladding



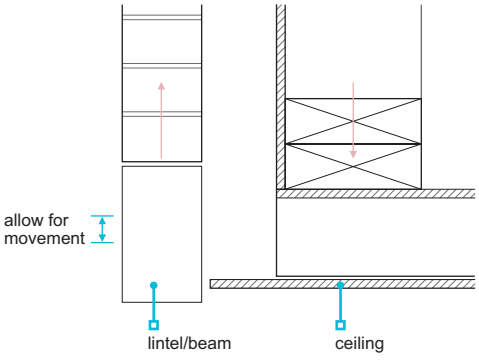
Drive through

Figure 23: Drive through section details



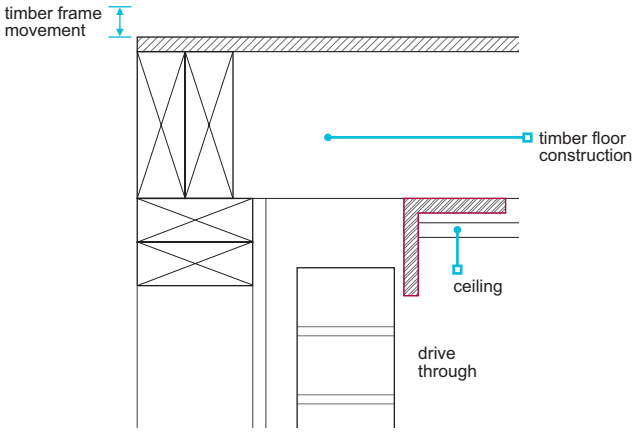
Drive through

Figure 24: Drive through Section A-A



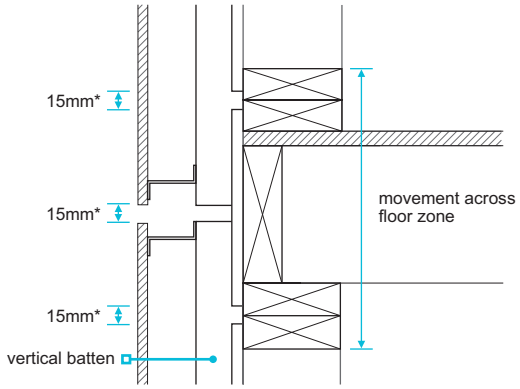
Section A-A

Figure 25: Drive through Section B-B



Section B-B

Figure 26: Floor zone movement gap with lightweight cladding



Lightweight cladding and masonry plinth

Figure 27: Movement gaps at the junction of lightweight and masonry cladding

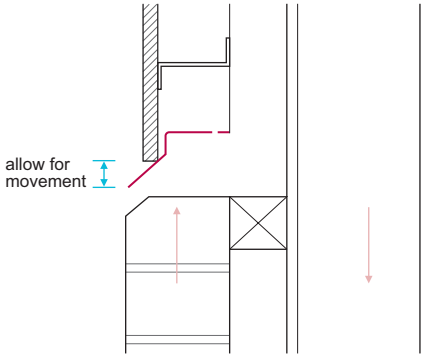


Figure 28: Balcony abutment – lightweight cladding

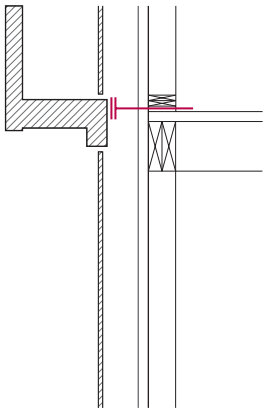


Figure 29: Balcony abutment – lightweight cladding

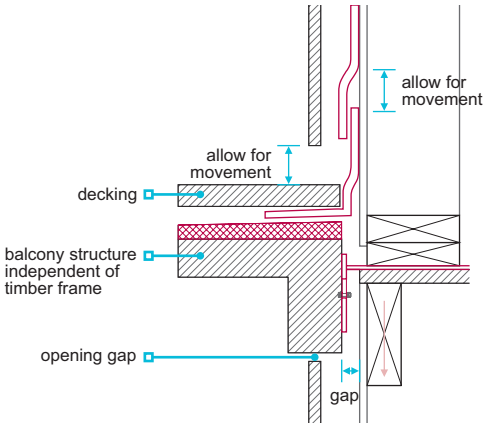


Figure 30: Balcony abutment – masonry cladding

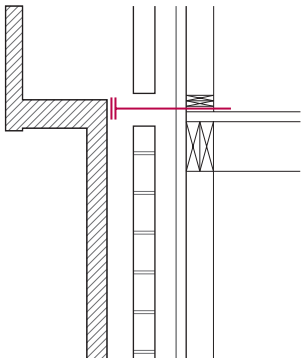


Figure 31: Balcony abutment – masonry cladding

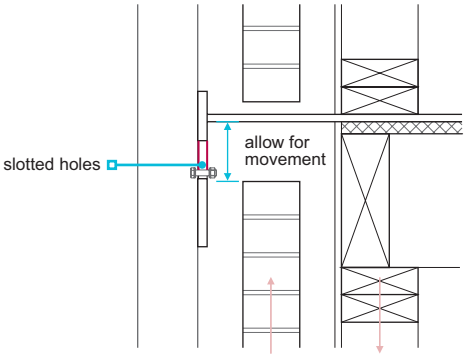


Figure 32: Slotted holes in balcony support brackets

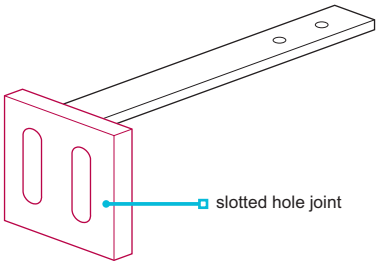


Figure 33: Sliding movement joint in balcony support bracket

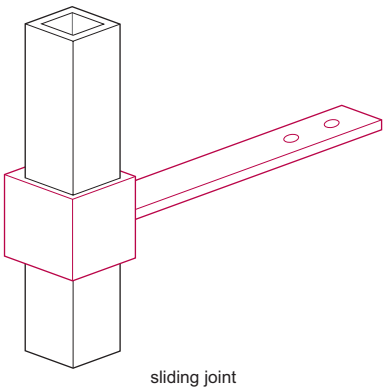


Figure 34: Juliette balcony support fixed to masonry cladding

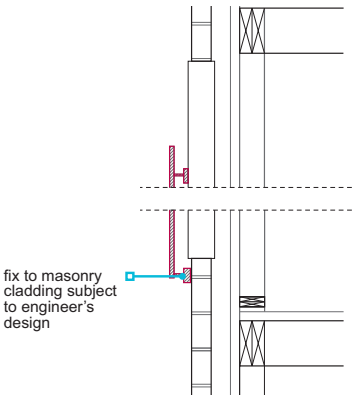
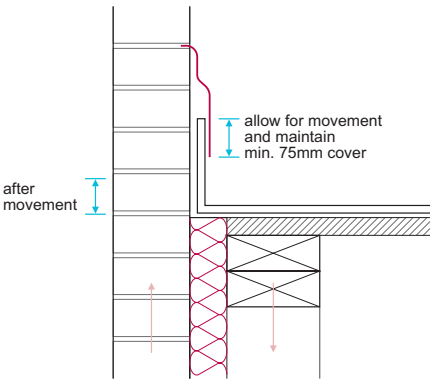


Figure 35: Flat roof to masonry abutment movement detail



6.2.9 Fire resistance

Timber walls and panels shall control and resist the spread of fire and smoke. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) cavity barriers and fire-stopping
b) services
c) fire resistance of the wall or panel.

All building elements should have adequate fire resistance. Materials in accordance with Building Regulations are acceptable; other materials should be assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

For guidance on the prevention of fire during construction refer to 'Fire Prevention on Construction Sites' jointly published by the Construction Federation and the Fire Protection Association (**www.thefpa.co.uk**), and guidance from the Structural Timber Association (**www.structuraltimber.co.uk**) under the 'Site Safety Strategy', including the '16 Steps to Fire Safety' and the 'Design Guide to Separating Distances'.

Cavity barriers and fire-stopping

The installation, position and materials for cavity barriers and fire-stopping should be in accordance with the relevant Building Regulations and the design.

Horizontal and vertical cavity barriers should be protected by DPCs arranged to shed moisture away from the sheathing. Horizontal cavity barriers in masonry cladding, except under eaves, should be protected with:

- DPC tray with a 100mm minimum upstand, or
- a polyethylene-encased cavity barrier with a 100mm minimum upstand.

Horizontal cavity barriers in lightweight cladding should be protected by cavity trays, DPCs or flashings as appropriate.

Figure 36: Fire-stopping and compartmentation at compartment wall/roof junction

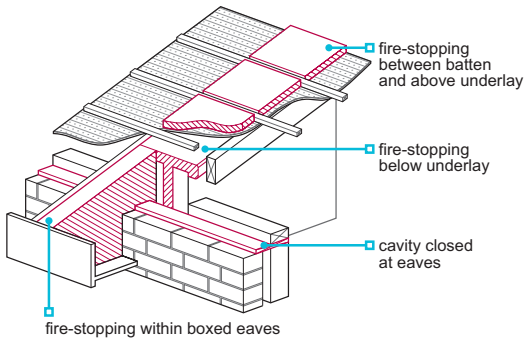


Figure 37: Horizontal cavity barrier protected with DPC

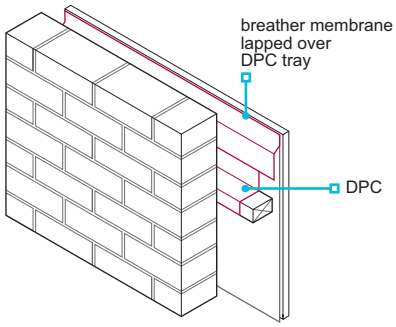
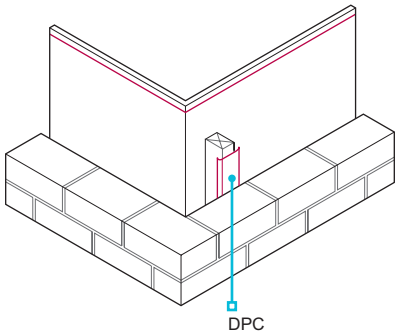


Figure 38: Vertical cavity barrier protected with DPC



Services

Only the services shown in the design should be installed in separating walls and:

- service outlets should not impair the fire resistance of floors and walls
- service mains should not pass through separating wall cavities.

Notching or drilling of structural timber members should be carried out as detailed in the design. If these details are not available, the designer should be consulted before such operations are begun.

In Scotland, services are not permitted within a timber framed separating wall.

Fire resistance of the wall or panel

Timber frame walls should have adequate fire resistance in accordance with the relevant Building Regulations.

Timber frame systems should be supported with representative test evidence to appropriate standards such as BS 476:21, or BS EN 1365-1 for load-bearing walls and BS EN 1365-2 for floors. Supporting evidence should be relevant to the materials, systems and details proposed.

6.2.10 Protection from moisture

Also see: Chapter 6.1 and 6.9

Timber structures and panels shall be adequately protected from the effects of moisture. Issues to be taken in to account include:

a) cavity construction

b) drainage and ventilation

c) DPCs and cavity trays.

Cavity construction

A drained and vented cavity should be provided to reduce the risk of rain penetrating the frame. Cavity widths, measured between the cladding and sheathing, should be in accordance with Table 2.

Table 2: Cavity widths

Cladding	Minimum cavity width
Masonry	50mm nominal
Render on backed lathing	25mm nominal
Vertical tile hanging [1] where a breather membrane is provided and fixed to the sheathing	Dependant on batten support layout and spacing[1]
Other cladding[1]	15mm

Notes

1 See Chapter 6.9 'Curtain walling and cladding'.

In areas of very severe exposure to wind driven rain, wall construction should include a 50mm cavity between the sheathing and the cladding and:

- a high performance breather membrane (see Clause 6.2.13), or
- masonry cladding which is rendered or clad with an impervious material.

Cavities should be:

- vented to allow some limited, but not necessarily through, movement of air
- kept clean, free of obstructions and capable of draining freely.

Masonry cladding should be constructed in accordance with Chapter 6.1 'External masonry walls'. Lightweight render cladding should be constructed in accordance with Chapter 6.11 'Render'. Vertical tile hanging and slating should be constructed in accordance with Chapter 6.9 'Curtain walling and cladding'. Proprietary cladding should be fixed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and Chapter 6.9 'Curtain walling and cladding'.

External wall cavities should not contain electricity cables other than meter tails.

Drainage and Ventilation

Drainage and ventilation should be provided to the cavity between the timber frame wall and external cladding.

Cavities between masonry cladding (including brickwork, rendered blockwork and stone) and timber frame walls should be vented. Cavity vents should be:

- equivalent to open brick perpend joints every 1.2m
- located to prevent the ingress of rain
- located to drain moisture from the cavity.

Proprietary perpend ventilators should be used. Perpend ventilators should be installed to the base of external wall cavities below the lowest timber sole plate and above finished ground level; if continuous cavity trays are installed at sole plate level, perpend ventilators should be installed above and below the tray to provide drainage and ventilation to all areas of the timber frame. Where wall areas are divided by horizontal cavity barriers and/or cavity trays, each individual cavity should be vented. Weepholes should be provided at cavity trays over openings.

Cavities between lightweight external cladding and timber frame walls should be vented or ventilated depending on cladding type. Cavity vents should be:

- installed to promote through ventilation where required
- protected to prevent the ingress of rain, insects, birds, and vermin
- located to drain moisture from the cavity.

Drainage and ventilation openings should be provided to the base of external lightweight cladding at/near ground level, above horizontal cavity barriers and flashings, and above openings (such as windows and doors).

Horizontal battens used to support lightweight external cladding should be spaced off the frame using vertical counter battens to provide a path for drainage and ventilation. Battens or carrier rail systems supporting lightweight cladding should be located over and fixed to studs. Vertical battens and carrier rail systems should have joints at floor zones to accommodate differential movement.

DPCs and Cavity Trays

DPCs should be:

- fitted at openings to prevent rain penetration
- installed below the sole plates of ground floor walls and internal partitions
- lapped with the DPM and AVCL to enhance air tightness at sole plate level
- installed over horizontal timber cavity barriers (except under eaves and verge) and lapped behind the breather membrane by at least 100mm.

Cavity trays should:

- be installed over openings, at abutments, and where specified at sole plate level
- have weepholes to deflect moisture out of the cavity over openings, or perpend ventilators where cavity trays are continuous
- be lapped behind the breather membrane by at least 100mm to deflect moisture away from the sheathing
- be marked to BS EN 14909 and have satisfactory assessment by an appropriate independent technical approvals authority accepted by NHBC.

Clause 6.1.17 contains further guidance on the installation of cavity trays in masonry cladding.

In Northern Ireland, Scotland and the Isle of Man, and in areas of severe or very severe exposure to driving rain, masonry should form a rebate at the reveals of openings to avoid a straight through joint where the frame abuts the masonry.

Figure 39: Window head detail with cavity tray and weepholes

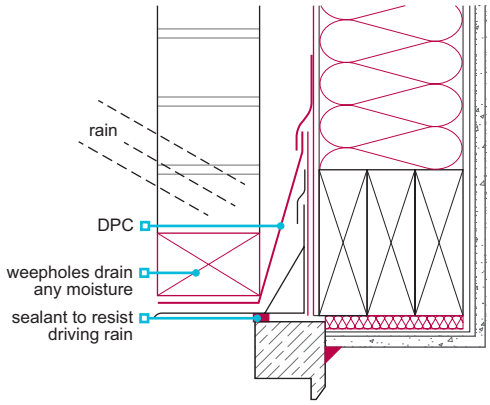
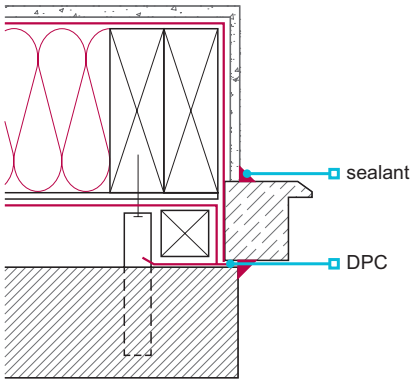


Figure 40: Rebate at window reveal in areas of severe or very severe exposure



Cavities should:

- extend below DPC to allow drainage
- be kept clear and be vented
- be suitably drained to prevent water build-up.

The lowest timber should be a minimum of 150mm above finished ground level. This may be reduced to 75mm in situations where the site is not subject to a high water table or where the cavity will not have standing water.

Figure 41: Lowest timber at least 150mm above external ground level

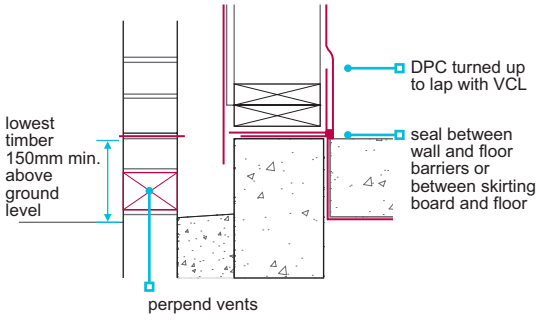
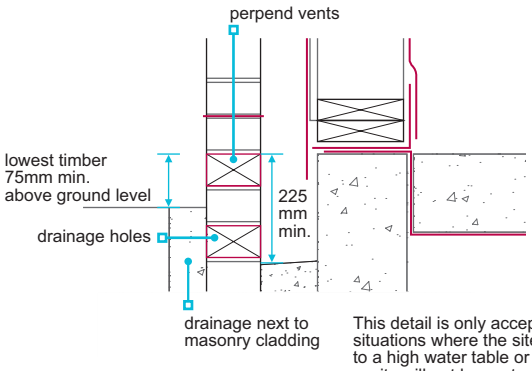


Figure 42: Lowest timber at least 75mm above external ground level



This detail is only acceptable in situations where the site is not subject to a high water table or where the cavity will not have standing water

6.2.11 Timber preservation

Timber and timber products shall either have adequate natural durability or be treated with preservative to provide resistance against fungal decay and insect attack.

The following should have adequate natural durability or be preservative treated in accordance with Chapter 3.3 'Timber preservation (natural solid timber)':

- timber framing members including studs, rails, sole plates, etc
- external timber cladding
- engineered timber I-section or metal-web studs.

6.2.12 Air and vapour control layers

Air and vapour control layers shall be installed correctly and restrict the passage of air and water vapour from within the home into the timber frame.

A high resistance air and vapour control layer should be provided, unless a condensation risk analysis shows that it is not necessary and the air and vapour control function is being provided by another solution compliant with NHBC Technical Requirements. An analysis in accordance with BS EN ISO 13788 (Glaser method), using the following boundary conditions will generally be acceptable:

- >60% internal relative humidity
- 21°C internal air temperature
- -2°C external air temperature.

Air and vapour control layers should be:

- installed once framing timbers have a moisture content of less than 20%
- installed once the building is weathertight
- minimum 500 gauge (125 micron) polyethylene sheet, vapour control plasterboard or a product assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3
- adequately fixed to the warm side of the insulation and frame
- fixed at 250mm centres to the top and bottom of the frame and at laps and around openings, vapour control plasterboard should be fixed in accordance with Clause 9.2.4
- placed to completely cover the external framed wall area, including rails, studs, lintels, and sills
- lapped with the DPC/DPM and at junctions to improve air tightness
- lapped into reveals and sealed to window and door frames
- sealed around service penetrations
- made good where damage has occurred.

Joints in the air and vapour control layer:

- should have 100mm minimum laps
- should be located on studs, rails, or noggings and be mechanically fixed
- may be sealed with adhesive tape for enhanced air tightness (but joints should still occur over studs, rails, or noggings and be mechanically fixed).

Where vapour control plasterboard is used, joints should be:

- positioned on studs, rails or noggings
- filled, taped and finished
- cut with care to avoid displacing the vapour control material.

Where floor zone air tightness membranes are specified for enhanced air tightness, they should be of a breathable material with a vapour resistance less than 0.6MNs/g (0.12 Sd) when tested in accordance with BS EN ISO 12572 using the set of conditions C and using five test specimens.

6.2.13 Breather membranes

Breather membranes shall be correctly installed to protect the sheathing and frame from moisture, and allow water vapour from within the frame to pass into the cavity.

Breather membranes should be:

- vapour resistant to less than 0.6MNs/g (0.12 Sd) when tested in accordance with BS EN ISO 12572 using the set of conditions C and using five test specimens
- at least Class W2 to BS EN 13859-2 with no water leakage during testing. In areas of very severe exposure (see Clause 6.1.6 for classification of exposure zones) or where liquid water penetration of the cladding is anticipated, for example open-jointed cladding, Class W1 should be used. When open-jointed claddings are used or the membrane is likely to be left exposed during construction for a duration longer than normally to be expected (also see the membrane manufacturers recommendations on exposure times), performance should be based on artificial aged behaviour in accordance with BS EN 13859-2. Where a vented and ventilated cavity with full rainscreen and no gaps, for example masonry or rendered board claddings are used, performance should be based on artificial aged behaviour in accordance with BS EN 13111
- capable of resisting water penetration
- durable and adequately strong when wet to resist site damage
- self extinguishing
- fixed so that vertical joints are staggered where possible, and at regular intervals, to prevent damage by wind
- lapped so that each joint is protected and moisture drains outwards and downwards
- lapped so that upper layers are over lower layers to ensure rain runs away from the sheathing
- lapped so that water is shed away from the lowest timber
- lapped with a minimum 100mm overlap on horizontal joints and 150mm on vertical joints
- fixed at a maximum spacing of 600mm horizontally and 300mm vertically
- fixed at a maximum spacing of 150mm around openings
- marked with stud positions for wall tie or cladding fixing
- applied using fixings that are in accordance with this chapter
- repaired or replaced before proceeding with the cladding, if damaged.

Figure 43: Breather membrane laps

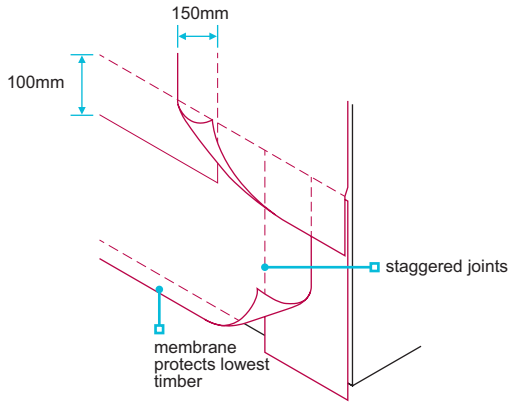
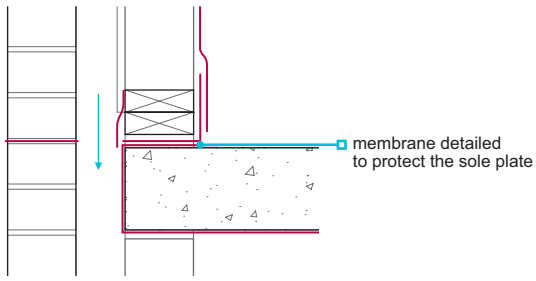


Figure 44: Breather membrane lapped over sole plate



6.2.14 Wall ties and fixings

Wall ties and fixings shall adequately connect the cladding to the timber frame.

Wall ties and their fixings should be:

- compliant with BS 845-1
- in accordance with the design
- capable of accommodating the anticipated differential movement
- of the type specified in the design
- of austenitic stainless steel
- fixed to the studs and not the sheathing using the fixings supplied by the wall tie manufacturer
- kept clean and free from mortar droppings
- spaced at a maximum of 600mm horizontally and 450mm vertically
- spaced at jambs of openings and at movement joints at a maximum of 300mm vertically and within 225mm of the masonry reveal or movement joint; additional studs may be needed
- spaced within 225mm of the top of the wall, including at gables
- inclined away from the sheathing so that the slope is maintained following differential movement.

6.2.15 Insulation

Also see: BRE Report 'Thermal insulation: avoiding risks'

Insulation shall be correctly installed and provide suitable performance.

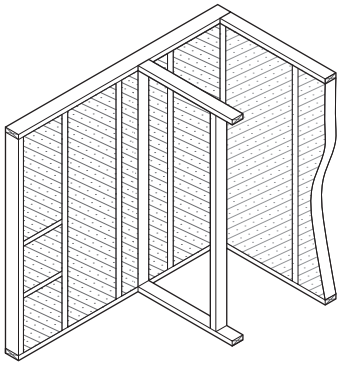
Insulation should be:

- breathable, eg mineral wool (rock or glass), or
- assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3 for use in timber frame wall panels.

Insulation should generally be placed within the stud void and cover the whole wall area between studs. No gaps should be left:

- at corners
- at junctions with partitions
- against studs, rails or noggings
- behind services and pattresss panels.

Figure 45: Insulation between external wall studs



Water and heating services within walls should be on the warm side of the insulation.

Where insulation is to be installed to the external/cavity face of the frame:

- it should be assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3 as an integral part of the wall system
- a clear cavity should be provided, based on the dimensions set out in Table 2 in Clause 6.2.10, between the outer face of the insulation and the external cladding
- a breather membrane should be installed to protect the timber frame wall and sheathing. A secondary breather membrane to protect the external insulation may be necessary depending on insulation manufacturer's installation instructions and independent technical approval
- stud locator marks should be transferred onto the outer face of insulation/external breather membrane (dependant on wall tie type and order of works)
- wall ties should transfer loads directly to the timber frame studs and not via the insulation
- the installation of lightweight cladding systems should be designed by a structural engineer to ensure adequate load transfer to the structural frame
- cavity barriers should be installed to fully close the cavity, ensuring their performance is unlikely to be made ineffective by failure of the insulation.

Where insulation, either in the form of insulated plasterboard or a separate continuous layer, is to be installed to the inside face of the frame, the fire resistance of the wall should be in accordance with Clause 6.2.9 with appropriate supporting evidence.

Figure reference table

Figure reference table 6.2

Fig No	Title/Description	Clause	Page
Figure 1	Timber frame wall panel	6.2.4	2
Figure 2	Sole plate foundation overhang	6.2.4	3
Figure 3	Sole plate foundation set back	6.2.4	3
Figure 4	Permanent structural packing under each stud	6.2.4	3
Figure 5	Bedding of sole plate on mortar	6.2.4	4
Figure 6	Double sole plate sandwich	6.2.4	4
Figure 7	Sole plate anchor brackets	6.2.5	5
Figure 8	Hold down straps built into masonry cladding	6.2.5	5
Figure 9	Platform timber frame floor zone	6.2.8	7
Figure 10	Window head and sill with masonry cladding	6.2.8	7
Figure 11	Movement allowance at window sill with masonry cladding	6.2.8	7
Figure 12	Movement allowance at window head with masonry cladding	6.2.8	7
Figure 13	Movement allowance at window head with masonry cladding	6.2.8	7
Figure 14	Lightweight cladding window head	6.2.8	8
Figure 15	Lightweight cladding window sill	6.2.8	8

Chapter

6.3

Internal walls

This chapter gives guidance on meeting the Technical Requirements for internal walls, including:

- **separating and compartment walls**
- **internal partition walls.**

6.3.1 Compliance

Also see: Chapter 2.1

Internal walls shall comply with the Technical Requirements.

Internal walls, including separating, compartment and partition walls, which comply with the guidance in this chapter will generally be acceptable.

6.3.2 Provision of information

Designs and specifications shall be produced in a clearly understandable format, include all relevant information and be distributed to all appropriate personnel.

Design and specification information should be issued to site supervisors, relevant specialist subcontractors and suppliers, and include the following information:

- wall layout, with all dimensions shown
- position and size of openings and lintels
- details of junctions, indicating fire-stopping where applicable
- details of wall constructions and materials, ties and restraints
- details of junctions between a separating or compartment wall and a pitched or flat roof
- details of pipes and cables where they penetrate walls, including fire-resisting walls
- manufacturer's recommendations for assembly and fixing of propriety components.

6.3.3 Supporting load-bearing internal walls

Loadbearing internal walls shall be adequately supported by foundations.

Load-bearing internal walls should have:

- a foundation, or
- a means of support that transfers loads safely to a foundation.

Foundations should be in accordance with Part 4 of these Standards, including, where applicable, Chapter 4.3 'Strip and trench fill foundations' and Chapter 4.4 'Raft, pile, beam and pier foundations'.

6.3.4 Masonry walls

Also see: Chapters 6.1, 6.4, 6.8 and 9.2

Internal masonry walls shall be designed to support and transfer loads to foundations safely and without undue movement. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) structural elements
b) mortar mix and jointing
c) workmanship
d) bonding and tying
e) lateral restraint
f) masonry separating walls
g) lintels and beams.

Structural elements

Structural design of masonry walls should be in accordance with BS EN 1996-1-1.

Bricks and blocks should be selected in accordance with their intended use and as recommended in Table 1.

Table 1: Bricks and blocks in buildings up to three storeys high

Height of wall[1]	Unit	Minimum compressive strength[2]
One or two storey	Blocks	2.9 N/mm^2
	Bricks	9.0 N/mm^2
Lowest storey of a three storey wall, or where individual storeys exceed 2.7m	Blocks	7.3 N/mm^2
	Bricks	13.0 N/mm^2
Upper storeys of a three storey wall	Blocks	2.9 N/mm^2
	Bricks	9.0 N/mm^2

Notes
1. The compressive strengths shown are applicable where the floor to ceiling distance is not greater than 2.7m.
2. The compressive strengths shown are applicable where the roof is of timber construction.

Where buildings are more than three storeys high, masonry should be designed in accordance with Technical Requirement R5 and the block strength specified in the design.

Precast concrete blocks

Concrete blocks should comply with BS EN 771. The maximum load-bearing capacity of the wall should not exceed the recommendations of the manufacturer.

Flue blocks should be in accordance with Chapter 6.8 ‘Fireplaces, chimneys and flues’.

Bricks

Bricks should comply with the relevant British Standards:

Clay bricks	BS EN 771-1
Calcium silicate bricks	BS EN 771-2
Concrete bricks	BS EN 771-3

When used in a separating wall, masonry should:

- be used in accordance with the design
- meet the structural, fire and acoustic requirements of the Building Regulations.

Mortar mix and jointing

Mortar should:

- be the correct mix and used within two hours, unless it is retarded mortar
- not be re-tempered if it has started to set
- include sulfate-resisting cement where required.

Admixtures, retarded mortars and premixed mortars should be:

- compatible with masonry and other components
- used in accordance with Clause 6.1.14 ‘Mortar’ and the manufacturer’s recommendations.

Air-entraining agents:

- can help reduce frost damage but cannot be used as anti-freeze
- should be carefully measured for each batch
- should be used in accordance with Clause 6.1.14 ‘Mortar’ and the manufacturer’s recommendations.

Bricks and blocks should be laid on a full bed of mortar, with perpend joints solidly filled.

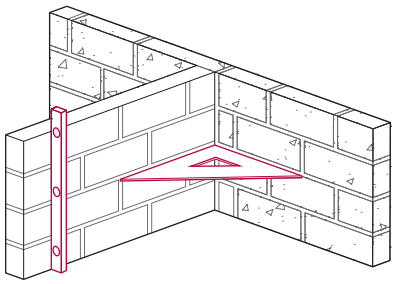
Where walls are to be finished with wet plaster, joints should be raked out to a shallow depth to provide a key, unless the units have suitable texture or metal lathing is used, to ensure adequate bond strength is achieved. For dry lining, mortar joints should be struck off flush. For further guidance see Clause 9.2.3 ‘Plastering’.

Workmanship

Internal masonry walls and associated works should be:

- constructed in lifts/stages to prevent the distortion of wall panels during construction
- accurately set out
- reasonably plane and true
- plumb, with courses level.

Figure 1: Square and plumb walls



Bonding and tying

Internal masonry walls should:

- maintain a regular bonding pattern
- not include bricks or blocks of different types in the same wall, to avoid cracking
- be fully bonded or tied, either with a tooth at alternate courses, or an expanded metal strip or wall tie at a maximum vertical spacing of 300mm.

Joist filling should be brick or blockwork, without excessive mortar joints.

Figure 2: Bonded connection

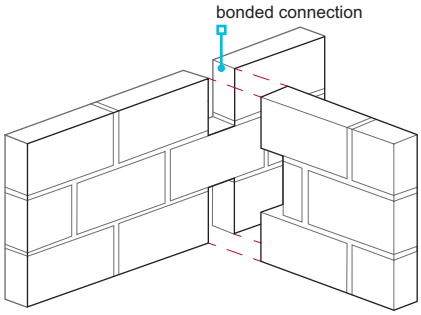


Figure 3: Tied connection

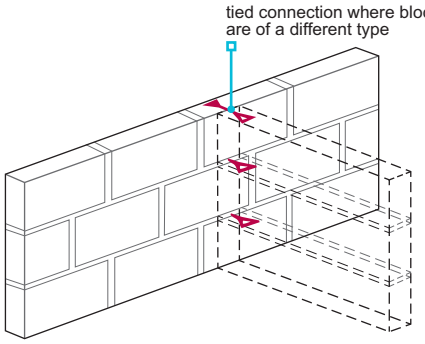
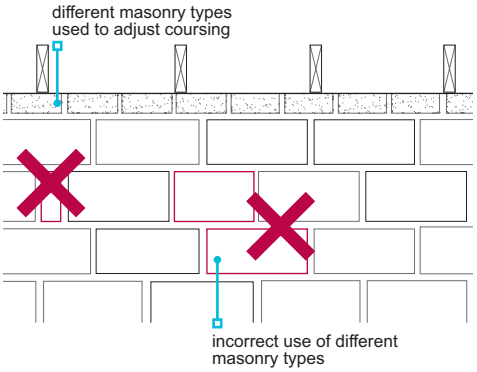


Figure 4: Incorrect use of materials



Lateral restraint

Load-bearing masonry walls, including separating walls, should be provided with lateral restraint at:

- each floor level
- ceiling level below a roof.

Restraint straps should be provided to separating walls on each level, at a maximum of 2m centres, when the floor:

- is not on, or near, the same level
- does not provide adequate restraint.

Lateral restraint should be provided in accordance with Chapter 6.4 ‘Timber and concrete upper floors’.

Timber floors

Adequate restraint can be provided by timber floors where joists have a minimum 90mm bearing. Alternatively, restraint should be provided by:

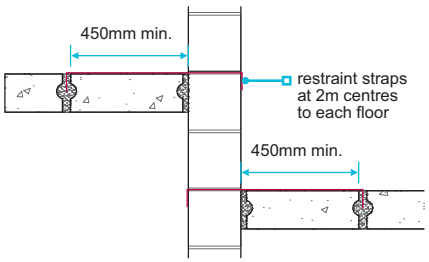
- restraint straps with a minimum 30mm x 5mm cross-section, or
- restraint type joist hangers to BS EN 845-1 with a performance equivalent to restraint straps, or
- proprietary straps in accordance with Chapter 6.4.

Concrete floors

Adequate restraint can be provided by concrete floors that have a minimum 90mm bearing on to the wall. Alternatively, restraint should be provided by:

- restraint straps that are a minimum of 450mm long with the end turned down between a joint in the concrete floor or suitably fixed with screws.

Figure 5: Restraint straps to concrete floors



Masonry separating walls

Both leaves of a masonry cavity separating wall should be tied together to provide structural stability. The type of tie and spacing should limit the sound transmission across the cavity in accordance with Building Regulations.

Lintels and beams

Lintels and beams should be specified according to loads and spans:

- in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations, and
- designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

For masonry construction:

- concrete and steel lintels are suitable
- timber lintels should not be used
- lintels should extend beyond the end of each opening in accordance with Table 2.

Figure 6: Lintel positioning

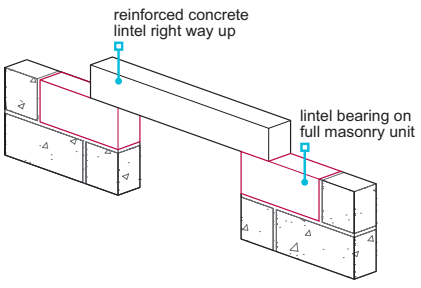


Table 2: Lintel bearings

Span (m)	Minimum length of bearing (mm)
Up to 1.2	100[1]
Over 1.2	150

Note

1. Minimum bearing lengths should be in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.

Lintels and beams should:

- have padstones where required
- be the correct way up
- bear on a full masonry unit and be level and bedded on a solid bed of suitable mortar
- not have soft or non-durable packing
- have appropriate fire resistance in accordance with Building Regulations.

6.3.5 Load-bearing timber walls

Also see: Chapter 2.1, 6.2 and 9.2

Internal load-bearing timber walls shall be designed to support and transfer loads to foundations safely and without undue movement. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) structural elements
b) timber separating walls
c) timber quality.

Structural elements

Structural design of load-bearing timber walls should be in accordance with BS EN 1995-1-1.

When constructing structural elements:

- the underside of the lowest sole plate should be positioned at or above internal finished floor level, see Figure 8
- individual studs, rails and head binders should be 38mm x 75mm minimum, although larger sizes may be required to achieve an adequate level of fire resistance
- studs should be spaced at a maximum of 600mm centres
- mid height noggings should be installed when required for additional stiffness
- lintels and cripple studs should be provided to each opening, except when the stud spacing is unaffected
- multiple studs should be included to support multiple joists, beams, girder trusses and other point loads, unless otherwise specified by the designer
- where a head binder is not provided, joists, roof trusses and other similar loads should bear directly over studs
- framing joints should be secured with a minimum of two nails per joint
- where internal walls are made up from panels, structural continuity should be maintained, eg by the use of a continuous head binder.

Figure 7: Load-bearing timber wall

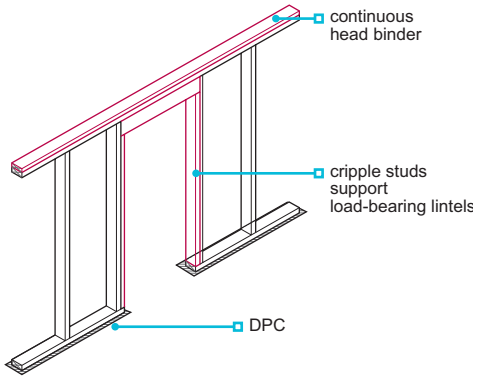
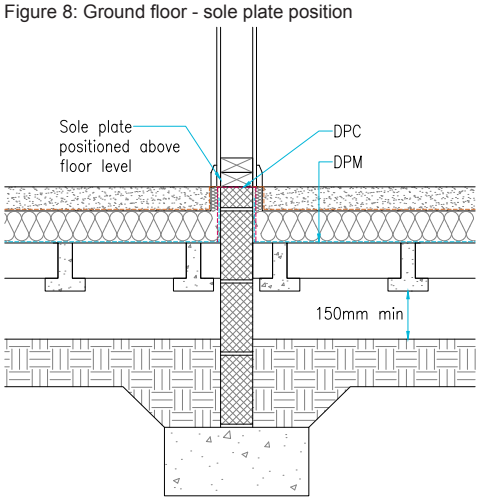


Figure 8: Ground floor - sole plate position



Twin leaf timber separating walls

The type and spacing of wall straps should limit sound transmission across the cavity in accordance with Building Regulations.

Wall straps should:

- be specified in accordance with the system designer's recommendations
- have a maximum cross-section of 40mm x 3mm
- be fixed below ceiling level
- be spaced a minimum of 1.2m horizontally.

Timber Quality

Timber should be of the appropriate grade, moisture content and size to support the imposed loads.

Structural timber components should be of a suitable strength class, as specified by the designer to BS EN 338. Solid structural timber should be:

- machine graded to BS EN 14081, or visually graded to BS 4978 for softwoods or BS 5756 for hardwoods
- assigned a strength class based on BS EN 1912 when visually graded
- dry graded
- marked in accordance with BS EN 14081.

Further guidance on strength classes for certain timber species can be found in PD 6693.

Engineered wood products such as I-section or metal-web studs should be assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Timber should have a maximum moisture content of 20% at the time of dry lining to minimise shrinkage.

6.3.6 Fire resistance

Also see: Chapter 6.2, 8.0 and 9.2

Internal walls shall have adequate resistance to the spread of fire. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) fire resistance
b) typical construction
c) services
d) materials.

The guidance below does not apply to Scotland, and reference should be made to the Technical Handbooks.

Fire resistance

Internal walls should provide fire resistance in accordance with Building Regulations.

Typical construction

Internal walls of hollow or cavity construction (fire-resisting or otherwise) should have cavity barriers installed at:

- the perimeter
- junctions with fire-resisting floors and walls.

Fire-resisting walls should be fire stopped or constructed to resist fire spread at:

- their perimeter
- junctions with other fire-resisting walls, floors and roofs
- openings for doors and pipes, etc.

Where fire-resisting walls are of:

- masonry construction with a cavity, they should be closed at the top
- framed construction, they should have cavity barriers at junctions with floors and ceilings.

At junctions between a separating or compartment wall and a pitched roof or flat roof:

- adequate precautions should be provided to prevent fire spread
- the separating wall should stop approximately 25mm below the top of adjacent roof trusses
- soft fire-stopping material should be installed above and below the roofing underlay to allow for movement in roof timbers to prevent ‘hogging’ of the tiles.

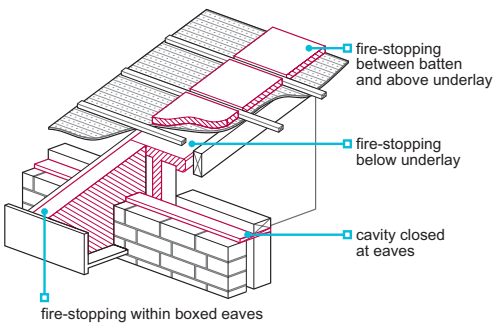
Fire-stopping should be provided within the boxed eaves and be:

- carefully cut to shape to seal the boxed eaves fully
- fixed in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.

The wall dividing an integral, or attached, garage and any floor above should be designed to act together to provide adequate resistance to fire spread, in accordance with the Building Regulations. Where the garage has either no ceiling or there is no floor in the space above, vertical fire separation may be required.

For timber constructions, fire-stopping material should be compressible to accommodate timber shrinkage without affecting fire-stopping.

Figure 9: Junction of compartment wall and roof



Services

Where services such as pipes, cables and ducting pass through fire-resisting walls, penetrations should be fire-stopped.

Fire-stopping should be:

- in accordance with Building Regulations and the design information
- completed neatly.

Materials

The selected fire-stopping material should be appropriate for the application. Suitable fire-stopping materials include:

- rock fibre quilt
- cement mortar
- gypsum plaster
- intumescent mastic or preformed strip
- proprietary sealing systems assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

6.3.7 Sound insulation

Also see: BS 8000-8

Walls shall be insulated with materials of suitable thickness and density to provide adequate resistance to the transmission of sound. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) sound-resisting construction

b) rooms which contain a WC.

Sound-resisting construction

Masonry separating walls

In England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland, separating walls may be registered and built in accordance with Robust Details 'Resistance to the passage of sound' as an alternative to pre-completion sound testing.

To maintain sound insulation:

- the correct blocks should be used
- fully fill joints, mortar beds and perpends
- use only approved wall ties
- space wall ties 900mm minimum horizontally and 450mm minimum vertically
- avoid any reduction in the thickness of masonry
- ensure spaces around joists are fully filled with masonry and pointed with sealant around the joist
- close the junction between separating and external cavity walls with flexible cavity stops
- care should be taken when specifying dry lining, as the thickness of plasterboard layers, and the methods of sealing and fixing, can affect the transmission of sound
- holes, voids and hairline cracks should be avoided or made good, as they can significantly reduce the effectiveness of a sound-insulating wall.

In masonry separating cavity walls, wall ties should be type A in accordance with Building Regulations.

Solid separating walls can be taken through the inner leaf of an external cavity wall and tied or bonded in accordance with either Building Regulations or Robust Details guidance.

Chases can reduce the sound insulation value of a wall and should:

- be cut only where specified in the design
- not be cut using impact power tools where there is a risk of damage
- not exceed 1/6 of the thickness of the single leaf where horizontal
- not exceed 1/3 the thickness of the single leaf where vertical
- not be chased where hollow blocks are used, unless specifically permitted by the manufacturer
- be fully filled with mortar
- be staggered on each side of the wall to avoid them being back to back.

Figure 10: Separating wall junction

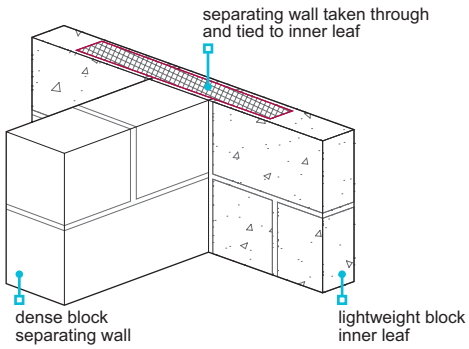
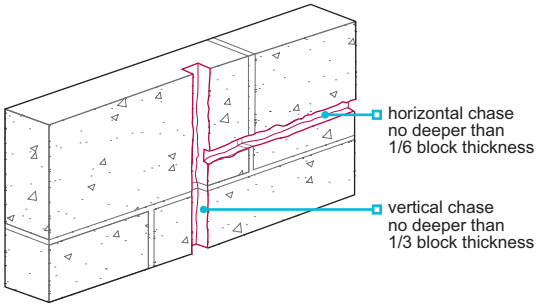


Figure 11: Vertical and horizontal chases



Separating walls of framed construction

Separating walls of framed construction should not have gaps in the:

- mineral wool quilt
- plasterboard layers
- fire-stopping.

Flanking walls

The construction of the flanking wall and the position of openings should comply with Building Regulations.

Rooms containing a WC

The construction should comply with Building Regulations, including the recommended sound reduction between rooms that include a WC and adjacent:

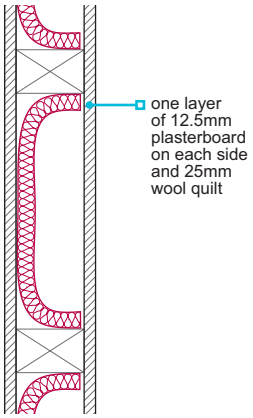
- living rooms
- dining rooms
- studies
- bedrooms, except where the WC is ensuite.

Studwork

To achieve the required level of sound reduction, 75mm timber studwork or 45mm steel framing should be constructed with either:

- two layers of 12.5mm plasterboard (each sheet 10 kg/m^2 min) on each side, with joints staggered and filled
- one layer of 12.5mm plasterboard (each sheet 10Kg/m^2 min) on each side and 25mm unfaced mineral wool (10Kg/m^3 min) between the studs, with all joints well sealed.

Figure 12: Acoustic partition



Other forms of studwork construction may be acceptable where in accordance with the guidance in supporting documents to the Building Regulations or where independent evidence of performance is available.

Blockwork partitions

Masonry partitions provide adequate sound insulation where:

- blocks have a minimum density of 600kg/m^3 and are finished on both sides with 13mm of plaster or 12.5mm plasterboard, and
- blocks are tied at every course to adjoining walls, with joints fully filled.

Further guidance can be found in the relevant Building Regulations.

Proprietary partitions

Independent test evidence of the system's performance is required in accordance with Technical Requirement R3. Criteria for testing is not provided in R3.

Sound insulation of soil pipes in floor voids and SVPs

All sections of soil and vent pipes including those in bathrooms or ground floor stub stacks, should be fully soundproofed.

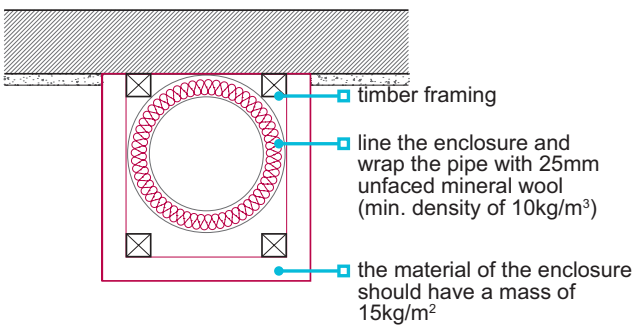
Where soil and vent pipes run horizontally through a floor void, above or below a habitable room they should be:

- wrapped in at least 25mm of unfaced mineral wool (10kg/m^3 min)
- adequately supported to avoid contact with the floor decking or ceiling.

Sound insulation should be provided to soil pipes passing through homes by:

- an encased boxing, using material (15kg/m^2) and
- wrapping the pipe with a minimum 25mm of unfaced mineral wool (10kg/m^3 min). The insulation should be continued through the thickness of each sound-insulating floor.

Figure 13: Vertical S&VP boxing



Soil and vent pipes which hold a satisfactory assessment by an appropriate independent technical approvals authority acceptable to NHBC, maybe acceptable where the requirements of the Building Regulations are achieved.

6.3.8 Partitions: internal non load-bearing

Non load-bearing partitions shall have adequate strength and support.

The following constructions are acceptable:

- masonry partitions
- timber partitions using 63mm x 38mm studs, rails and head binders with compatible spacing and plasterboard thickness
- steel partitions using studs, and head and base rails, from a minimum section of 43mm x 32mm x 0.45mm
- proprietary partitions in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Walls and partitions should:

- be appropriately supported
- not be supported by a floating floor which incorporates a compressible layer, unless the material is specifically manufactured for that purpose
- be used in accordance with manufacturers guidance.

Masonry partitions should be supported on:

- foundations
- other masonry partitions or walls
- concrete floors
- steel or concrete beams, which may require padstones.

Masonry partitions should not be supported by timber joists or beams.

Where stud partitions or proprietary plasterboard partitions are supported by a timber floor, extra noggings or joists should be specified, unless it can be shown that the deck can transfer the load without undue movement.

6.3.9 Construction of timber partitions

Also see: Chapter 9.2

Construction of timber stud internal walls shall ensure adequate stability, including:

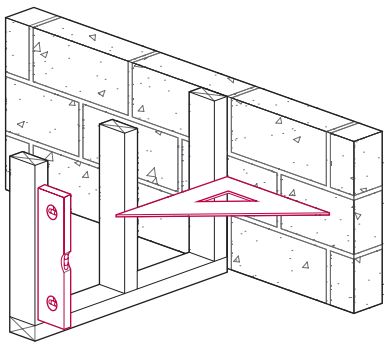
a) setting out and workmanship
b) size of timber members
c) fixing.

Setting out and workmanship

Timber partitions should be:

- placed so the lowest timber is positioned at or above the internal finished floor level, see Figure 8
- correctly positioned, square and plumb
- have studwork spaced at centres to suit the plasterboard thickness
- have extra studs at openings, as required.

Figure 14: Setting out square and plumb



Size of timber members

Timber partitions should be constructed in accordance with the design information. Unless designed otherwise, the minimum specification for all partitions should be in accordance with Table 3.

Table 3: Timber sizes for partition walls

Component	Size
Sole plate, rails, head binders	63mm x 38mm
Studs	63mm x 38mm at maximum 600mm centres
Blocking/nogging for support of plasterboard	43mm x 38mm
Blocking/nogging for other purposes	63mm x 38mm

Framing joints should be secured with two nails per joint.

Fixing

Partitions should:

- be firmly fixed to each other and to abutting walls; noggings or extra studs should be used where necessary
- be fixed to the structure where possible
- be fixed to noggings when parallel to structural elements
- not be over wedged against floor joists or roof trusses.

Where partitions are non load-bearing, allowance should be made for the floor joists, ceiling joists or roof trusses to deflect as necessary, so that the partition does not become load-bearing.

Figure 15: Deflection head

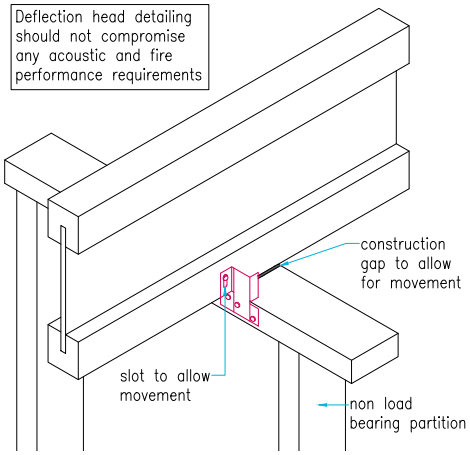


Figure 16: Partition abutment

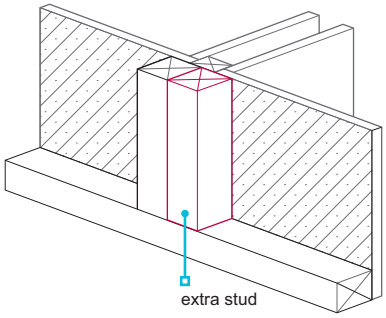
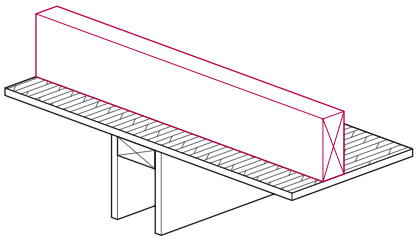
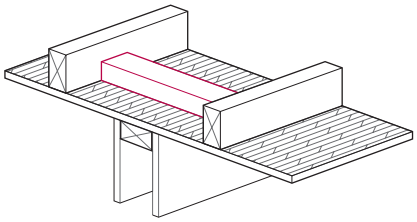


Figure 17: Wall head fixing to joist



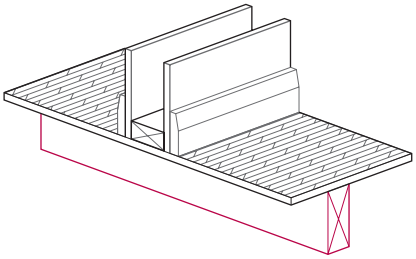
partition at right angles to joist – fixing to joist

Figure 18: Wall head fixing to nogging



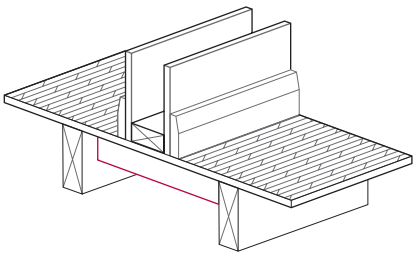
partition parallel to joist – fixing to nogging

Figure 19: Partition fixing to joist



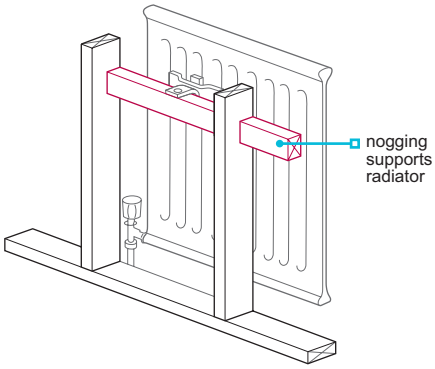
partition at right angles to joist – fixing to joist

Figure 20: Partition fixing to nogging



partition parallel to joist – fixing to nogging

Figure 21: Additional nogging support



Noggings should be provided to support fittings, such as radiators, wall mounted boilers, sanitary fittings and kitchen units, etc.

6.3.10 Construction of steel framed partitions

Non load-bearing steel framed walls shall be suitably constructed.

Noggings or straps should be provided as required to support fittings, such as radiators, wall-mounted boilers, sanitary fittings, kitchen units, etc. Non load-bearing partitions should not be wedged against floor joists, ceiling joists or roof trusses. Allowance should be made for the floor joists, ceiling joists or roof trusses to deflect so that the partition does not become load-bearing. They should be:

- constructed in accordance with manufacturers requirements and the design
- correctly positioned, square and plumb
- supported on a structural floor, but not a floating floor that incorporates a compressible layer, unless specifically designed for that purpose
- fixed to the floor at the head, to each other and to abutting walls
- provided with extra studs at openings where required
- finished in accordance with Chapter 9.2 'Wall and ceiling finishes'.

Figure 22: Deflection head

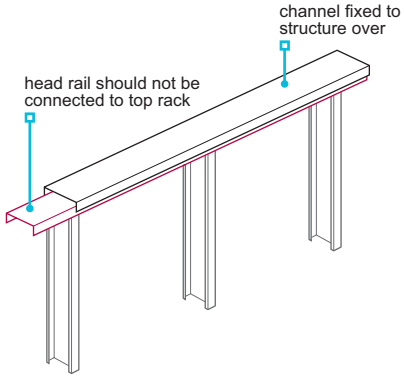
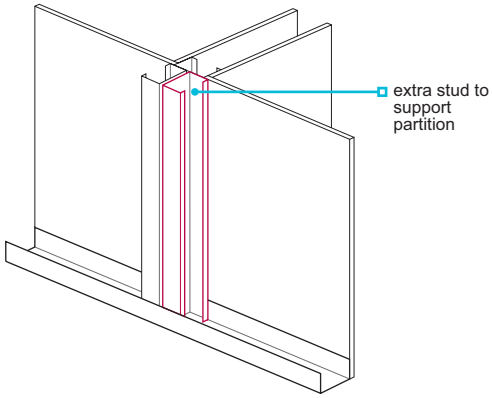


Figure 23: Partitioning abutment



6.3.11 Construction of proprietary systems

Proprietary partition systems shall be suitable for their intended purpose and erected in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Proprietary partitions should be assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3, and:

- constructed and specified according to the manufacturer's recommendations, including construction sequence
- correctly positioned, square and plumb.

Timber or other additional fixings should be provided for radiators, electrical outlets, switches etc.

6.3.12 Plasterboard

Also see: Chapter 9.2

Plasterboard shall be of a suitable thickness for its intended use.

Dry lining should comply with BS 8000-8. Plasterboard should be to BS EN 520 or BS EN 15283, and be:

- 9.5mm for stud spacing up to 450mm
- 12.5mm or thicker, for stud spacing up to 600mm.

Tapered edge boards should be used where the plasterboard is to be jointed before decoration.

For fire and sound-resisting walls (eg separating walls and walls to WCs), the correct thickness, number of layers and sealing should be specified in the design information.

For guidance on the use of plasterboard in wet areas ie, bath and shower areas, please refer to Chapter 9.2 'Wall and ceiling finishes'.

6.3.13 Damp proof courses

Also see: Chapter 5.4

DPCs shall be installed where required to prevent moisture entering the building.

Load-bearing partition walls built on foundations should have a DPC. Where partitions which could be affected by residual damp (eg timber or steel) are placed on concrete floors, a DPC should be provided directly below, even where there is a DPM beneath the slab.

DPCs should be:

- at least the width of the wall or partition
- linked with any adjoining DPM
- continuous or lapped by a minimum of 100mm.

Figure 24: DPC provision

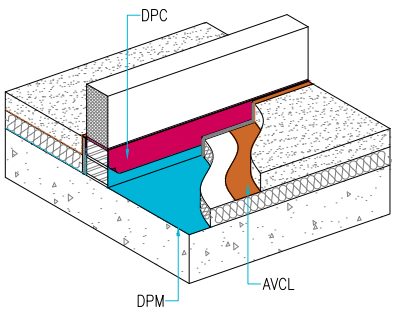
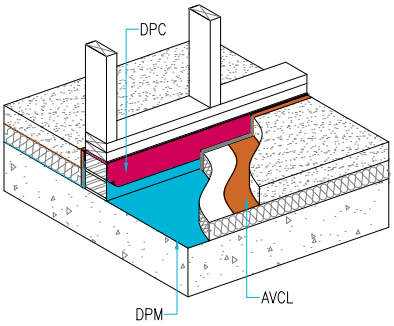


Figure 25: DPC provision



Where steps are necessary in the ground floor slab, a DPC should be:

- incorporated as a continuous link between the upper and lower DPM
- protected from damage during construction.

Where steps are greater than 150mm, structural waterproofing should be provided in accordance with Chapter 5.4 'Waterproofing of basements and other below ground structures'.

Materials acceptable for DPCs include:

Bitumen	BS 6398, BS EN 14967
Polyethylene	BS 6515, BS EN 14909
Proprietary materials	Technical Requirement R3

6.3.14 Components

Walls ties and related items shall be of the appropriate type and strength and shall have adequate durability.

Joist hangers, restraint straps, bond ties, etc should be protected against corrosion. Ferrous metals with the following levels of protection are acceptable:

- post-galvanizing to BS EN ISO 1461, or
- pre-galvanizing to BS EN 10143.

Figure reference table

Figure reference table 6.3

Fig No	Title/Description	Clause	Page
Figure 1	Square and plumb walls	6.3.4	2
Figure 2	Bonded connection	6.3.4	3
Figure 3	Tied connection	6.3.4	3
Figure 4	Incorrect use of materials	6.3.4	3
Figure 5	Restraint straps to concrete floors	6.3.4	3
Figure 6	Lintel positioning	6.3.4	3
Figure 7	Load-bearing timber wall	6.3.5	4
Figure 8	Ground floor - sole plate position	6.3.5	4
Figure 9	Junction of compartment wall and roof	6.3.6	5
Figure 10	Separating wall junction	6.3.7	6
Figure 11	Vertical and horizontal chases	6.3.7	6
Figure 12	Acoustic partition	6.3.7	7
Figure 13	Vertical S&VP boxing	6.3.7	7
Figure 14	Setting out square and plumb	6.3.9	8
Figure 15	Deflection head	6.3.9	9
Figure 16	Partition abutment	6.3.9	9
Figure 17	Wall head fixing to joist	6.3.9	9
Figure 18	Wall head fixing to nogging	6.3.9	9
Figure 19	Partition fixing to joist	6.3.9	9
Figure 20	Partition fixing to nogging	6.3.9	9
Figure 21	Additional nogging support	6.3.9	9
Figure 22	Deflection head	6.3.10	10
Figure 23	Partitioning abutment	6.3.10	10
Figure 24	DPC provision	6.3.13	10
Figure 25	DPC provision	6.3.13	10

Chapter

6.4

Timber and concrete upper floors

This chapter gives guidance on meeting the Technical Requirements for timber and concrete upper floors.

6.4.1 Compliance

Also see: Chapter 2.1

Timber and concrete upper floors shall comply with the Technical Requirements.

Timber and concrete upper floors that comply with the guidance in this chapter will generally be acceptable.

6.4.2 Provision of information

Designs and specifications shall be produced in a clearly understandable format, include all relevant information and be distributed to appropriate personnel.

Design and specification information should be issued to site supervisors, relevant specialist subcontractors and suppliers, and include the following information:

- direction of floor span, and size and spacing of joists or concrete components
- size of trimmers and trimming joists
- position of strutting
- detailing of openings in the floor
- supporting walls below
- walls and partitions above
- positions of restraint straps
- positions of large service penetrations, eg chimneys, SVPs
- position of insulation
- details of all junctions
- manufacturers' recommendations for assembly and fixing of proprietary components
- detailing for acoustic and fire separation where floor forms a compartmentation between dwellings.

6.4.3 Upper floor design

Also see: Chapter 6.5

Upper floors shall support and transmit loads safely to the supporting structure without undue deflection or deformation. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) loads and support to partitions
b) steelwork
c) support of external envelope and projections.

Loads and support to partitions

Structural design of timber and concrete upper floors should be in accordance with BS EN 1991-1-1.

The design of upper floors should account for dead loads, including:

- floor structure, decking and finishes
- ceilings and applied finishes
- walls and partitions supported by the floor
- permanent fixtures such as boilers, watertanks etc.

Imposed loads should be calculated in accordance with the relevant British Standards, including BS EN 1991-1-1 which recommends:

- 1.5kN/m^2 for self-contained homes
- values for communal areas serving flats or maisonettes.

Bearers or additional joists should be used to support heavy loads.

Joists built into separating walls may provide lateral support, and should be detailed to ensure that sound insulation and fire resistance requirements are met.

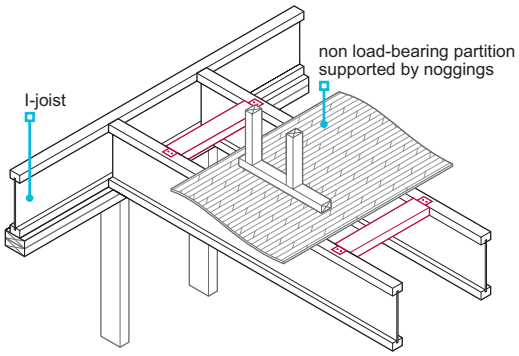
Masonry partitions

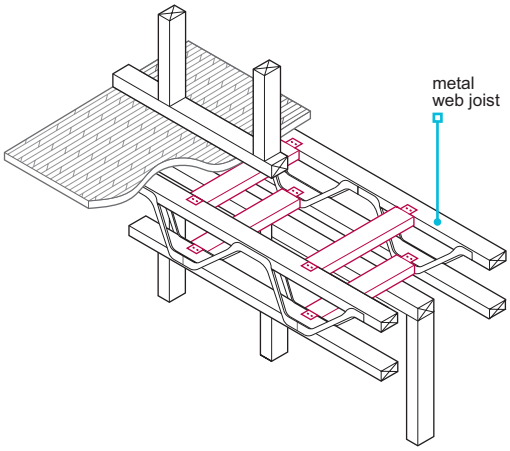
Where first floor masonry partitions cannot be built directly in line with ground floor masonry walls, steel or reinforced concrete support should be specified. Masonry should not be supported on timber or engineered joists.

Lightweight partitions

Where multiple solid timber joists support lightweight non load-bearing partitions which are parallel to the joists, they should be suitably fixed together. Where I-joists and metal web joists are used, they should:

- be positioned centrally below a non load-bearing partition and, where necessary, additional joists should be doubled or tripled in accordance with the designers and manufacturer's recommendations
- support the weight of the non load-bearing partition by noggings or bearers fixed to the joists on either side. Unless designed otherwise, noggings should be a minimum 38mm x 90mm minimum at 600mm centres and fixed with metal clips. The sole plate of the non load-bearing partition should be fixed to the noggings, or
- be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.





Steelwork

Steelwork supporting upper floor should be:

- designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5 and comply with Chapter 6.5 ‘Steelwork’
- sized to allow an adequate bearing of the floor system.

Structural continuity of the floor should be provided by the use of continuous decking fixed to joists on both sides of a transverse steel joist.

Steel beams should be protected by a suitably durable paint coating as detailed in Chapter 6.5 ‘Steelwork’.

Support of external envelope and projections

Deflection of concrete upper floors should be adequately designed, monitored and controlled to ensure it does not adversely affect its proper functioning or appearance.

Particular attention should be paid to edges of upper floors in flat slab constructions or floors without edge beams spanning over 5 meters.

Where upper floors are required to support balconies and or masonry support systems, and horizontal joints are to be provided as part of the external envelope of a framed building, they should be suitably designed and detailed to cater for both thermal and moisture movements of the envelope, in addition to any residual floor deflection that may be expected from the supporting structure. The concrete floor together with any associated horizontal (eg masonry) movement joint it supports should be appropriately designed taking into consideration the following:

- floor deflection behind the cladding/envelope/balcony
- cladding (eg masonry) support system deflections
- cladding (eg masonry) joint details
- building elevation and load paths
- elastic shorting of structural columns and walls
- building sway.

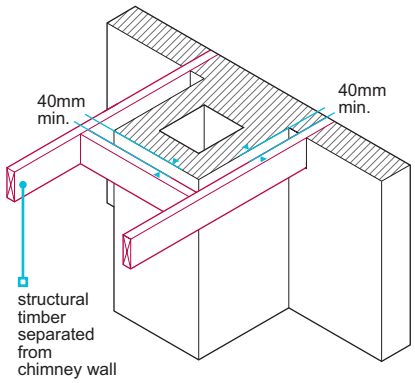
Further guidance on horizontal movement joints in masonry can be found in Chapter 6.1 - External masonry walls.

6.4.4 Fire spread

Adequate fire resistance and fire-stopping shall be provided by floors between homes and at penetrations. Upper floors shall be constructed to ensure structural timber is located away from heat sources.

Floors and ceilings should:

- comply with the relevant Building Regulations and Technical Requirement R3
- be in accordance with the design
- have adequate fire-stopping
- should be able to resist the passage of smoke when the fire-stopping has been installed.



Timber

To counteract fire spread:

- combustible material should be kept away from heat sources
- structural timber should be separated from sources of heat in accordance with Chapter 6.8 ‘Fireplaces, chimneys and flues’.

Ancillary product

Where ceilings of intermediate floors in houses or compartment floors in flats/apartments are perforated or penetrated by services such as recessed light fittings (downlighters); ceiling-mounted air valves, vents and extractor fans and pipes, the floor construction should still achieve the required period of fire resistance.

When installing such ancillary products and/or services including their fire-stopping elements and intumescent seals used to maintain the fire resistance of the floor, one of the following should be met:

- a satisfactory fire test evidence and/or extended field of application reports that support the use of such product/ systems in the particular type of floor being considered, or
- products and systems with a satisfactory assessment by an appropriate independent technical approvals authority accepted by NHBC covering the particular type of floor being considered, or
- a proprietary floor system with satisfactory assessment by an appropriate independent technical approvals authority accepted by NHBC which includes the use of specific floor type and ancillary products which has been demonstrated to be satisfactory through testing and assessment, and are to be used within the limitations of the certification.

6.4.5 Sound insulation

Upper floors shall be constructed to ensure that sound transmission is adequately limited.

Timber upper floors should comply with Building Regulations and Chapter 9.3 ‘Floor finishes’.

6.4.6 In-situ concrete floors and concreting

In-situ concrete upper floors shall be adequately reinforced and of a mix which is suitable for the location and intended use, and appropriately constructed.

Concrete floors should:

- comply with BS EN 1992-1-1 and Chapter 3.1 ‘Concrete and its reinforcement’
- comply with the design
- be reasonably level and smooth, especially at doorways and junctions
- be in accordance with Technical Requirement R3 where proprietary elements are used.

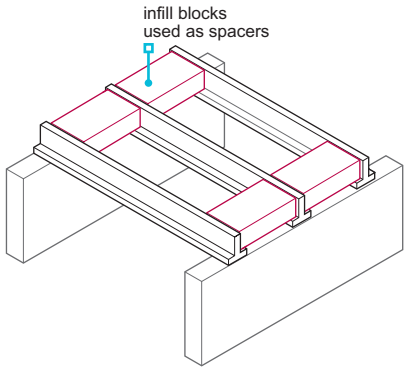
6.4.7 Precast concrete

Precast concrete upper floors shall be erected in accordance with the design.

Precast concrete flooring systems should be in accordance with Technical Requirement R3, applicable product standards and BS EN 1992-1-1.

For precast concrete beam and block systems:

- details of manufacturer’s assembly instructions and any independent certification should be available on site and followed
- beams, planks or infill blocks that are damaged should not be used
- adequate support should be provided until design strength is reached
- joints should be grouted in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations.



Bearings should be:

- solid and level
- 90mm minimum on masonry (open frogs in brickwork should be filled)
- 75mm minimum on steelwork.

The setting out of beam and block floors should:

- ensure correct spacing between beams, using infill blocks as spacers
- be in accordance with the design
- allow for additional beams where required to support concentrated loads such as partitions.

Infill blocks should:

- be omitted or cut where necessary to allow for services
- be cut carefully and neatly without damage (not using a hammer and bolster).

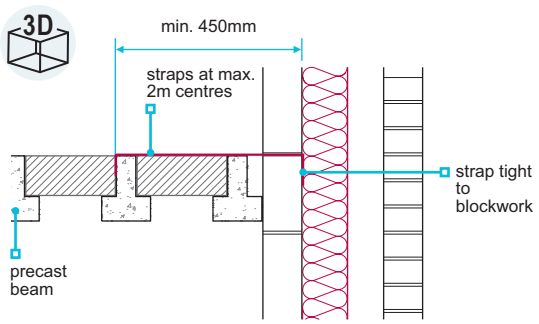
Where floors rely on structural topping or in-situ make-up sections, propping may be needed until the in-situ concrete has reached design strength.

Trimmed openings

Where voids in precast concrete floors are to be trimmed:

- specifications and drawings should be followed
- steel trimmer shoes may be used.

Double beams, common around trimmed openings, should be adequately supported until all voids have been solidly concreted and the concrete has reached its design strength.



Restraint straps and ties

Straps:

- should be shown in the design
- are generally required where beams run parallel with the wall.

6.4.8 Timber joist spans

Timber floor joists shall be adequate for the spans and loads, and be correctly installed.

Solid timber joist sizes are provided in the BS 8103-3 span tables. Where the tables do not apply, or where there are concentrated loads, floor joists should be designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

Span tables for solid timber joists

Tables 1 and 2 in this chapter are derived from the BM TRADA Technology Ltd. 'Eurocode 5 span Tables for solid timber members in floors, ceilings and roofs for dwellings (4th edition)'. Tables 1 and 2 give permissible clear spans of simply supported domestic floor joists of solid timber for specified loadings, sizes and spacings calculated in accordance with EC5. The tables make no allowance for concentrated or line loads applied by partitions, trimmers or other similar loads. The minimum bearing length assumed for the tables is 40mm unless noted otherwise, and longer bearing lengths may be required for other practical reasons. The section sizes are based on regularised ALS or CLS timber.

For timber floors between homes (compartment floors):

- to meet acoustic performance, the dead load of the construction of up to 1.25kN/m^2 may be assumed
- use the three right-hand columns from Tables 1 and 2.

For upper floors with 22mm thick chipboard decking and a 12.5mm plasterboard ceiling:

- a dead load of up to 0.5kN/m^2 may be assumed
- use the centre three columns from Tables 1 and 2.

Where lightweight non load-bearing partitions weigh up to 1.0kN (101.9kg) per metre run and are parallel to the joists, the following applies:

- partitions may be directly supported by one or two additional joists
- partitions should be fixed through the floor decking into the joist(s) beneath
- where similar lightweight partitions run at right-angles to the joists, the maximum spans in Tables 1 and 2 should be reduced by 10%
- for all other additional loads, joist sizes should be designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

Table 1: Permissible clear spans for domestic floor joists. Strength class C16

Imposed load not exceeding qk = 1.5 kN/m² or Qk = 2.0kN. Service class 1 or 2.

Dead load gk (kN/m²) excluding self-weight of joist										
Size of joist		gk not more than 0.25			gk not more than 0.50			gk not more than 1.25		
		Joist spacing (mm)								
		400	450	600	400	450	600	400	450	600
Breadth (mm)	Depth (mm)	Maximum clear span (m)								
38	95	1.71*	1.62	1.40	1.61	1.52	1.32	1.40	1.33	1.16
38	120	2.37*	2.24*	1.95	2.19*	2.08*	1.82	1.87	1.78	1.56
38	145	2.86*	2.75*	2.49	2.69*	2.59*	2.33	2.35	2.23	1.97
38	170	3.34*	3.21*	2.91	3.15*	3.03*	2.74	2.75	2.64	2.39
38	195	3.83*	3.68*	3.34	3.61*	3.47*	3.14	3.15	3.03	2.73
38	220	4.31*	4.14*	3.76	4.06*	3.90*	3.54	3.55	3.41	**3.08**
44	95	1.84*	1.74	1.51	1.72	1.63	1.42	1.50	1.42	1.24
44	120	2.49*	2.39*	2.09	2.33*	2.22*	1.95	1.99	1.89	1.67
44	145	3.00*	2.89*	2.62	2.83*	2.72*	2.46	2.47	2.37	2.10
44	170	3.51*	3.38*	3.06	3.31*	3.18*	2.88	2.89	2.78	2.51
44	195	4.02*	3.86*	3.51	3.79*	3.64*	3.30	3.32	3.18	2.88
44	220	4.52*	4.35*	3.95	4.26*	4.10*	3.72	3.73	3.59	**3.25**
47	95	1.90*	1.79	1.56	1.77	1.68	1.47	1.54	1.46	1.28
47	120	2.55*	2.45*	2.16	2.40*	2.28*	2.01	2.05	1.95	1.72
47	145	3.07*	2.95*	2.68	2.89*	2.78*	2.52	2.53	2.43	2.16
47	170	3.59*	3.45*	3.13	3.38*	3.25*	2.95	2.96	2.84	2.57
47	195	4.10*	3.95*	3.59	3.87*	3.72*	3.38	3.39	3.26	2.95
47	220	4.62*	4.44*	4.04	4.36*	4.19*	3.81	3.82	3.67	3.32
63	95	2.17*	2.06*	1.80	2.02*	1.92	1.68	1.74	1.66	1.47
63	120	2.80*	2.70*	2.45	2.64*	2.54*	2.29	2.30	2.20	1.95
63	145	3.38*	3.25*	2.96	3.19*	3.07*	2.79	2.79	2.68	2.43
63	170	3.94*	3.80*	3.46	3.72*	3.58*	3.26	3.27	3.14	2.85
63	195	4.51*	4.34*	3.95	4.26*	4.10*	3.73	3.74	3.60	3.26
63	220	5.07*	4.88*	4.45	4.79*	4.61*	4.20	4.21	4.05	3.68
72	120	2.93*	2.82*	2.56	2.76*	2.66*	2.42	2.42	2.32	2.06
72	145	3.52*	3.39*	3.09	3.33*	3.20*	2.91	2.92	2.81	2.55
72	170	4.11*	3.96*	3.61	3.89*	3.74*	3.41	3.42	3.29	2.98
72	195	4.70*	4.53*	4.13	4.44*	4.28*	3.90	3.91	3.76	3.41
72	220	5.28*	5.09*	4.65	5.00*	4.82*	4.39	4.40	4.23	3.85
ALS/CLS										
38	89	1.56	1.47	1.27	1.47	1.39	1.21	1.29	1.22	1.07
38	114	2.21*	2.09*	1.82	2.05*	1.94	1.70	1.76	1.67	1.47
38	140	2.76*	2.65*	2.40	2.60*	2.50*	2.23	2.25	2.14	1.89
38	184	3.61*	3.47*	3.15	3.41*	3.27*	2.97	2.98	2.86	2.58
38	235	4.60*	4.42*	4.01	4.33*	4.17*	**3.78**	3.79	3.64	**3.29**
89	184	4.74*	4.57*	4.18	4.49*	4.33*	3.95	3.96	3.81	3.46
89	235	6.00*	5.79*	5.30	5.69*	5.49*	5.01	5.03	4.84	4.41

* Two additional joists required
Bold text = normal bearing increased to 50mm

Table 2: Permissible clear spans for domestic floor joists. Strength class C24

Imposed load not exceeding qk = 1.5 kN/m² or Qk = 2.0 kN. Service class 1 or 2.

Dead load gk (kN/m²) excluding self-weight of joist										
Size of joist		gk not more than 0.25			gk not more than 0.50			gk not more than 1.25		
		Joist spacing (mm)								
		400	450	600	400	450	600	400	450	600
Breadth (mm)	Depth (mm)	Maximum clear span (m)								
38	95	1.99*	1.89*	1.64	1.86*	1.76	1.54	1.61	1.53	1.34
38	120	2.64*	2.54*	2.27	2.49*	2.39*	2.11	2.14	2.03	1.80
38	145	3.18*	3.06*	2.78	3.00*	2.88*	2.61	2.62	2.52	2.26
38	170	3.72*	3.58*	3.25	3.51*	3.37*	3.06	3.07	2.95	2.67
38	195	4.26*	4.10*	3.72	4.02*	3.86*	3.51	3.52	3.38	3.06
38	220	4.79*	4.61*	4.19	4.52*	4.35*	3.95	3.96	3.81	**3.45**
44	95	2.14*	2.02*	1.76	1.99*	1.89	1.65	1.71	1.63	1.44
44	120	2.77*	2.67*	2.42	2.61*	2.51*	2.25	2.27	2.16	1.92
44	145	3.34*	3.21*	2.92	3.15*	3.03*	2.75	2.76	2.65	2.40
44	170	3.90*	3.76*	3.42	3.69*	3.54*	3.22	3.23	3.10	2.81
44	195	4.47*	4.30*	3.91	4.22*	4.06*	3.68	3.70	3.55	3.22
44	220	5.02*	4.84*	4.40	4.75*	4.57*	4.15	4.16	4.00	3.63
47	95	2.20*	2.08*	1.82	2.05*	1.94	1.70	1.76	1.68	1.48
47	120	2.83*	2.73*	2.48	2.67*	2.57*	2.32	2.33	2.22	1.97
47	145	3.41*	3.28*	2.98	3.22*	3.10*	2.81	2.82	2.71	2.45
47	170	3.99*	3.84*	3.49	3.77*	3.62*	3.29	3.30	3.17	2.87
47	195	4.56*	4.39*	4.00	4.31*	4.15*	3.77	3.78	3.63	3.29
47	220	5.13*	4.94*	4.50	4.85*	4.67*	4.24	4.26	4.09	3.71
63	95	2.52*	2.43*	2.14	2.38*	2.26*	1.99	2.03	1.94	1.72
63	120	3.11*	2.99*	2.72	2.94*	2.83*	2.57	2.57	2.47	2.22
63	145	3.74*	3.60*	3.28	3.54*	3.40*	3.09	3.10	2.98	2.70
63	170	4.37*	4.21*	3.84	4.13*	3.98*	3.62	3.63	3.49	3.17
63	195	5.00*	4.81*	4.39	4.72*	4.55*	4.14	4.15	4.00	3.62
63	220	5.61*	5.41*	4.94	5.31*	5.12*	4.66	4.68	4.50	4.08
72	120	3.25*	3.13*	2.85	3.07*	2.96*	2.69	2.70	2.59	2.35
72	145	3.91*	3.77*	3.44	3.70*	3.56*	3.24	3.25	3.13	2.84
72	170	4.57*	4.40*	4.02	4.32*	4.16*	3.79	3.80	3.66	3.32
72	195	5.22*	5.03*	4.59	4.94*	4.76*	4.34	4.35	4.19	3.81
72	220	5.86*	5.65*	5.17	5.55*	5.35*	4.88	4.90	4.71	4.29
ALS/CLS										
38	89	1.82*	1.72	1.50	1.71	1.62	1.41	1.49	1.41	1.24
38	114	2.51*	2.41*	2.12	2.36*	2.24*	1.97	2.01	1.91	1.69
38	140	3.07*	2.96*	2.68	2.90*	2.79*	2.53	2.53	2.43	2.17
38	184	4.02*	3.87*	3.52	3.79*	3.65*	3.31	3.32	3.19	2.89
38	235	5.11*	4.92*	4.47	4.83*	4.64*	4.22	4.23	4.06	**3.68**
89	184	5.26*	5.08*	4.64	4.98*	4.81*	4.39	4.40	4.24	3.86
89	235	6.65*	6.42*	5.88	6.31*	6.09*	5.57	5.58	5.38	4.90

* Two additional joists required
Bold text = normal bearing increased to 50mm

6.4.9 Timber joist performance

Also see: Chapter 3.3

Floor joists shall be of an appropriate size and quality, and be suitably durable.

I-joists and metal web joists should not be used in situations where any part of the joist is exposed to external conditions, and be:

- in accordance with Technical Requirement R3
- used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- protected from adverse weather conditions during transport and storage
- stored clear of the ground and stacked vertically
- not used where damaged
- designed in accordance with BS EN 1995-1-1 and its UK National Annex.

Instantaneous deflection of floor joists should be:

- no more than 0.003 x the span for the combined bending and shear based on the total dead and imposed loads, with a maximum deflection of 14mm where strutting is provided, or 12mm where strutting is not provided.

Floors formed by the bottom chords of attic trusses are required to meet the above guidance.

Structural solid timber joists should be specified according to the strength classes in BS EN 338, eg C16 or C24 and marked with:

- the strength class, or evidence of species and grade made available so as to determine the strength class
- the identification of the company responsible for the grading (when graded to BS 4978 or BS EN 14081).

When graded to BS 4978:

- the species should be included in accordance with BS EN 1912 or the class strength specified
- BS EN 338 can be used to determine strength class.

Regularised timber should be used for solid timber joists, and be:

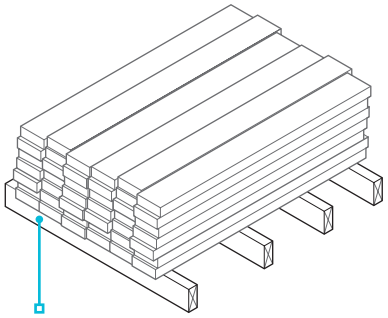
- dry graded to BS 4978 or BS EN 14081
- marked 'DRY' or 'KD'.

Materials should be checked on delivery for conformity with the design.

Joists should be stored on bearers or in racks and be protected.

Timber should not be used where:

- it is excessively bowed, twisted or cambered
- it has large edge knots or shakes
- it has a waney edge more than half the thickness
- it is damaged or has any sign of rot.



store timbers off the ground on bearers

6.4.10 Construction of timber floors

Also see: Chapter 3.3

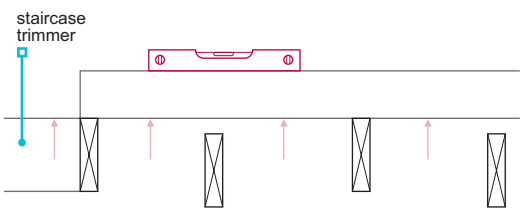
Upper floors shall be constructed in a workmanlike manner and provide satisfactory performance. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) levelling
b) joist spacing and clearance
c) support.

Levelling

Bearings for joists should be level. The floor should be levelled:

- from the staircase trimmer and trimming joist
- in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- using hard packing; loose or soft packing should not be used.



Joist spacing and clearance

Joist spacing should:

- be in accordance with the design and not increased
- account for the decking material to be used
- be a maximum of 600mm
- have a clearance of 25mm – 75mm between the first joist and the wall face to aid the installation of services and the fixing of floor decking.

Support

The floor should have an adequate bearing on the supporting structure.

Timber joists should normally have a minimum bearing as shown in Table 3.

Table 3: Support of joists

Type of timber joist	Minimum bearing (mm)	
	End support	Intermediate support
Solid joist on masonry walls	90 (75)	90 (75)
Solid joist on timber wall plate	75	75
I-joist	90 (45)	90
Metal web joist	90 (45)	90

The figures in brackets should only be used when the joist is not providing restraint to the wall.

Joists may be:

- supported on joist hangers or on internal load-bearing walls
- built into the inner leaf of an external cavity wall, with care taken to ensure air-tightness.

Where joists are built into separating walls, fire-and sound-resisting performance, in accordance with Building Regulations, should be taken into account.

I-joists and metal web joists

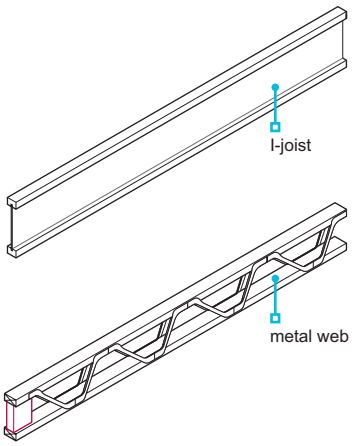
Where engineered joists are built into the inner leaf of a cavity wall, only proprietary products should be used to seal the gap between the sides of the joists and the masonry. Expanding foam fill should not be used or relied upon for this purpose.

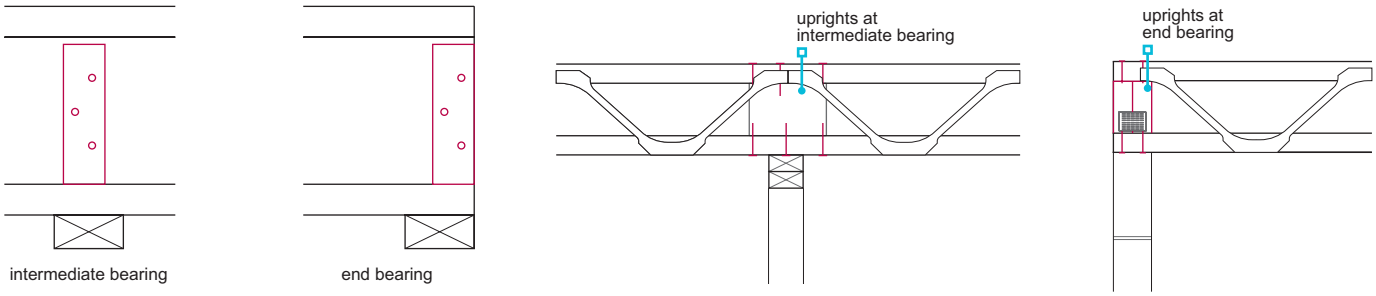
I-joists and metal web joists should not be built into solid external walls.

The support reaction, due to dead and imposed loads on the floor, should not exceed the recommended value specified by the manufacturer.

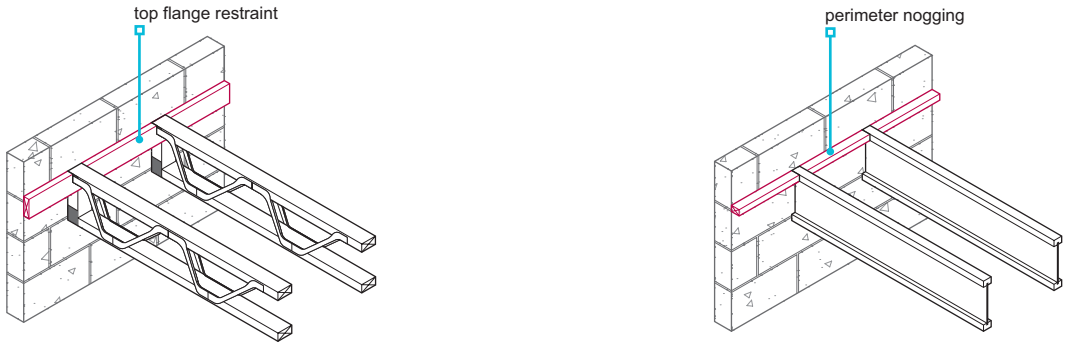
Where there are concentrated loads:

- web stiffeners should be used for I-joists
- uprights between the flanges, held in place by punched metal plate fasteners or bottom chord (flange) support, should be used for metal web joists
- the manufacturer's recommendations should be followed.





Where joists are supported on walls, noggings may be required at the top flange along the wall to support the floor decking, and at the bottom flange to support the plasterboard ceiling. Where joists are not built into brickwork or blockwork, blocking should be provided at the joist bearing. The blocking may be used for fixing plasterboard and floor decking.



6.4.11 Joists supported by intermediate walls

Joists shall be properly fixed at intermediate load-bearing walls.

Solid timber joists

Solid timber joists bearing onto intermediate load-bearing walls should:

- be nailed together where they overlap
- not project more than 100mm.

I-joists

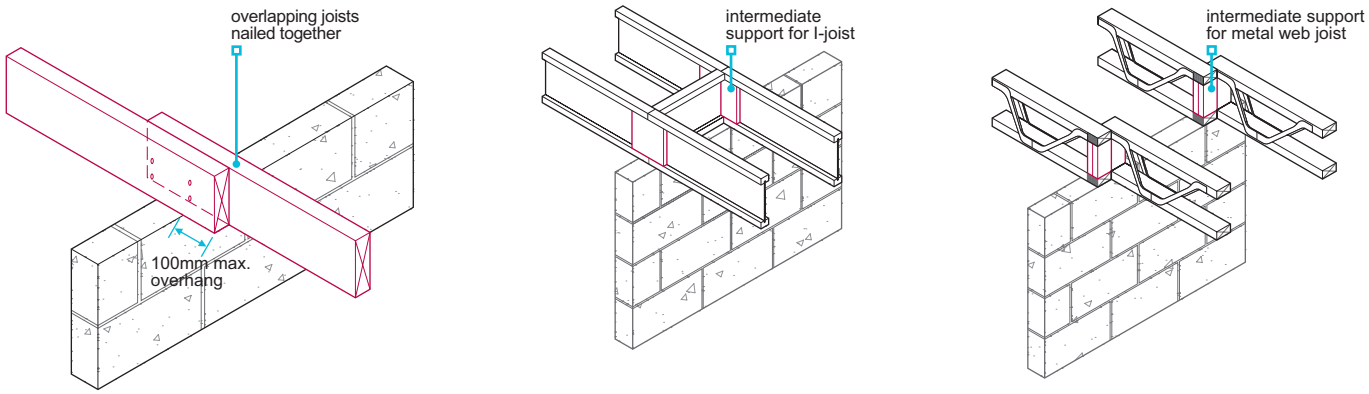
I-joists bearing onto intermediate load-bearing walls should have:

- blocking used to brace the butt joint
- short sections of joist used to provide lateral support.

Metal web joists

Metal web joists bearing onto intermediate load-bearing walls should:

- have a minimum 90mm bearing
- be overlapped.



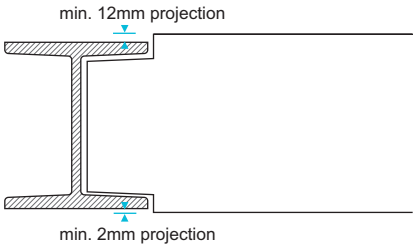
6.4.12 Joists connected to steel

Joists shall be suitably connected to steelwork.

Solid timber joists

Where connected to steel beams, solid timber joists should:

- be deep enough to be notched
- have 12mm top and 2mm bottom projections to allow for timber shrinkage
- be provided with strutting to prevent rotation.



I-joists

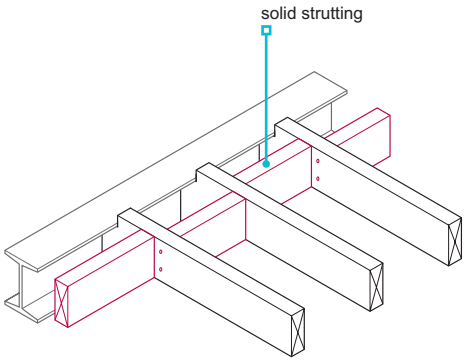
Where connected to steel beams, I-joists should not be notched at the flange, and should:

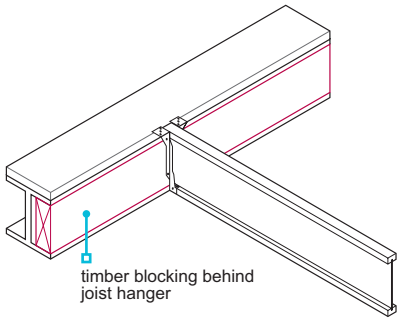
- bear directly into the steel beam where the bearing is more than 45mm. Strutting, (noggings 38mm x thickness of flange) should be provided at the top and bottom flanges, or
- have blocking fixed to the steel beam to enable the I-joists to be face fixed using joist hangers. Strutting is not required when hangers the full depth of the joist are used to face fix joists to the blocking.

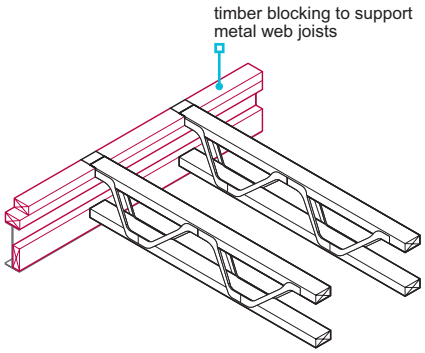
Metal web joists

Where connected to steel beams, metal web joists should not be notched at the flange, and should:

- bear directly into the bottom flange of the steel beam where the bearing is more than 75mm. There should be timber uprights between the flanges and 38mm x 97mm noggings between the uprights
- where the bearing is less than 75mm, the joist can be supported on the top flange with the bottom flange fixed to timber blocking supported inside the steel beam.







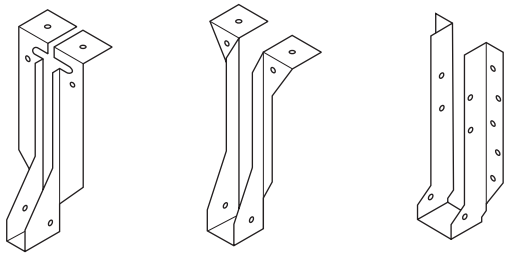
6.4.13 Joists into hangers

Joist hangers shall provide a suitable bearing on the supporting structure and be of an adequate size, strength and durability.

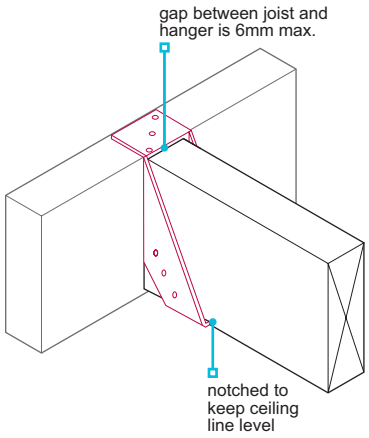
Masonry supporting joist hangers should be checked for level and height. The top flange loading on the joist hanger should not be greater than the strength of the supporting masonry. Where joist hangers are supported on lightweight blockwork, the suitability of the hanger should be checked. Joist hangers which meet BS EN 845-1 have a stamp indicating the minimum compressive strength of block for which they are suitable.

Hangers should:

- be detailed in the design, including the type of support to be used for joists, trimmers and trimming joists
- have a 75mm minimum bearing on masonry
- comply with BS EN 845-1 or another acceptable clause described in Technical Requirement R3
- have performance equivalent to restraint straps at 2m centres where required to provide restraint
- be the correct size for the joist or trimmer
- be nailed through each circular hole in the vertical sides
- bear on level beds and be tight to the wall
- not be cut into the walling.



Joists should be accurately cut to length. Where joists are not built into brickwork or blockwork, blocking should be provided at the joist bearing. The blocking may be used for fixing plasterboard and floor decking.



Solid joists

Where connected to hangers, solid timber joists should:

- have a minimum bearing of 75mm onto the hanger
- be notched into the hanger to keep the ceiling line level
- be the full depth of the hanger.

I-joists

Where connected to hangers, I-joists should not be notched at the flange, and should have:

- a minimum bearing of 45mm onto the hanger
- the tabs of the hanger bent and nailed to the bottom flange.

Hangers should be:

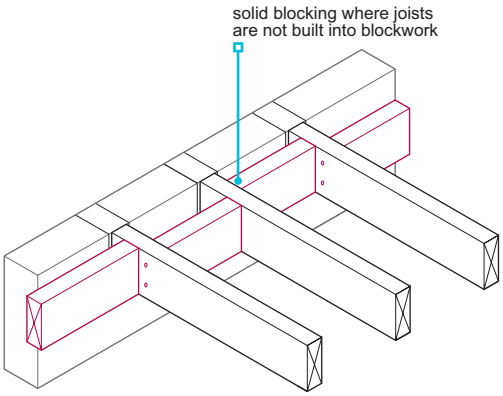
- the full depth of the joist and restrain the top flange, or
- at least 0.6 x the depth of the joist and have stiffeners (full depth) fixed to both sides of the web.

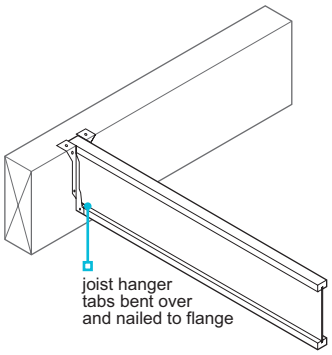
Metal web joists

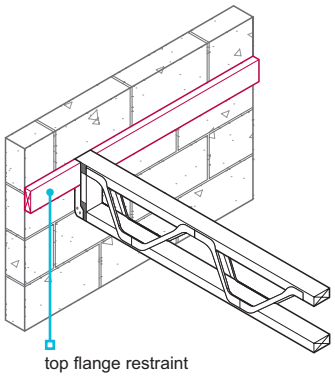
Where connected to hangers, metal web joists should not be notched at the flange, and should have:

- a minimum bearing of 75mm onto the hanger
- timber uprights fixed between the flanges.

Hangers should be to the full depth of the joist and restrain the top flange, or another suitable means of restraining the top flange should be provided.







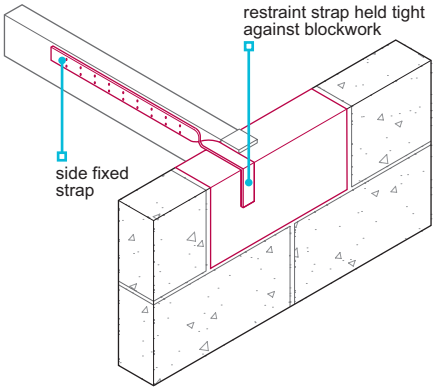
6.4.14 Timber joist and restraint straps

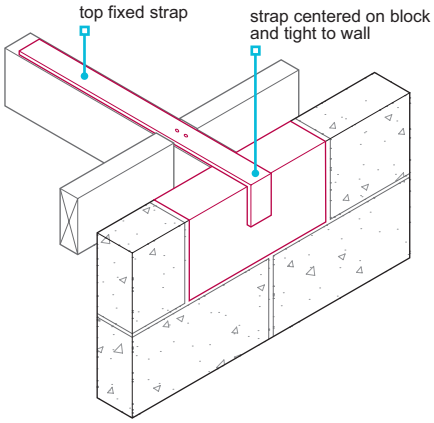
Also see: Chapter 6.1 and BS 8103-1

Upper floors shall provide adequate lateral restraint.

Restraint straps and joist hangers suitable for taking tensile forces may be required to tie walls and upper floors together or when the external wall is stabilised by a connection to the floor. Straps should:

- be detailed in the design, including the size, position and fixings
- be galvanised steel with a 30mm x 5mm cross-section or be in accordance with Technical Requirement R3
- have adequate packing between the wall and the first joist
- bear on the centre of bricks or blocks and not on mortar joints
- be fixed on the side, top or bottom, as appropriate to the joist type.



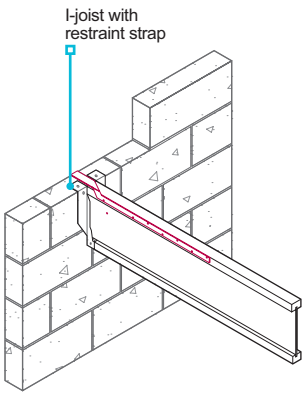


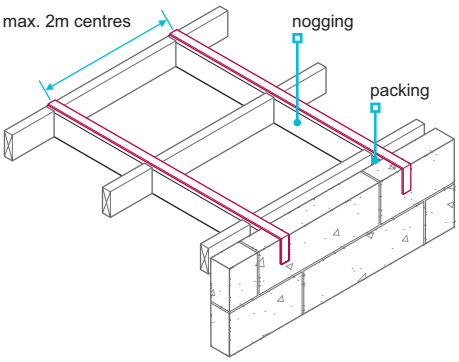
Restraint straps should be provided along the direction of the joists and spaced at a maximum of 2m centres. They are not generally required at the ends of joists in buildings up to, and including, two storeys where:

- restraint type joist hangers in accordance with Technical Requirement R3 are used, or
- joists are built into a wall and bear at least 90mm on the wall.

Where joists run parallel to the wall, straps should be fitted along the joists with a maximum spacing of 2m, and:

- be supported on noggings and extend over at least three joists
- be fixed with two screws or nails into each joist
- have noggings provided to receive two additional nails (for solid joists, two 4.76mm diameter x 50mm long wood screws (No.10) or 4mm diameter x 75mm round nails (8 SWG) can be used in each joist).





Solid timber joists

Solid timber joists should, have noggings provided at:

- a minimum of 0.5 x the depth of the member when straps are located on top of the joist, or
- the full depth of the member where straps are located beneath the joist.

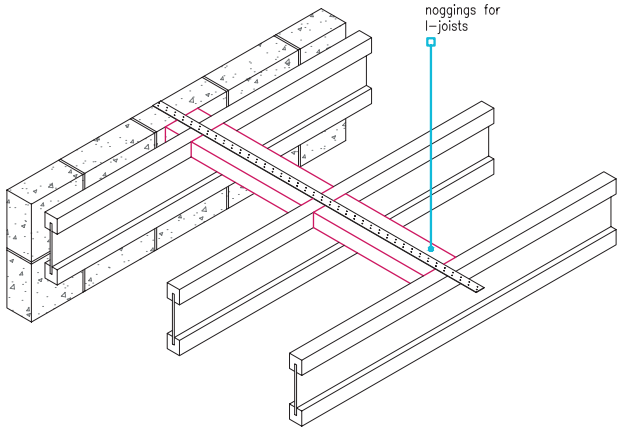
I-joists

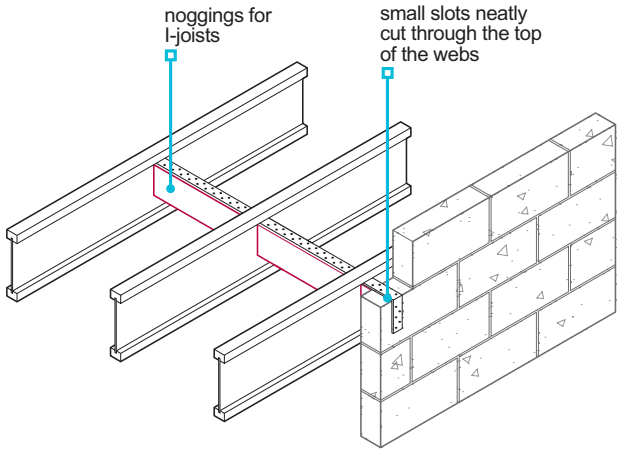
I-joists should not be notched and have:

- solid timber noggings no less than 0.5 x the depth of the member and a maximum of 150mm fixed between the webs and located beneath the top flange, with the straps installed through small slots neatly cut through the top of the web of the joists
- noggings made from short lengths of I-joist, or solid timber the full depth of the I-joists, or
- noggings half the depth of the member x depth of the flange laid on their side between the flanges.

When nailing into laminated veneer lumber flanges:

- care should be taken to prevent splitting
- nails should be driven in at an angle (not horizontally) and should not protrude from the flanges.

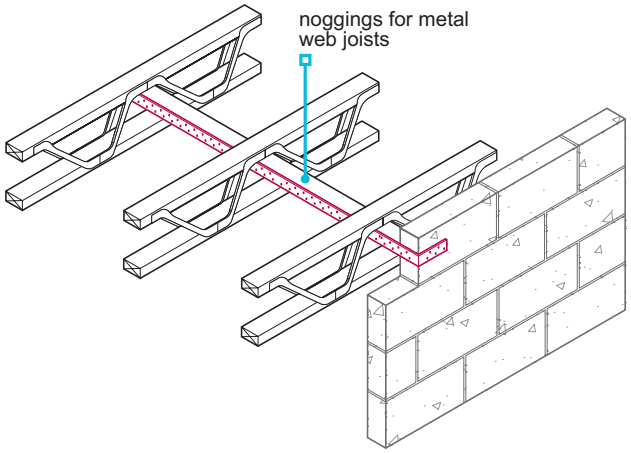




Metal web joists

Metal web joists should not be notched and should have:

- 35mm x 97mm solid timber noggings beneath the top flange of the metal web joists, and
- noggings nailed twice to each joist.



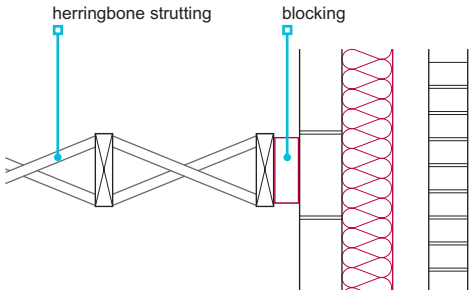
6.4.15 Strutting

Strutting shall be provided where required to distribute loads and ensure adequate rigidity of the floor structure.

Strutting should:

- not project beyond the top and bottom edges of joists
- be firmly blocked to the wall at the end of each run
- be provided before the deck is laid.

Proprietary metal strutting should comply with Technical Requirement R3.



Solid timber joists

Strutting to solid timber joists should be:

- provided in accordance Table 4
- be herringbone (38mm x 38mm timber) or solid (minimum 38mm thick and 0.75 x the depth of the joist).

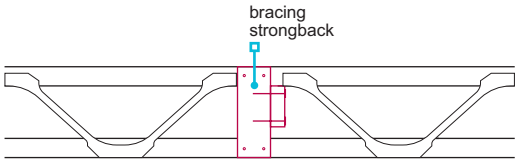
Table 4: Strutting for solid timber and I-joists

Joist span (m)	Rows of strutting
Under 2.5	None needed
2.5-4.5	1 (at centre of span)
Over 4.5	2 (at equal spacing)

I-joists

Strutting to I-joists should be:

- provided in accordance with the Table 4, where required.



Metal web joists

Strutting to metal web joists should be:

- provided in accordance with Table 5
- solid timber 'strongback' bracing.

Table 5: Strutting for metal web joists

Joist span (m)	Rows of strutting
4-8	1 (at centre of span)
over 8	2 (at equal spacing)

6.4.16 Joists and openings

Also see: Chapter 6.6

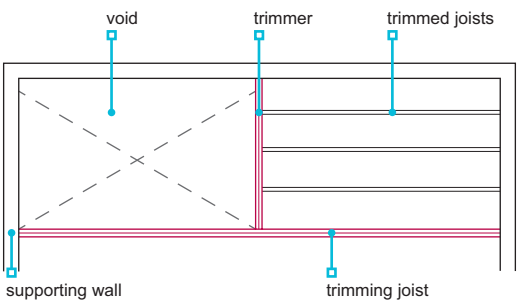
Upper floors shall have adequately sized and properly supported trimmer joists around openings.

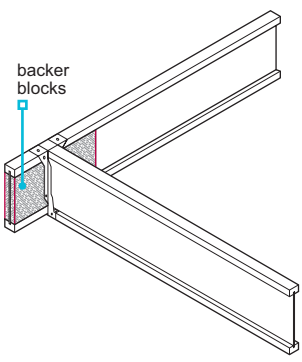
Trimmer, trimmed and trimming joists should be:

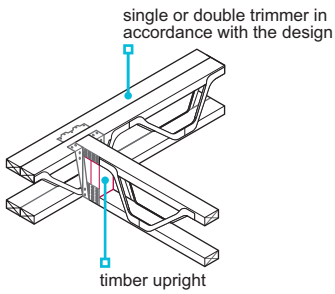
- detailed in the design
- designed in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

Connections between joists should be made with suitable 'timber-to-timber' hangers, and:

- where face fixing I-joists to another I-joist, be provided with backer blocks on both sides of the web of the trimmer
- where metal web joists are used as a trimming joist to support another metal web joist, have timber uprights between the flanges of the trimmer.







Deflection

The following should be considered in the design and detailing around openings in floors:

- deflection of trimming joists to be similar and no worse than the adjacent floor joists
- compound deflection of the floor including trimming and trimmed joists should be limited to the overall floor deflection, to ensure there is no differential movement or noticeable step in the floor level adjacent to the trimming joists
- where partition walls are built off trimmers and trimming joists, particularly fire compartment walls, additional care should be taken to ensure that the overall deflection of such joists would not result in residual gaps at the heads of the walls or in distorted walls or openings within the walls.

There should be no notching or drilling of trimmers or trimming joists unless proven by design calculations.

6.4.17 Multiple joists

Multiple joists shall be securely fixed together.

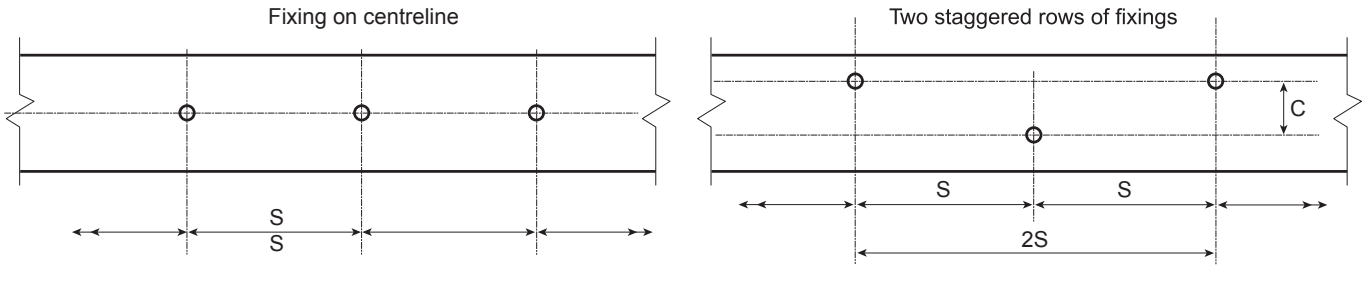
Joists can be doubled or tripled up to provide additional support, eg for lightweight partitions or to form trimmers. The design should specify how the joists are fixed together and be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

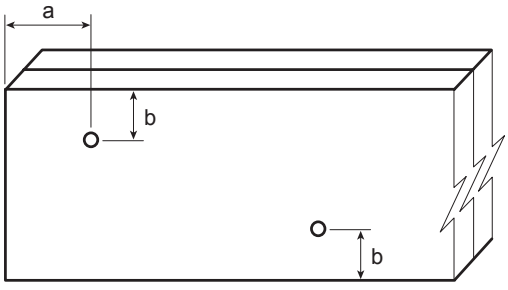
As a minimum the fixing centres for double member trimmer and trimming joists should be at centres of no more than twice the adjacent joist spacing.

When securing solid joists:

- fixings should be in accordance with the engineer's specification and should be checked before the ceiling is fixed, including the tightness of bolts
- toothed plate, split ring and shear plate connectors should be provided where required
- washers or single-faced connectors should be used with bolts
- ensure that timber is not damaged by over-tightening.

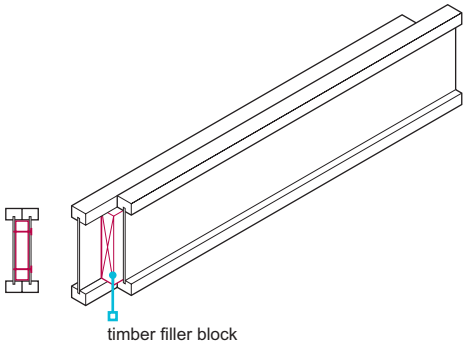
Coach bolts can be used to fix multiple solid joists together. They could be located at centreline or staggered depending on the loading and design. Where located on centreline, the spacing of between S (joist centres) and 1.0m can be used. Where more than two joists are secured together or a heavy concentrated load is to be supported, then the fixing arrangement with staggered spacing shown in the table below may be used.





Fixing type	Minimum dimension (mm)		
	a	b	c
Bolt	Maximum of 7d or 80mm	4d	4d
d – diameter of bolt			

Engineered joists should be secured together in accordance with the manufacturers recommendation.



6.4.18 Notching and drilling

Notching and drilling shall be carried out within recognised limits.

Solid timber joists

Notching and drilling should be designed by an engineer where:

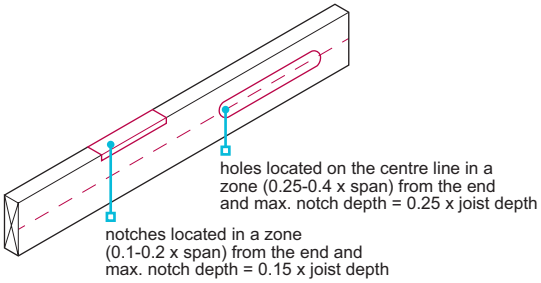
- the joist is deeper than 250mm
- it does not meet the guidelines in this chapter, or
- it is close to heavy loads, such as those from partitions, cisterns, cylinders and stair trimming.

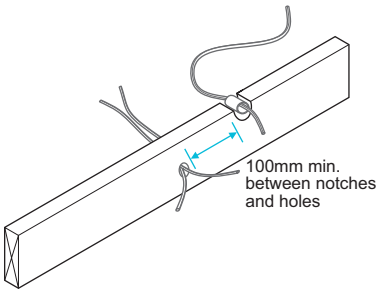
Notching and drilling should:

- have a minimum horizontal separation of 100mm
- be in accordance with Table 6.

Table 6: Notching and drilling solid timber joists

	Location	Maximum size
Notching joists up to 250mm depth	Top edge 0.1-0.2 x span	0.15 x depth of joist
Drilling joists up to 250mm depth	Centre line 0.25-0.4 x span	0.25 x depth of joist

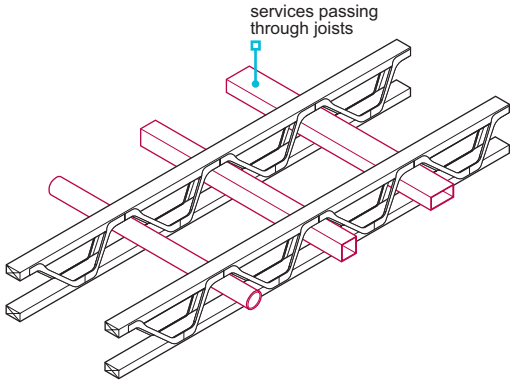




I-joists

Preformed holes should be provided in the web and:

- holes or notches should not be cut without the approval of the manufacturer
- restraint straps can be slotted into webs immediately below the top flange.



Metal web joists

In metal web joists:

- service conduits should run in the gaps between the metal webs
- maximum duct sizes should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- large service ducts may have to be inserted before fixing the joists, as it may not be possible after the joists have been fixed.

6.4.19 Floor decking

Floor decking shall be suitable for the intended use and be of adequate strength and moisture resistance. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) type, thickness and fixing

b) protection against damage.

Type, thickness and fixing

Where decking contributes to the sound insulation of a floor, the thicknesses listed in this chapter should be checked.

Floor decking should:

- be appropriate to the joist spacing
- be in accordance with Table 7 (which applies to normal domestic loads, ie, an imposed load of 1.5kN/m^2), or comply with another acceptable clause described in Technical Requirement R3.

Table 7: Floor decking requirements

Floor decking	400mm joist centres	450mm joist centres	600mm joist centres	Standard
Softwood boarding	16	16	19	BS EN 13353
Moisture resistant chipboard	18	18	22	BS EN 312 – type P5
Plywood	15	15	18/19	BS EN 636
Oriented strand board	15	15	18/19	BS EN 300 – type OSB3

When installing decking:

- fixings and support should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- checks should be made, prior to fixing, to ensure that noggings, blocking and strutting are in the correct position and secure
- butt joints should be staggered and supported on noggings or joists
- adjacent boards should be square
- where nails are used, they should be 2.5 x the thickness of the decking material
- where gluing is required, boards should be glued to the joists and at joints, using a suitable polyvinyl acetate (PVAc) adhesive
- temporary wedges and packing should be removed once the floor decking is complete.

Square edged boards and boards with loose tongues

When fixing boards with square edges or loose tongues, they should be supported on all sides by joists or noggings.

Tongued and grooved boards

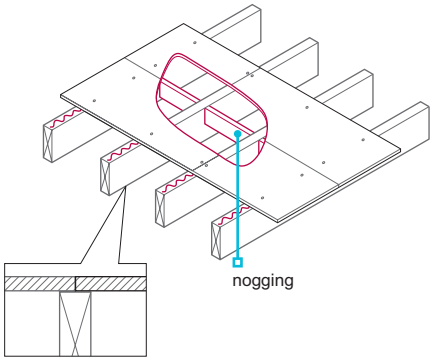
When fixing boards with tongued and grooved edges:

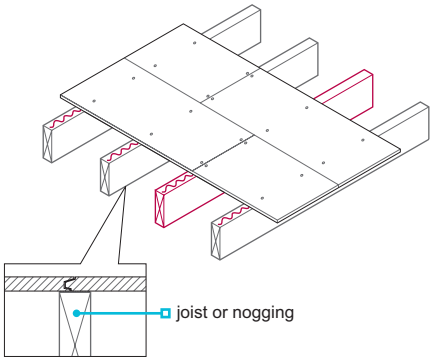
- boards should be laid with long edges at right angles to joists
- short edges should be supported on joists or noggings or cut back to form a butt joint over a joist
- boards should be glued to the joists and the sheets glued to each other with polyvinyl acetate (PVAc) adhesive (not softwood boarding)
- long edges at room perimeters should be fully supported on joists or noggings.

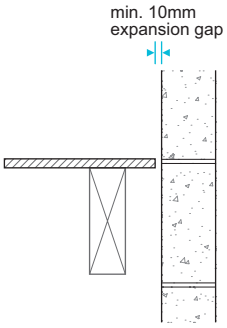
Chipboard flooring

Chipboard flooring should be supported and fixed in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations using either:

- flat-headed ring shank nails, 2.5 x the thickness of the board and minimum 3mm diameter, or
- screws to BS 1210, minimum 2 x the thickness of the board and no less than size No. 8.







When fixing:

- fixings should have a maximum spacing of 300mm along continuously supported edges and intermediate supports
- where boards abut a rigid upstand, a minimum 10mm expansion gap should be provided; for large areas of boarded floor, a wider expansion gap may be required at upstands and intermediate expansion gaps of 2mm per linear metre of floor should be provided.

Oriented strand board flooring

When fixing oriented strand board flooring:

- boards should be laid over supports in the direction indicated on the board, with the stronger axis at right angles to the supporting joists
- boards should be long enough to span two joists
- nails should be flat headed, annular grooved nails, 3mm in diameter
- where boards abut a rigid upstand, a minimum 10mm expansion gap should be provided; for large areas of boarded floor, a wider expansion gap may be required at upstands and intermediate expansion gaps of 2mm per linear metre of floor should be provided.

Plywood flooring

When fixing plywood flooring:

- boards should be laid with the face grain at right angles to the supports
- end joints should occur over joists or noggings
- fixings should have a maximum spacing of 150mm around the perimeter and a maximum spacing of 300mm on intermediate supports
- an expansion gap of at least 1.5mm-2mm should be allowed between each panel.

Nails for fixing plywood should be in accordance with Table 8.

Table 8: Fixings for plywood floors

	Plain wire nails (mm)	Annular ring shank nails (mm)
Minimum diameter	3.35	3
Minimum length	65	50
Minimum penetration	40	32

Proprietary flooring

Proprietary flooring should be:

- certified in accordance with Technical Requirement R3
- installed in accordance with certification requirements.

Protection against damage

Floor decking should be stored:

- on a hard base
- under cover
- indoors where possible.

Floor decking that are built in as the work proceeds and left exposed to the weather will be subjected to deterioration and adverse effect of the weather, particularly when exposed to prolonged periods of rainfall. Such floor decking when used in conjunction with engineered and traditional joists should:

- have a third-party approval certificate from a UKAS accredited body which covers weather resistance for the period of time the boards are to be left exposed on site
- be used strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's instruction and details.

Any floor decking that are left exposed beyond the period stated on the third-party approval certificate should be replaced.

Non-proprietary floor decking without third party certification should not be used on structural floors exposed to the weather for any period of time under any circumstances.

Floors should not be overloaded, especially with materials during construction, and be protected against damp, plaster splashes and other damage.

6.4.20 Floating floors or floors between homes

Floating floors shall be separated from the main structure and surrounding walls by a resilient layer.

The structural component of floors between homes may be concrete, steel, timber or a combination of these materials.

The floor finish should be isolated from walls and skirtings.

Where board materials are laid loose, joints in tongued and grooved boards should be glued.

Proprietary floating floor materials and systems should be fixed in accordance with:

- Building Regulations
- manufacturer's recommendations
- relevant certification requirements.

Chapter

6.5

Steelwork

This chapter gives guidance on meeting the Technical Requirements for:

- **steelwork which supports masonry partitions and timber floors, including trimmed openings**
- **the protection of steelwork.**

For figure reference tables in this chapter, please go to the end of the chapter

6.5.1 Compliance

Also see: Chapter 2.1

Steelwork shall comply with the Technical Requirements.

Steelwork (including trimming to floor voids) for supporting masonry partitions or timber floors which comply with the guidance in this chapter will generally be acceptable.

The information provided in this chapter is in accordance with BS EN 1993-1-1 using grade S275 steel; however, more economical or smaller beams may be designed by an engineer.

Steelwork, including its support and any connections, should be:

- designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5, or
- detailed in accordance with this chapter.

6.5.2 Design guidance

Also see: Chapters 6.1, 6.3 and 6.4

Steelwork shall be designed to support and transmit loads to the supporting structure without undue movement or deflection. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) support of masonry partitions

b) support of timber floors, including trimmed openings.

Support of masonry partitions

Masonry partitions may be supported by steelwork selected in accordance with this chapter. Care should be taken to avoid masonry supported by steelwork being partially supported or out of true.

Conditions for Tables 1 and 2

Steel beams in accordance with Tables 1 and 2 of this chapter will generally be acceptable for the support of masonry partitions where the following conditions are met:

- the partition is of one of the types detailed in Table 1
- the partition is built centrally on the steelwork beam and is less than 2.7m in height
- the span of the steel beam is less than 4m
- steel beams only support the weight of the partition and self-weight
- brickwork or blockwork (workface size 440mm x 215mm) supporting the steel beam has a minimum strength of 2.8N/mm^2 and the beam supports do not occur over a door or window opening
- padstones are provided where required, in accordance with Table 6.

Where any of the conditions are not met, steelwork should be designed in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

Method of applying tables:

- ensure that all conditions apply.
- identify the masonry partition construction and thickness
- use Table 1 to establish the load per metre run
- check the span of the beam(s)
- use Table 2 to determine a suitable steel section size
- use Table 6 to determine if padstones are required.

An example is provided at the end of this chapter.

Table 1: Load of partition to be supported

Type of masonry for supported partition (not more than 2.7m high and plastered both sides)	Maximum masonry density (kg/m^3)	Structural thickness (mm)		
		100	90	75
		Load (kN/m run)		
Dense masonry	2000	6.8	6.2	5.4
Medium masonry	1400	5.1	4.8	4.2
Lightweight masonry	800	3.5	3.3	2.9

Table 2: Size of steel beam supporting partition

Partition load (from Table 1) (kN/m run)	Clear span of beam (m)	Smallest suitable universal beam size (mm x mm x kg/m)
Less than 3	Up to 4 Over 4	127 x 76 x 13 (2)
3 to 5	Up to 3 3 to 3.5 3.5 to 4 Over 4	127 x 76 x 13 152 x 89 x 16 178 x 102 x 19 (2)
5 to 7	Up to 2.5 2.5 to 3 3 to 4 Over 4	127 x 76 x 13 152 x 89 x 16 178 x 102 x 19 (2)

Notes

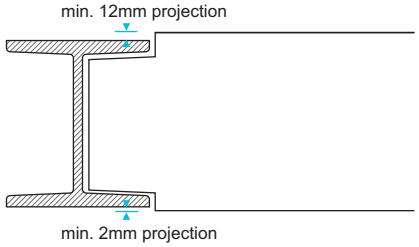
1 For spans up to 4m, universal column 152mm x 152mm x 23kg/m (smallest size available) may be used.

2 For spans over 4m, beams should be designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

Support of timber floors, including trimmed openings

Timber floors may be supported by steelwork selected in accordance with this chapter and should include full allowance for the shrinkage of timber joists.

Figure 1: Allowing for shrinkage of timber joists



Conditions for Tables 3 and 7

Steel beams in accordance with Tables 3 and 7 will be acceptable to NHBC for the support of floors, where the following conditions are met:

- the floor construction is of decking (softwood boarding, chipboard, oriented strand board or plywood) on timber joists and the ceiling is plasterboard with a plaster skim coat or a plastic finish (Artex or similar)
- allowance has been made of 0.5kN/m^2 for self-weight (floor and ceiling load)
- the floor does not support masonry partitions
- any lightweight partition, such as plasterboard on timber studwork or proprietary product, is non load-bearing
- padstones are provided where required in accordance with Table 6
- clear span of beam does not exceed 4.4m
- connections between steelwork beams are in accordance with Clause 6.5.6, or are designed by an engineer
- the floor support is one of the methods shown in Figure 1.

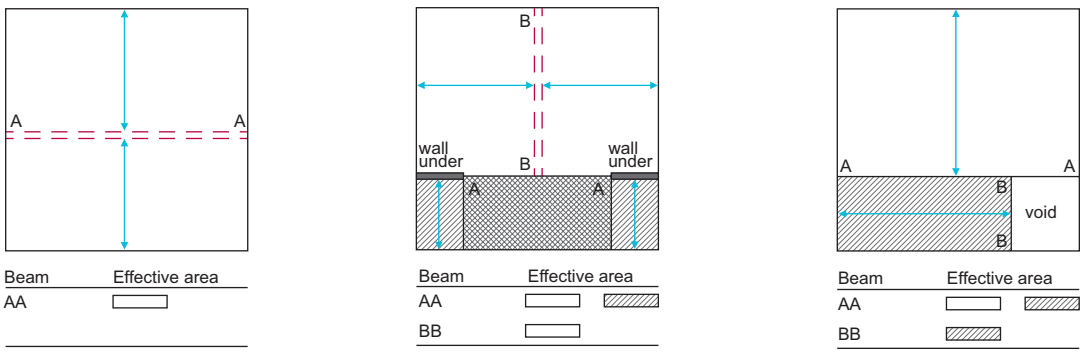
Where any of the conditions are not met, steelwork should be designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

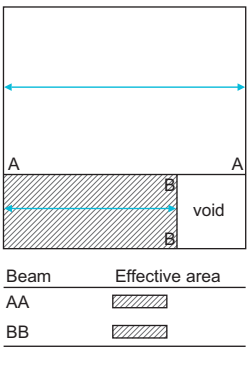
Method of applying tables:

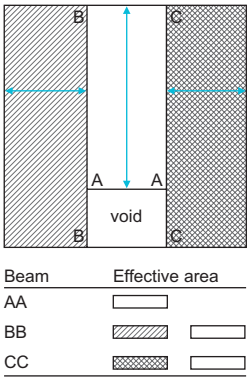
- use Figure 1 to determine the area supported by the beam(s)
- check the span of the beam(s)
- use Table 3 to determine a suitable steel section size
- use Table 7 to determine if padstones are required
- where steel beam-to-steel connections are required, refer to the connections in Clause 6.5.6.

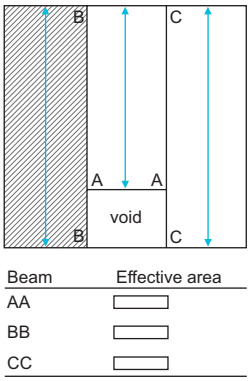
Ensure that all conditions apply.

Figure 2: Effective areas supported by steel beams









Where any area shown as 'void' contains a staircase, add 2m² to the effective area supported by any beam which fully or partially supports that staircase.

Table 3: Size of steel beam supporting timber floor

Effective area supported (m²)	Effective trimmer span = clear span + 100mm (m)	Smallest suitable steel section size (mm x mm x kg/m)	
		Universal beam	Universal column
0 to 20	0 to 2.0	127 x 76 x 13	152 x 152 x 23
0 to 20 20 to 30	2 to 2.5	127 x 76 x 13 152 x 89 x 16	152 x 152 x 23 152 x 152 x 23
0 to 10 10 to 20 20 to 30	2.5 to 3	127 x 76 x 13 152 x 89 x 16 178 x 102 x 19	152 x 152 x 23 152 x 152 x 23 152 x 152 x 23
0 to 10 10 to 30 30 to 40	3 to 3.5	127 x 76 x 13 178 x 102 x 19 203 x 133 x 25	152 x 152 x 23 152 x 152 x 23 152 x 152 x 30
0 to 10 10 to 20 20 to 30 30 to 40 40 to 50	3.5 to 4	152 x 89 x 16 178 x 102 x 19 203 x 102 x 23 203 x 102 x 30 *	152 x 152 x 23 152 x 152 x 23 152 x 152 x 23 152 x 152 x 30 152 x 152 x 37
0 to 10 10 to 20 20 to 30 30 to 40 40 to 50	4 to 4.5	203 x 102 x 23 203 x 133 x 25 203 x 133 x 30 * *	152 x 152 x 23 152 x 152 x 23 152 x 152 x 30 152 x 152 x 37 203 x 203 x 46

*Beams should be designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

6.5.3 Steel grade and coatings

Steelwork shall be specified to provide sufficient strength, durability, and fire resistance.

The design should detail the method of fixing or connecting structural steelwork. The guidance given in this chapter applies to steelwork which is to be bolted (using black bolts) or not connected.

Steelwork should be in accordance with the guidance in this chapter and:

- BS EN 10365 'Hot rolled steel channels, I and H sections. Dimensions and masses.' or
- BS EN 10056 'Structural steel equal and unequal leg angles'.

To ensure adequate durability in the environment it will be exposed to steelwork should:

- have a protective coating system applied before being delivered to site
- comply with the level of fire resistance required by Building Regulations.

Where welding is to be carried out, the protective coating system specified by the designer should be used.

Further guidance on the protection of structural steel is given in BS EN ISO 12944 'Paints and varnishes. Corrosion protection of steel structures by protective paint systems' and BS EN ISO 14713 'Zinc coatings. Guidelines and recommendations for the protection against corrosion of iron and steel in structures'.

Decorative finishes should be compatible with the protective coat specification. The designer should determine compatibility in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Chapter 9.5 'Painting and decorating' contains further guidance for decorative paint finishes to steelwork.

Table 4: Environment categories for component groups in different locations and exposure conditions

Component group	Location	Description of exposure condition	Environment categories
External	Outside a home	Above splash zone	C4 or C5(1)
		At ground level within splash zone (up to 150mm above ground)	C5(2)
	Outside or basement	Below ground level	C5(2)
Internal	Sub-floor void(3)	Unventilated	C3
		Ventilated	C2
Internal	Kitchen/bathroom, etc	Moist humid conditions – protected against condensation	C2
	Kitchen/bathroom, etc	Moist humid conditions – exposed to condensation	C2
	Rooms other than kitchen/bathroom, etc	Warm dry	C2
	In roof void	Unheated dry	C2
Internal/external	Façade	Embedded or partially embedded in building envelope	C5(4)

Notes
1 For construction located within 500m of coastal shoreline.
2 Alternatively, steelwork may be encased in concrete.
3 For steelwork not in contact with the ground.
4 For steelwork in contact with, or embedded in an external masonry wall, for at the contact / embedment length.

Alternatively, guidance on suitable atmospheric corrosivity categories (C1 – C5) and appropriate protective coatings for domestic construction may be based on the recommendations given on the website **www.steelconstruction.info**. A site specific assessment is required in order to determine an appropriate classification level for the steelwork. A suitable protective coating specification is to be determined by the designer in accordance with the coating manufacturer's recommendations.

Table 5: Protective coatings for hot rolled structural steelwork for atmospheric corrosivity category (recommended for housing applications only)

Atmospheric corrosivity and risk	Surface preparation(4)	Protective coating(1, 2, 3)			Site or factory applied	Making good of damaged areas of protective coating
		Material	Minimum coating thickness (d.f.t.)(5) / weight(6)	Number of coats		
C1 Very low	N/A	None required	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
C2 Low	Thoroughly clean surface prior to abrasive blast cleaning to Sa 2½	High build zinc phosphate epoxy primer(7)	80 µm(8)	1 or 2	Factory	Thoroughly wire brush damaged areas and build up coats using the same materials and to the same d.f.t.
C3 Medium	Thoroughly clean surface prior to abrasive blast cleaning to Sa 2½	High build zinc phosphate epoxy (7) primer, followed by high build recoatable epoxy micaceous iron oxide (MIO)	80 µm(8) 120 µm (200 µm in total)	1 or 2 1	Factory	Thoroughly wire brush damaged areas and build up coats using the same materials and to the same d.f.t.
C4 High		Hot dip galvanize to BS EN ISO 1461(9)	460 gms/m²	1	Factory	To be determined by the designer in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
C5 Very high		Hot dip galvanize to BS EN ISO 1461(9)	710 gms/m²	1	Factory	To be determined by the designer in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations

Notes
1 Where steelwork is to be given a decorative finish, the protective coat is to be compatible with the decorative finish. Manufacturers' recommendations should be followed.
2 Where steelwork is to be protected by intumescent paint for fire purposes, manufacturers' recommendations should be followed.
3 All fixings and fittings to the structural steel elements are to be protected against corrosion in a manner that is both commensurate and compatible with the protective coatings.
4 Surface preparation to BS EN ISO 12944-4.
5 Coating thicknesses given represent nominal dry film thickness (d.f.t.).
6 Thicknesses and weights shown represent the coating to be applied to each face of a steel section.
7 Epoxy primers have a limited time for over-coating. Manufacturers' recommendations should be followed.
8 80 µm can be in one coat or as 20 µm pre-fabrication primer plus 60 µm post-fabrication primer.
9 Alternatively, use products manufactured from austenitic stainless steel in accordance with the recommendations of BS EN 1993-1-4:2006.

Where shop-applied protective coatings have been damaged, the coatings should be made good on site prior to being built into the works, as indicated in Table 5 'Making good of damaged areas'.

Where steelwork is to be welded, the protective coating system specified by the designer should be used.

Where steelwork is to be protected by intumescent paint for fire purposes, this should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

6.5.4 Installation and support

Steelwork shall be installed to achieve the required structural performance. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) section size and grade detailed in the design

b) steelwork support.

Section size and grade detailed in the design

When materials are delivered to site, they should be checked to ensure conformity with:

- engineer's design, or
- steelwork sizes in this chapter.

Steelwork support

Beam supports should not occur above window or door openings. Bearings for steelwork supported on masonry should be:

- 100mm minimum
- clean, dry and level.

6.5.5 Padstones

Steelwork shall be supported by padstones where required to distribute point loads safely to the supporting structure without undue movement or deflection.

Where a steel beam is supported by masonry, a padstone may be required to spread the load over a larger area to prevent overstressing. Padstones should be in accordance with:

- the engineer's design, or
- the guidance given in this chapter.

Where the inner leaf of the cavity wall contributes to the overall thermal performance of the wall, padstones should:

- have similar thermal properties to the masonry used for the rest of the inner leaf, or
- not create a cold bridge.

Table 6: Size of padstones (for steel supporting partition walls)

Type of masonry for supported partition (not more than 2.7m high and plastered both sides)	Thickness of wall supporting beam (mm)						Minimum depth of padstone (mm)
	100	125	140	150	190	215	
	Minimum length of padstone (mm)						
Dense masonry	215	190	185	180	165	155	150
Medium masonry	155	140	135	130	120	110	150
Lightweight masonry	95	85	80	75	70	70	150

Notes

1 Padstones are not necessary where the flange dimension of the beam exceeds the length of the padstone given in this table.

2 When steelwork is in line with the wall supporting it, ie, when acting as a lintel over an opening:

- the flange dimension of the beam should not be more than 50mm greater than the thickness of the supporting wall
- the minimum length of padstone should be 200mm
- the padstone depth should match the coursing of adjacent masonry
- the web of the beam should be over the centre of the wall.

3 The minimum length of steel bearing onto padstone should be 100mm.

Table 7: Size of padstones (for steel supporting floors)

Effective area supported (as used in Table 3) (m^2)	Minimum padstone size (mm)					
	Thickness of wall supporting steel beam (mm)					
	Up to 105		105 to 155		156 to 216	
	Length	Depth	Length	Depth	Length	Depth
Up to 10	95	150	80	150	70	150
10 to 20	185	150	160	150	140	150
20 to 30	275	150	240	150	210	150
30 to 40	365	215	320	150	280	150
40 to 50	455	300	400	215	345	215

Notes

1 Padstones are not necessary where the flange dimension of the beam exceeds the length of the padstone given in this table.

2 When steelwork is in line with the wall supporting it, ie, when acting as a lintel over an opening:

- the flange dimension of the beam should not be more than 50mm greater than the thickness of the supporting wall
- the minimum length of padstone should be 200mm
- the padstone depth should match the coursing of adjacent masonry, and
- the web of the beam should be over the centre of the wall.

Padstones should be formed in one unit with a minimum compressive strength of 10 N/mm^2 from:

- in-situ concrete
- precast concrete
- concrete blocks
- clay bricks, or
- engineering bricks (when less than 215mm x 100mm).

6.5.6 Connections

Connections shall be chosen and installed to achieve the required structural performance.

Steelwork connections should:

- be in accordance with the guidance in this chapter, or
- where other forms of connection (eg high strength friction grip bolts) are required, be designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

Only weld, cut or drill steelwork where it is required by the design.

Bolts for connections should comply with the design information and relevant British Standards, including:

BS 4190	'Specification for ISO metric black hexagon bolts, screws and nuts'
BS EN 1011	'Welding. Recommendations for welding of metallic materials'
BS EN 14399	'High-strength structural bolting assemblies for preloading'
BS EN 1993-1-8	'Eurocode 3. Design of steel structures. Design of joints'

The connection methods detailed in this chapter are suitable for connecting steel beams used to support floor loads only, using black bolts or welding.

Figure 3: Joints between beams of similar size (beams 170mm to 230mm deep)

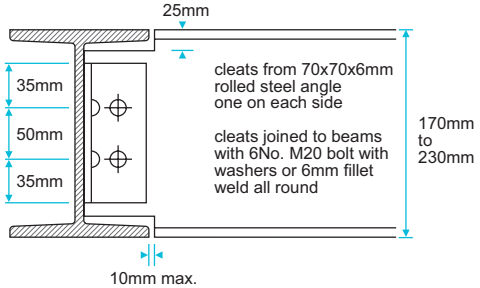
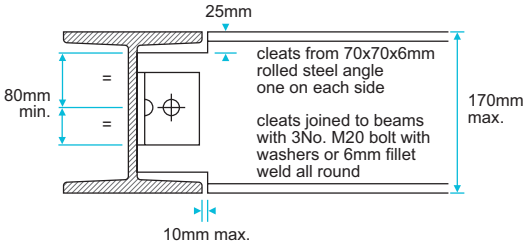


Figure 4: Joints between beams of similar size (neither beam deeper than 170mm)



Conditions for the use of this method are:

- beams should only support timber floors in accordance with this chapter
- both beams have been chosen from Table 3
- beams do not differ in depth by more than 40mm.

Connections between steel sections should be designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5, where the above conditions are not met.

6.5.7 Examples

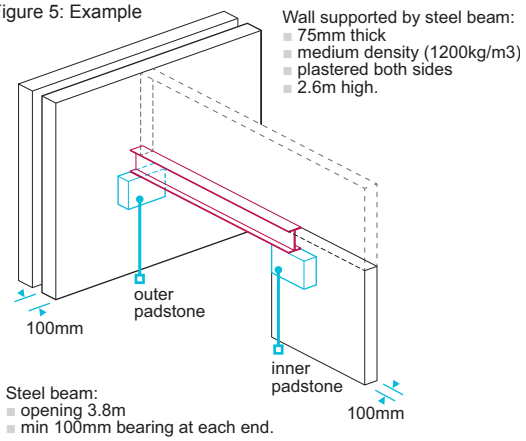
1 Using information about the supported wall and Table 1:
- load per metre run = 4.2kN/m.

2 Using the load per metre run, the span of the beam and Table 2:
- suitable section size = 178 x 102 x 19 UB.

152 x 152 x 23 UC is not suitable as it is too wide for the inner padstone/wall.

3 Using information about the wall supporting the beam (100mm thick), the walls supported by the beam (medium density block) and Table 6:

Figure 5: Example



Results from example calculation:

Minimum padstone size	155mm long 150 mm deep
Outer padstone (beam at right angles to wall)	
Minimum length **Minimum depth** **Thickness**	155mm long(1) 150mm 100mm, to match blockwork(2)
Inner padstone (beam in line with the wall)	
Minimum length **Minimum depth** **Thickness**	200mm (see note 2 to Table 6) 150 mm 100mm, to match blockwork

Notes
1 This is greater than the flange dimension of the steel section obtained in 2 above – 102mm – therefore a padstone is required to distribute the load.
2 The actual length and depth of a padstone could be greater to suit masonry coursing.

Figure reference table

Figure reference table 6.5

Chapter

6.6

Staircases

This chapter gives guidance on meeting the Technical Requirements for staircases.

For figure reference tables in this chapter, please go to the end of the chapter

Definitions for this chapter

Balustrading	The collective name for the complete assembly of handrails, baserails, newels, spindles and caps
Common (communal) stair	A staircase serving more than one property
Continuous handrail	Using lengths of connected handrail, the handrail flows over the tops of newel turnings, creating a continuous run of handrail
Going	The depth from the front to the back of the tread, less any overlap with the next tread above
Guarding	A barrier that denies pedestrians or vehicle access to another area, eg the floor below
General access stair	A stair intended for all users of a building on a day-to-day basis, as a normal route between levels
Newel post	A post at the head or foot of a flight of stairs, supporting a handrail
Nosing	The edge of the tread projecting beyond the face of the riser
Pitch	The angle between the pitch line and the horizontal
Pitch line	A notional line connecting the nosings of all treads in a flight of stairs
Private stair	A staircase wholly within one dwelling
Rise	The vertical distance between the floors or landings connected by a flight. The individual rise is the vertical measurement from the top of a tread to the top of the next tread
Riser	The board that forms the face of the step
Spindle	A vertical member, plain or decorative, that acts as the infill between the handrail and baserail
Staircase	The entire structure relating to a stair, comprising steps, treads, risers, strings, balustrading, landings, etc
Stairway	The space/void provided for the stairs
Step	The tread and riser combined
Tread	The top or horizontal surface of a step
Utility stair	A staircase used for escape, access for maintenance, or purposes other than moving between levels on a day-to-day basis
Winders	Radiating steps, narrower at one end, that are used to change the direction of stairs through 90° or 180°

6.6.1 Compliance

Also see: Chapter 2.1

Staircases shall comply with the Technical Requirements.

Staircases which comply with the guidance in this chapter and relevant Building Regulations will generally be acceptable. Further guidance can be found in BS 5395-1.

6.6.2 Provision of information

Designs and specifications shall be produced in a clearly understandable format, include all relevant information and be distributed to appropriate personnel.

Staircase design and specification information should be issued to site supervisors, relevant specialist subcontractors and suppliers, and include the following information:

- layout of stairs, landings and position of handrails
- dimensions covering width, rise and going, handrail height, etc
- the type, size and length of fixings, their location and number, and the type of wall and joists/trimmers the stair is being secured to
- landing design and structural support arrangement.

6.6.3 Fire precautions

Where required for fire escape, staircases shall be suitably designed.

Staircases should be designed to meet relevant Building Regulations, taking into account the fire resistance of components and smoke ventilation. Further guidance can be found in BS 9991 and BS 9999.

6.6.4 Lighting

Also see: Part 8

Staircases shall be adequately lit.

Artificial light sources should be provided to all staircases and landings within homes and common areas, and be controlled by two-way switching. Alternatively automatic light-sensitive controls may be used.

6.6.5 Glazing

Also see: GGF Safety and Security Glazing Good Practice Guide

Glazing near staircases (where contact could be made by someone using the stairs) shall be suitable for its location.

Where staircases are located close to glazing, any glass below the minimum guarding height or within a zone where a user may make impact, the glass should either not break or be designed to break safely. The glazing should be at least one of the following:

- protected by a balustrade or railing (balustrade spacing should be a maximum of 75mm)
- toughened or laminated glass
- constructed using glass blocks.

6.6.6 Structural design

Staircases shall be properly supported and transmit loads to the supporting structure without undue movement, deflection or deformation.

Staircases should be designed and comply with relevant Building Regulations and Table 1.

Table 1: Standards for stair construction

Type of staircase	Relevant standard	Additional guidance
Timber staircases (straight flights, ¼ or ½ landings)	BS 585: Part 1 or 2	The stair and landing support method and fixings should be specified See also Chapter 3.3 ‘Timber preservation (natural solid timber)’
Reinforced concrete staircases	BS EN 1992-1-1	Should be designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5 See also Chapter 3.1 ‘Concrete and its reinforcement’
Steel staircases	BS EN 1993-1-1	See also Chapter 6.5 ‘Steelwork’
Proprietary staircases		Proprietary staircases should meet Technical Requirement R3

Timber stud walls may require additional noggings to provide appropriate fixing locations, and block walls should be sufficiently robust to support the required loads and to receive appropriate fixings. It should be noted that stairs generally are unable to be secured to metal stud walls.

Differential movement

When considering differential movement in relation to setting out, levels and finishes, allowances should be made for:

- casting/fabrication tolerances
- deflection under load
- foundation settlement
- creep and thermal movement
- storey height.

6.6.7 Headroom and width

Staircase openings shall be adequately sized.

Stairs should have a minimum of 2m clear head room (H) over the entire length and width of the stairway and landing, as measured vertically from the pitch line or landing.

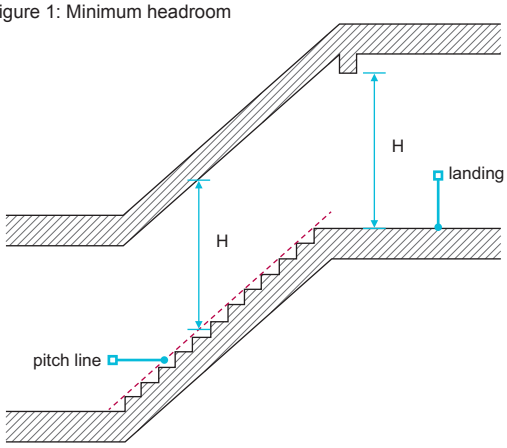
Staircases should have the minimum width as required by the relevant Building Regulations.

The overall floor opening should be checked off plan and on site prior to the stairs being installed:

- for size to accept the stairs, with sufficient clearance to enable installation
- to allow for sufficient headroom.

Where staircases form part of a means of escape, reference should be made to the relevant Building Regulations.

Figure 1: Minimum headroom



6.6.8 Design of steps

Also see: BS 5395

Steps shall be constructed to allow the safe use of the staircase. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) pitch
b) steps
c) tapered treads and winders.

Pitch

The maximum angle of pitch of a stairway should not exceed:

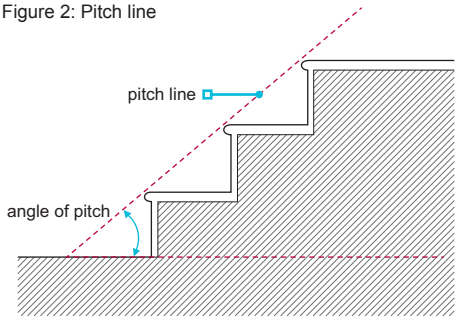
- 42° for private stairs.

The dimensions for maximum rise and minimum going should meet relevant Building Regulations.

Private stairs should have a maximum rise 220mm and minimum going 220mm (225mm minimum going in Scotland).

Stairs should be dimensioned so that the rise (R) and the going (G) is between 550mm and 700mm when using the equation:
2R + G.

Figure 2: Pitch line



Staircases should be accurately located and fixed with the string at the correct angle to ensure all treads are level.

Steps

In each flight:

- treads should be level
- the rise and going of steps should be equal
- account should be taken of the thicknesses of screeds. Floor finishes that reduce the bottom rise by a maximum of 12mm are acceptable
- the treads should overlap by a minimum of 16mm (15mm in Scotland), where the riser is open
- open risers should not permit a 100mm sphere to pass through and are not permitted for common stairs.

Figure 3: Equal risers

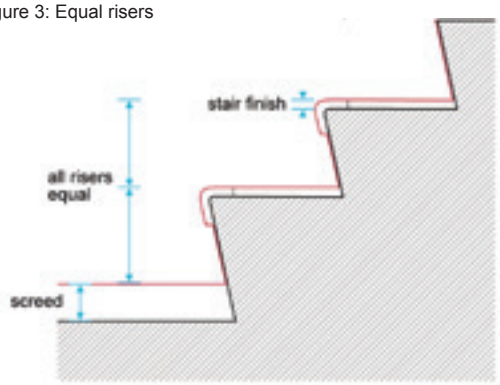
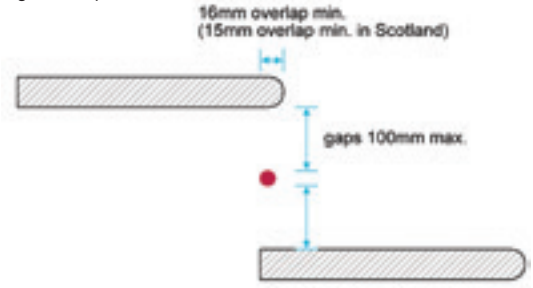


Figure 4: Open risers



Where stairs are open to the weather, designers should consider that grip may be affected by inclement weather, and one of the following should be specified:

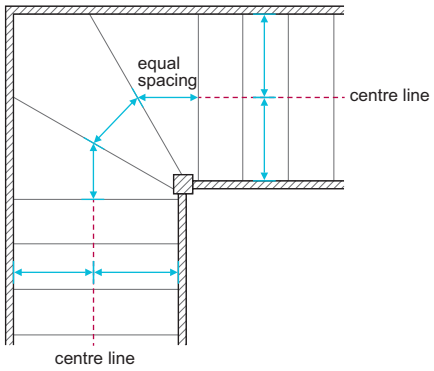
- a non-slip finish
- a non-slip insert to each tread.

Tapered treads and winders

The rise of tapered treads should be consistent throughout the staircase. The going should be:

- uniform and no less than the going of the associated straight flight
- a minimum of 50mm at the narrowest point
- measured in accordance with the relevant Building Regulations.

Figure 5: Measuring tapered treads (staircase less than 1m wide only)



6.6.9 Landings

Landings shall allow safe use of the staircase.

Landings should be:

- constructed in accordance with the design
- properly supported and transmit loads to the supporting structure without undue movement, deflection or deformation
- framed to provide full support and solid fixings for the tops of flights, nosings, newels, apron linings, etc

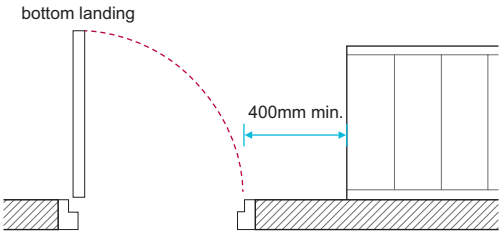
Door swings should not obstruct landings. A door may open across the bottom landing of private stairs where the swing is a minimum of 400mm from the first tread.

Pivot windows should not obstruct the landing area or stair flight when they are opened.

Landings should typically be:

- provided at the top and bottom of every flight
- level and at least the same depth and width as the width of the stair.

Figure 6: Landings next to doors (bottom of stairs only)



6.6.10 Guarding

Staircases shall have adequate guarding and be constructed to reduce the risk of being climbed or falling through.

Guarding:

- is required where the drop is more than 600mm at any point along the open sides of stairs and landings
- may be required where a stair abuts an opening window, to comply with relevant Building Regulations.

Guarding should be:

- provided along the full length of the flight, including landings
- capable of resisting forces, in accordance with Table 2 and BS 6180
- a solid wall or balustrading
- positioned at a height, in accordance with Table 3.

Table 2: Minimum horizontal imposed loads for parapets, barriers and balustrades for residential usages

Type of occupancy	Example use	Horizontal uniformly distributed line load (kN/m)	Uniformly distributed load applied to the infill (kN/m²)	A point load applied to part of the infill (kN)
Domestic and residential activities	All areas within or serving exclusively one single family dwelling including stairs, landings etc but excluding external balconies and edges of roofs	0.36	0.5	0.25
	Other residential ie, houses of multiple occupancy and balconies, including juliette balconies and edges of roofs in single family dwellings	0.74	1.0	0.5

Table 3: Guarding height

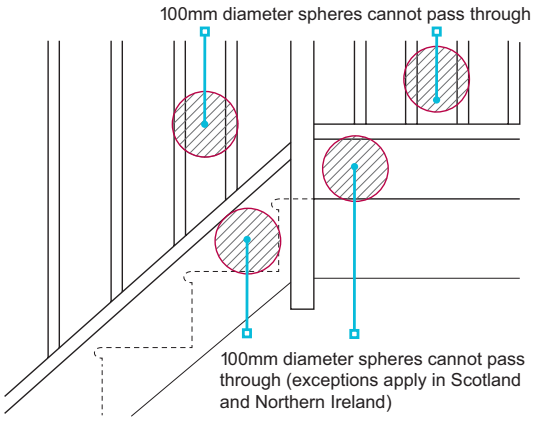
Type of stairs	Flights – minimum guarding height (mm)	Landings – minimum guarding height (mm)
Private stairs (England, Wales, Northern Ireland and the Isle of Man)	900	900
Private stairs (Scotland)	840–1000	900
Common stairs	900	1100

Balustrading should:

- be fixed securely
- not be climbed easily by children, eg have no horizontal foot holds which would enable climbing
- not permit a 100mm diameter sphere to pass through any opening. (In Scotland and Northern Ireland the space between a rise in a stair and the lowest edge of the protective barrier may be larger than 100 mm, provided the lowest edge of the barrier is not more than 50 mm above, and parallel to, the pitch line of the stair).

Where guardrails or balustrades are long, newel posts may not be sufficient to transfer the horizontal forces to the structure, and intermediate posts may be required. The method of fixing newels should be specified, eg through-bolted to joists or alternative supports to an engineered design.

Figure 7: Protective guarding



6.6.11 Handrails

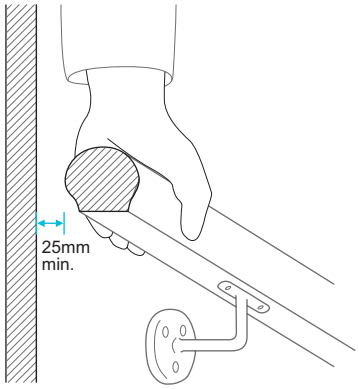
Also see: BS 5395-1

Handrails shall be correctly located and fixed to provide a firm handhold.

A handrail is required for flights of stairs that rise over 600mm. The handrail (throughout the full length) should:

- be securely fixed and located in accordance with the design
- be a vertical distance of 900mm–1000mm (or 840mm–1000mm in Scotland) above the pitch line
- have a 25mm minimum clearance from any surface
- ensure a firm handhold
- have rounded ends or be returned to the wall to reduce the risk of clothing being caught
- be continuous, and unobstructed
- have a smooth finish and be free from rough or sharp edges, including brackets or fixing heads.

Figure 8: Minimum clearance gap



For tapered treads/winders, where handrails to the outside of the stairs are provided, they should provide a safe handhold for the full rise of any stairs with a total rise greater than 600mm.

In England, Wales and Scotland, where the staircase has between one and four tapered treads/winders, the newel post may be used to provide a safe handhold. In Northern Ireland, a handrail should be fitted to the outside of all tapered stairs.

Figure 9: Handrail provision

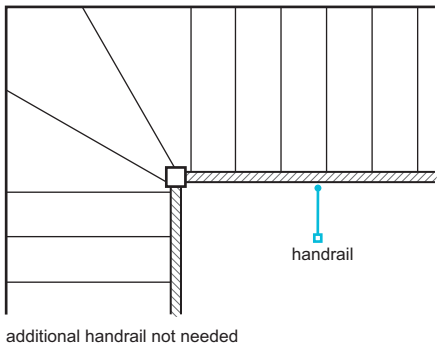


Figure 10: Handrail provision

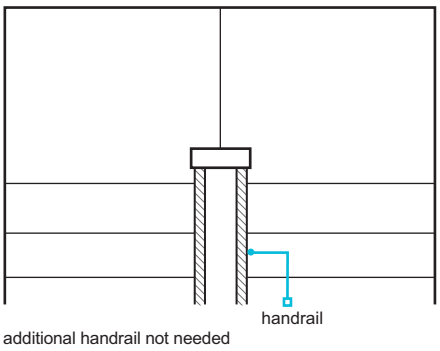


Figure 11: Handrail provision

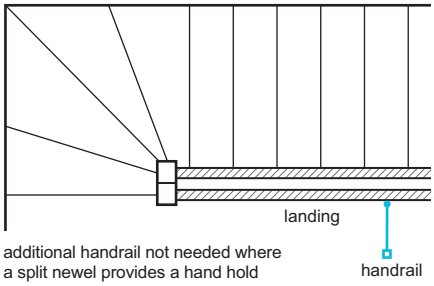
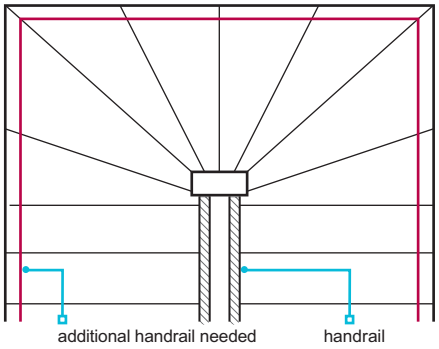


Figure 12: Handrail provision



In England, Wales and Scotland, a handrail is not required on the outside of the stairs if the newels provide a safe handhold.

There should be a minimum distance between newels of 100mm to provide a hand grip.

Figure 13: Handrail provision

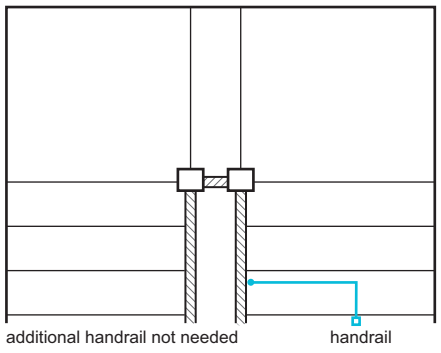
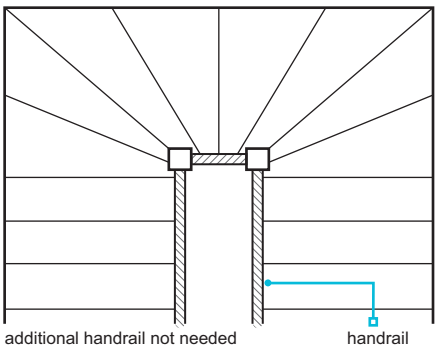
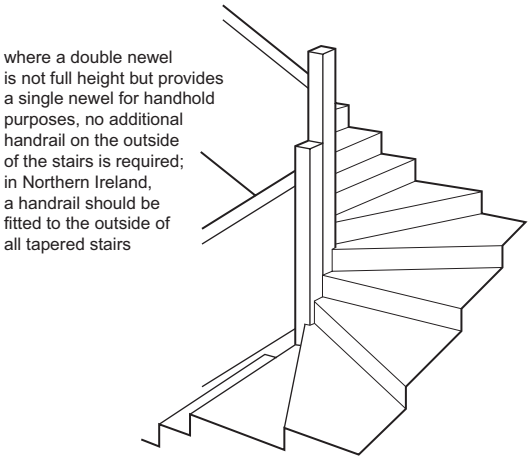


Figure 14: Handrail provision



Where a handrail is needed, it should be continuous for the whole rise to avoid the need to change hands. At corners, the handrails do not need to join if they extend into the corner and provision is made for an easy transfer of a handhold from one handrail to another.

Figure 15: Handrail provision



Also see: Chapter 3.3, British Woodworking Federation Stair Scheme Installation Guide Timber Stairs and BS 585 Parts 1 and 2

6.6.12 Staircases made from timber and wood-based products

Staircases made from timber products shall be suitable for their intended purpose and of suitable quality.

Timber staircases should be adequately fixed to the supporting structure.

Stair strings should be fixed to the wall in accordance with guidance supplied by the manufacturer or published by the British Woodworking Federation 'Stair Scheme Installation Guide Timber Stairs'.

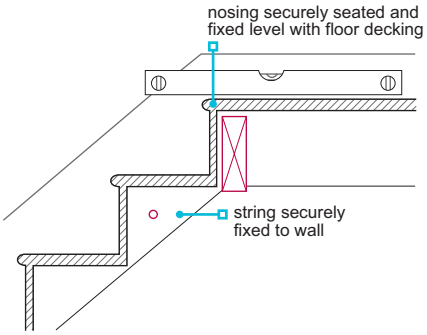
Where light gauge steel framing (LSF) is intended to be used to support staircases, the stud manufacturer should be consulted to ensure the framing can adequately support the staircase loads.

The wall string should be cut to sit over the floor joist to land evenly on the floor or landing.

The top nosing should be:

- level with the floor decking
- screwed into the joist.

Figure 16: Staircase fixing



Newel posts should be plumb, and all components, including strings, treads and risers, newel posts, balustrading and handrails, fixed securely. Particular attention should be given to fixing winders.

Strings should be glued to the newel posts and secured with dowels or screws.

Staircase fixing requirements should not impede any fire or acoustic requirements for the supporting structure.

Landings should be:

- constructed in accordance with the design
- properly supported and transmit loads to the supporting structure without undue movement, deflection or deformation
- framed to provide full support and solid fixings for the tops of flights, nosings, newels, apron linings, etc.

Timber external staircases, landings and any necessary support should be:

- preservative treated or have adequate natural durability in accordance with Chapter 3.3
- constructed in accordance with guidance from the Timber Decking and Cladding Association 'Code of Practice - Raised timber deck structures on new homes'.

Finished joinery should be free from splits, knocks and other damage which would impair its structural performance or finish.

Nails should be punched below the surface of the wood and stopped. Further guidance can be found in BS 1186-2.

6.6.13 Concrete staircases

Also see: Chapter 3.1 and 3.2

Staircases made from concrete shall be suitable for their intended purpose and be of suitable quality.

Concrete staircases should be designed and manufactured in accordance with BS EN 1992-1-1.

Precast construction

Precast staircases should comply with BS EN 14843, and account should be taken of:

- accurate location and levelling of units
- load paths.

In-situ construction

Guidance for in-situ concrete can be found in Chapter 3.1 'Concrete and its reinforcement'.

Shuttering for concrete elements or connections should be constructed to ensure a consistent rise and going.

Chairs or spacing blocks should be used to provide cover to reinforcement in accordance with Chapter 3.1.

Formwork should be struck in accordance with the design information.

Design information on the spacing of bolt fixings for balustrades or handrails should be followed.

Balustrading for concrete staircases should be:

- grouted into the preformed holes or pockets
- bolted to brackets cast into the concrete.

Care should be taken when using expanding fixings near the edges of concrete.

6.6.14 Steel staircases

Also see: Chapter 6.5

Staircases made from steel shall be suitable for their intended purpose and of suitable quality.

Steel staircases should be designed in accordance with BS EN 1993-1-1.

For steel staircases:

- the manufacturer's assembly and erection instructions should be available and followed
- the supporting structure should be constructed within relevant tolerance limits set for the steel staircase
- protective coatings should be provided in accordance with Chapter 6.5 'Steelwork'.

6.6.15 Proprietary staircase units

Proprietary staircases shall be suitable for their intended purpose and of suitable quality.

Proprietary staircases and associated components should comply with the Technical Requirements.

6.6.16 Protection

Stairs shall be free from damage and unsightly marks.

Staircases should be protected to prevent damage and unsightly marking during construction.

When storing staircases, they should be:

- stacked on bearers
- suitably protected from the weather.

Timber staircases should be fixed in place only when the building is weathertight.

Staircases, stair treads, nosings, balustrades and handrails may be protected with timber strips, plywood or building paper.

Timber staircases may be also affected by residual moisture contained within a concrete floor, an isolating DPC may be provided directly below the staircase to offer protection.

Figure 17: Timber staircase protection

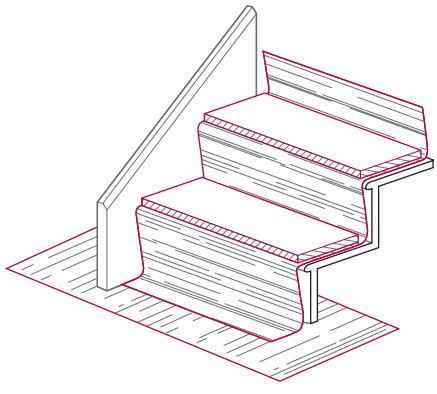


Figure reference table

Figure reference table 6.6			
Fig No	**Title/Description**	**Clause**	**Page**
Figure 1	Minimum headroom	6.6.7	3
Figure 2	Pitch line	6.6.8	3
Figure 3	Equal risers	6.6.8	3
Figure 4	Open risers	6.6.8	3
Figure 5	Measuring tapered treads	6.6.8	4
Figure 6	Landings next to doors	6.6.9	4
Figure 7	Protective guarding	6.6.10	5
Figure 8	Minimum clearance gap	6.6.11	5
Figure 9	Handrail provision	6.6.11	6
Figure 10	Handrail provision	6.6.11	6
Figure 11	Handrail provision	6.6.11	6
Figure 12	Handrail provision	6.6.11	6
Figure 13	Handrail provision	6.6.11	6
Figure 14	Handrail provision	6.6.11	6
Figure 15	Handrail provision	6.6.11	7
Figure 16	Staircase fixing	6.6.12	7
Figure 17	Timber staircase protection	6.6.16	8

Chapter

6.7

Doors, windows, and glazing

This chapter gives guidance on meeting the Technical Requirements for doors, windows, and glazing, including where coupled door and window frame assemblies are contained within a single storey. Coupled door and window frame assemblies (including spandrel panels) which are:

- **one storey or more in height, or**
- **not contained between a structural floor and ceiling**

should be designed in accordance with Chapter 6.9 'Curtain walling and cladding'.

This chapter does not provide guidance on compliance with Building Regulations. Work shall comply with all relevant Building Regulations covering:

- **weathertightness**
- **thermal performance**
- **fire safety**
- **safety from impact**
- **ventilation**
- **security.**

For figure reference tables in this chapter, please go to the end of the chapter

For the purposes of this chapter the following terms and definitions apply:

Air and vapour control layer	Continuous layer of material with a high resistance to water vapour to control the movement of air and water vapour
Air barrier	An air barrier controls air leakage into and out of the building envelope. For framed walls, this is usually in the form of a membrane
Breather membrane	Continuous layer of material with a low resistance to water vapour to allow vapour movement but impermeable to water
Building envelope	External wall or roof construction that separates the habitable parts of a building from the external environment
Coupled door and window frame assemblies	A glazed wall formed by combining pre-assembled doors and (or) windows. The window frames may be supported directly by brackets fixed to the primary structure or may be supported by horizontal and vertical framing members
Doors	A complete door assembly, assembled on site or delivered as a complete assembly, consisting of the door frame, door leaf or leaves, essential hardware and any integral side panel or fanlight
Fixings	Component that is used to secure separate parts of a window or door to each other, to secure an item of hardware to a window or door part, or to secure a completed window or door into the structure of a building
Frames	Outer frame, mullion, and transom components of doors and windows
Glazing	Glass component of a door or window
Glazing material	A material which provides a bedding for the glass and forms a joint between the glass and frame. The term includes glazing compounds, sealants, putties, glazing strips and tapes, and gaskets
Impregnated foam tapes	Impregnated foam weatherproofing strip flexible, elastic, preformed material that constitutes a linear seal when compressed
Insulating glass unit IGU	Assembly consisting of at least two panes of glass, separated by one or more spacers, hermetically sealed along the periphery, mechanically stable and durable
Sealant	Wet applied compound applied in an unformed state to a joint which seals it by adhering to appropriate surfaces within the joint
Structural opening	Opening in an external wall or roof into which a window or door is to be installed
System manufacturer	Company who designs, manufactures, and supplies a system
Thermal bridging	Occurs when part of a thermal element has significantly higher heat transfer than the materials surrounding it
Weathertightness	Performance in respect of air permeability, watertightness, and resistance to windload
Window	Building component or multiple components for closing an opening in a wall or roof that may admit light and/or provide ventilation

6.7.1 Compliance

Also see: Chapter 2.1

Doors, windows and glazing shall comply with the Technical Requirements.

Doors, windows and glazing which comply with the guidance in this chapter will generally be acceptable.

6.7.2 Provision of information

Designs and specifications shall be produced in a clearly understandable format, include all relevant information and be distributed to appropriate personnel.

Design and specification information should be issued to site supervisors, relevant specialist subcontractors and suppliers.

6.7.3 In-service performance

Doors and windows shall be designed and specified to ensure adequate in-service performance. Issues to be considered include:

a) weathertightness
b) minimising thermal bridging
c) continuity of the air barrier
d) accommodating thermal movement
e) operation and strength
f) durability.

Weathertightness

The following documents should show weathertightness performance classifications of doors and windows:

- CE/UKCA marking in accordance with BS EN 14351-1
- appropriate third-party product certification.

The performance classification levels should be appropriate for the site exposure conditions.

For doors and windows into low rise housing, the suitability of weathertightness performance classification levels for the site exposure conditions may be determined according to the procedure in BS 6375-1.

Higher levels of performance should be specified for doors and windows into medium and high-rise buildings as remedial works in the event of water leakage are likely to be more difficult. Windows in high rise buildings may also be exposed to higher levels of wind driven rain.

The satisfactory weathertightness performance of doors and windows also depends on appropriate detailing of interfaces with the surrounding building envelope. The interface between any window or door and its surround should be a robust detail that is easy to understand at the construction stage. It should be evident how it should be constructed and should be easy to inspect and/or test.

The head of frames should be set back from the edge of the lintel/cavity tray, and sills should project at least 25mm beyond the wall face.

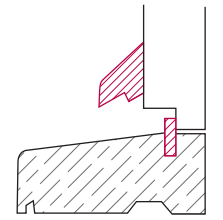
Where doors and windows are incorporated into structural openings of timber framed walls, breather membranes should be used to provide a secondary water barrier to prevent entrapping water vapour and causing interstitial condensation within the wall.

Where accessible thresholds are required, the door should be protected from precipitation by a canopy, a drainage slot or channel adjacent to the cill provided and a platform with a slope of between 1:60 and 1:40 to ensure water run-off.

In Scotland, Northern Ireland, and areas of very severe exposure, ‘check reveals’ should be used. The frame should be set back behind the masonry outer leaf with a minimum 12mm overlap to the frame.

Notes
1. Many manufacturers supply doors and windows which exceed the recommended classifications in BS 6375-1, commonly class 9A (600Pa) for watertightness and class 4 (600Pa) for air permeability. The use of doors and windows with higher levels of performance will reduce the risk of leakage.
2. Experience suggests that testing for watertightness at 25% of the design windload gives satisfactory performance provided that the installation is carried out correctly.

Figure 1: Water bar and weatherboard to external doors



water bar and weatherboard provided for external doors

Figure 2: Throating to window cill – cavity masonry wall

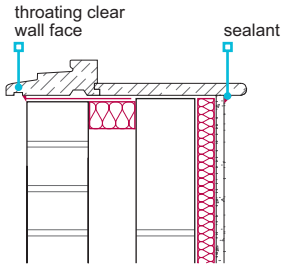


Figure 3: Throating to window cill – stone cill

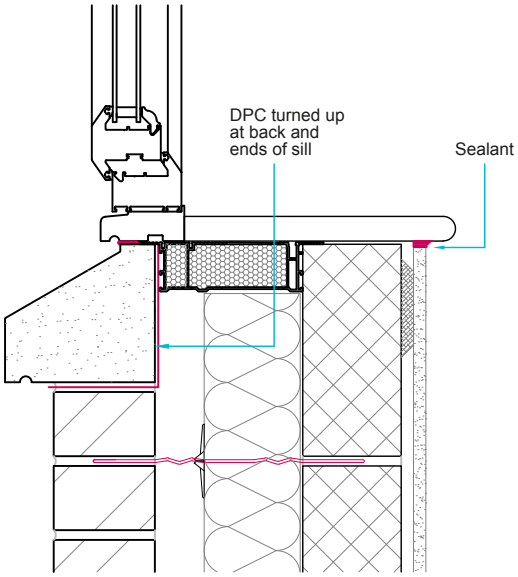
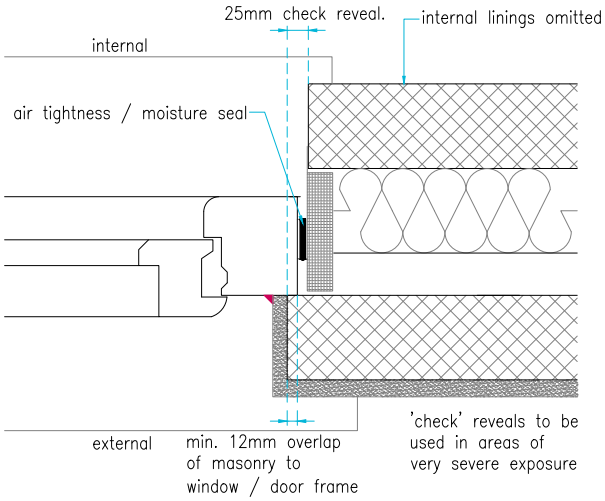


Figure 4: Check reveal



Minimising thermal bridging

The interface between any door/ window and its surround should be designed to minimise the effects of thermal bridging and risk of condensation.

In cavity masonry construction, insulated cavity closures should be built into the structural opening and cavity wall insulation tightly abutted to prevent gaps in the insulation.

Doors and windows should be positioned within the structural opening to maintain continuity of the insulation layer of the building envelope.

In cavity masonry walls, doors and windows should be positioned with an overlap between the inner face of the frame and the inner face of the outer leaf. The overlap should be between 30mm and 50mm for windows and 50mm for doors - so that the door or window is contiguous with the insulation layer of the external wall.

Note
1. For doors, reinforced cavity closures may need to be used at thresholds.

Continuity of the air barrier

To ensure continuity of the air barrier, door and window frames should connect to the primary air barrier and be appropriately sealed. For doors and windows incorporated into the structural openings of framed walls, the air barrier is likely to be formed by the air and vapour control layer. The air and vapour control layer should be taped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Accommodating movement

Expansion and contraction of frames is to be expected due to temperature fluctuations. To prevent frames from distorting, a gap around the perimeter of the frame and the structural opening should be provided.

The gap size depends on the frame material and the structural opening size and should be selected in accordance with Table 1.

Table 1: Recommended gaps between the frame and structural opening

Material	Structural opening size and recommend gap size		
	Up to 1.5m	From 1.5m to 3.0m	From 3.0m to 4.5m
PVC-U - white	10	10	15
PVC-U - non-white	15	15	22
Timber	10	10	10
Steel	8	10	12
Aluminium	10	10	15

Dimensions in mm

The perimeter gap should be sealed with a suitable sealant which is able to resist water penetration and prevent air leakage whilst accommodating differential movement between the structural opening and the frame.

For doors and windows incorporated into the structural openings of timber frame walls, opening, and closing gaps should be provided around the frames in accordance with chapter 6.2 to allow for the thermal movement of frames and structural movement of the timber frame.

Silicone sealants should be applied to a closed cell polyethylene foam backing strip to control the depth of the joint, force the sealant against the sides of the joint during application and aid tooling of the sealant. The depth of sealant should be at least 5mm.

For checked reveals, the sealant should form a fillet with an overlap of 6mm to the frame and 10mm to the brick outer leaf.

When impregnated foam tapes are used for perimeter sealing, over sealing with a wet sealant is not usually required. Manufacturer instructions and product certifications should be followed.

Note
Further guidance on sealants is provided in the following standards:
- BS 6093 Design of joints and jointing in building construction - Guide
- BS 6213 Guide to selection of construction sealants
- BS EN ISO 11600 Building construction – jointing products – classification and requirements for sealants.

Operation and strength

Doors, windows, and their fittings should be adequate to withstand operational loads. Characteristics and classes of performance should be in line with the relevant class of window or doorset as defined in Annex A of BS 6375-2.

Durability

Subject to appropriate maintenance, doors and windows should have a minimum service life of 40 years. Component parts such as operating handles, gaskets and locking mechanisms may need replacing within the service life.

6.7.4 Coupled door and window frame assemblies

Coupled door and window frame assemblies shall be designed and installed to provide adequate in-service performance. Issues to be considered include:

a) system design
b) weathertightness
c) structural integrity
d) movement accommodation
e) thermal performance
f) site testing for watertightness.

System design

Coupled door and window frame assemblies should be supplied as a standard system comprising only of components designed and detailed by the system manufacturer.

Weathertightness

Jointing details should be designed on the principle of two lines of defence with flexible inner and outer seals. The cavity between the seals should be drained to remove any water that bypasses the outer seals.

Weathertightness of coupling joints may be adversely affected by deflections under windload. Weathertightness of coupling joints should be demonstrated by appropriate laboratory testing of an assembly.

Testing should be undertaken by a UKAS accredited test laboratory. During testing, there should be no leakage onto the internal face of the system at any time.

On completion of the test there should be no standing water in locations intended to remain dry. Any remedial modifications to the system that are made to pass the test should be reported and incorporated into the installed system.

To avoid difficulty in interpreting the results it is good practice to agree which materials and zones within the system may be allowed to get wet.

Alternative jointing details should not be used unless they have been proven by testing. The interface between the assembly and the surrounding building envelope should be a robust detail that is easy to understand at the construction stage. It should be evident how the coupling and interface details are to be constructed and should be easy to inspect and/or test.

Structural integrity

Coupled door and window frame assemblies should be designed as an engineered system to support their self-weight, resist and safely transfer imposed loads back to the supporting structure.

Windows tested and classified to BS EN 14351-1 are subjected to wind load tests, however, as the perimeter of the window is supported by the test box, the response of the perimeter frame to wind load will not have been fully assessed.

The perimeter frame of the window used in an assembly needs to be able to resist the wind load in bending or the joining component needs to provide support and contribute to the overall stiffness of the system in resisting deflection arising from wind pressure and other loadings including accidental impact.

For window assemblies, it is recommended that the main structural members of the assembly satisfy class B for which the allowable deflection is span/200 under the design wind load in both positive and negative directions. This is the limit which applies for curtain wall mullions in BS EN 13830.

Movement accommodation

As window assemblies are larger than individual windows, the amount of movement to be accommodated is also likely to greater. Coupling joints and interfaces with the surrounding construction should be designed to accommodate thermal expansion/ contraction of the frames and movement of the structure, whilst remaining weathertight.

Thermal bridging

Coupling joints, brackets, and fixings may create additional heat flow paths resulting in low surface temperatures, increasing the risk of surface condensation.

Coupling joints and interfaces with the supporting structure should be designed to minimise the effects of thermal bridging and risk of condensation including the appropriate use of thermal breaks.

The thermal assessments of linear coupling joints and interfaces with the supporting structure should be checked to assess the risk of surface condensation.

The assessments should confirm that, under normal operating conditions, condensation does not form on the visible interior surfaces of any framing members or glazing.

Site testing for watertightness

To check the workmanship of the installation has not compromised the performance of the system in any way, on site watertightness testing of coupling joints should be carried out by a UKAS accredited test laboratory using the CWCT hose test method for water penetration.

A minimum of five percent by length of all critical coupling joints should be tested. Where coupled assemblies of the same type are to be installed across a development, a minimum of two installations should be tested.

For phased developments, the minimum testing applies to each phase.

Testing should be carried out on the first installation on any development or phase before progressing with further installations.

On-site testing may be increased in areas of the UK that are expected to be subjected to severe weather exposure.

If on site watertightness testing reveals problems with workmanship, then these problems should be addressed, and additional testing carried out to confirm satisfactory watertightness performance is achieved before progressing further with the installation.

6.7.5 Glazing

The method of glazing shall ensure adequate in-service performance. Issues to be considered include:

a) standards
b) performance requirements
c) insulating glass units
d) glazing systems
e) condition before installation
f) site glazing.

Standards

Glazing and materials should conform to relevant British Standards as shown in Table 2.

Table 2: Relevant British Standards for glazing

Standard/ Specification Number	Standard/ Specification Name
BS EN 1279-5	Glass in buildings - Insulating glass units - Part 5: Product standard
BS EN 572-9	Glass in buildings – Basic soda lime silicate glass products – Part 9: Product standard
BS EN 14449	Glass in building – Laminated glass and laminated safety glass – Product standard
BS EN 12150-2	Glass in building – Thermally toughened soda lime silicate safety glass – Part 2: Evaluation of conformity/ Product standard
BS EN 1096-4	Glass in building – Coated glass – Part 4: Evaluation of conformity/ Product standard

Performance requirements

Glazing should be selected to meet applicable design and performance requirements in accordance with BS 6262-1.

The type, thickness and size of glass should be selected to provide an appropriate degree of safety, considering the intended use.

Safety glass for use in critical locations (including glazed shower/bath screens) should be marked as follows:

- manufacturers trademark or name
- the standard number for the type of glass eg BS EN 14449 laminated glass
- the impact performance classification eg 1,2,3 to BS EN 12600.

Note
Further guidance on safety marking of glass is provided in technical guidance note TGN 6.7/17.

The design loads acting upon the glazed area should be determined in accordance with BS EN 1991-1-1, BS EN 1991-1-3 and BS EN 1991-1-4. The type, thickness and size of glass should be specified to suit the design wind loads.

To improve thermal performance and minimise condensation formation around the perimeter zone of glass, glazed units with spacer bars of low thermal conductivity should be specified.

Insulating glass units

Insulating glass units should:

- be CE/UKCA marked in accordance with BS EN 1279
- hold appropriate third-party certification eg BSI Kitemark
- be checked to ensure they comply with the design, including glass type, gas filling, edge seal type and dimensions
- have a dual seal or a single seal of hot melt butyl and desiccant in at least one long and one short section of the spacer bar.

Note
Further guidance on third-party certification schemes and marking of insulating glass units is provided in technical guidance note 6.7/ 16.

Glazing systems

Drained and vented systems

Drained and vented systems should be used for site fixed insulating glass units (IGUs) and where units greater than 1m² are used. These systems allow moisture that enters the glazing channel between the frame and the edge seal of the insulating glass unit to drain away and prevent long-term moisture contact with the edge seal.

To achieve the optimum service life of IGUs, the following basic principles should be adopted in the design of drained and vented systems:

- **Removal of moisture**: Frames should have adequate drainage and ventilation through holes, slots, or channels for the rapid removal of any water that may enter the glazing rebate
- **Clearance**: A minimum 5mm edge clearance should be provided between the glass edge and frame to prevent frame-to-glass contact, ensure drainage, and allow for differential thermal expansion of the IGU and frame. For very well drained and ventilated frames, the clearance can be reduced for the side and top rebates, to a minimum of 3mm in the case of glass lengths up to 2m
- **Edge cover**: A minimum edge cover of 12mm should be provided to keep the spacer below the sight line and to protect the edge seal from sunlight
- **Rebates**: The rebate height should allow for tolerances in both the frame size and IGU size to ensure the minimum edge clearance and minimum edge cover requirements are met. The width of the rebate platform should provide the required front, back clearances, and ensure sufficient contact of the glazing beads onto the platform. The width of the rebate platform should be equal to the sum of the front and back clearances, the nominal thickness of the IGU, the width of the bead, and an allowance for the tolerances on IGU and bead thicknesses
- **Beads**: Beads should have an installed height equal to the rebate height. Timber beads for timber frames should have a width in contact with the rebate platform greater than the height, to enable firm fixing of the bead to be achieved. The bottom bead should project slightly past the rebate edge. Screw fixings for timber beads should be located a minimum of 75mm from each corner and spaced at no more than 200mm centres. If pins are used, they should be twice the height of the beads and located a minimum of 50mm from each corner and spaced at no more than 150mm centres. Beads for metal and plastic frames should be fixed in accordance with manufacturers recommendations to securely retain the IGU and the glazing seals
- **Compatibility**: Glazing material should be compatible with frame finishes and glazing unit seals in accordance with manufacturers recommendations. Linseed oil-based putty should not be used in the installation of laminated glass or insulating glass units.

Fully bedded systems

Fully bedded systems are acceptable for factory glazing only where the insulated unit is less than 1m², and should:

- comply with the relevant parts of BS 8000, BS 6262 and BRE Digest 453
- not have gaps around the perimeter of the insulating glass unit.

Condition before installation

When insulating glass units are stored prior to being installed they should be:

- protected from direct sunlight to avoid thermal stress
- stored in dry conditions
- provided with adequate support to prevent distortion or bowing.

A visual inspection of glass and insulating glass units should be undertaken for signs of defects which could lead to premature failure. Signs of defects include.

- water accumulation between sheets
- edge damage or scratching.

Site glazing

Site glazing should be in accordance with the frame design and undertaken by installers who are appropriately trained and conversant with good glazing practice.

The following features should be checked before glazing:

- drainage and ventilation holes or slots are present, are of a suitable size, and are free from obstructions such as fabrication swarf, etc
- ventilation and the free flow of water to holes and slots are not impeded by setting and location blocks, external bead retention lips, or glazing materials
- as water can be present in the glazing rebate, screw fixing holes and frame joints are adequately sealed against water ingress
- a minimum 5mm edge clearance is provided around the permitter of the insulating glass unit to prevent glass to frame contact, to ensure drainage and allow for differential thermal expansion
- gaskets or strip materials supplied cut to size are the correct length to ensure that there are no gaps at the corners.

Note
Further guidance on system design and glazing considerations for insulating glass units is provided by the Glass and Glazing Federation.

6.7.6 Security

Doors, door frames, windows and locks shall be designed and specified to improve their resistance to unauthorised entry. Issues to be considered include:

a) locking functionality of main entrance doors
b) locking functionality of secondary access doors
c) opening limitation device
d) view outside
e) glazing
f) framed wall constructions
g) door and frame connections
h) windows.

Locking functionality – main entrance doors

All homes

Entrance doors of individual homes should be fitted with securely fixed locks or a multi-point locking system, which:

- has at least one thousand differs
- if burst open, would not pull out without breaking the door or its frame
- has a hardened steel bolt, or inserts, to prevent sawing
- has a latch and deadlocking facility.

Locking devices fitted to main entrance doors should permit emergency egress without the use of a key when the home is occupied.

Homes with an alternative means of escape via a door

- the door should be held closed on a latch
- deadlocking should be operated by a key externally and a handle or thumb turn internally (BS 8621 locks and PAS 8621 multi point locks meet these requirements)
- enhanced security can be achieved by providing the facility to deadlock the internal thumb turn when leaving the home unoccupied (BS 10621 locks and PAS 10621 multi point locks meet these requirements).

Homes opening directly to the outside without an alternative means of escape via a door

- the door should be held closed on a latch
- deadlocking should be operated by a key externally and a handle or thumb turn internally (BS 8621 locks and PAS 8621 multi point locks meet these requirements).

Homes without an alternative means of escape opening onto a communal access

- the door should be held closed with a roller bolt or a latch operated by a handle internally and externally
- deadlocking should be operated by a key externally and a handle or thumb turn internally (BS 8621 locks and PAS 8621 multi point locks meet these requirements).

Locking functionality – secondary access

Side hung doors should:

- be held closed on a latch operated by a handle both internally and externally
- have a deadlocking facility which can be operated by a key both internally and externally; alternatively, a thumb turn may be used internally (BS 3621 or BS 8621 (thumb turn) locks and PAS 3621 or PAS 8621 (thumb turn) multi point locks meet these requirements)
- have bolts securely fixed at both the top and bottom of the door on the internal opening edge (where multi point locking systems are used, bolts may be omitted).

Sliding doors should:

- be secured by way of a multi-point locking system with a minimum of three locking points, incorporating mushroom-headed bolts, hook bolts or shoot bolts that engage into the jamb or head, and sill of the door frame
- have an anti-lift device fitted so that doors cannot be lifted from their frame from the outside.

Opening limitation device

The main entrance door of individual homes should be fitted with a securely fixed opening limitation device.

In sheltered accommodation, opening limitation devices should not inhibit emergency access. Alternative methods for residents to identify and communicate with visitors without opening their door should be considered.

View outside

There should be a means of giving a wide-angle view of the area immediately outside the main entrance door of individual homes. Acceptable methods include:

- a through-door viewer
- clear glazing either to part of the door or a convenient window
- closed-circuit camera and displays (not connected to a TV).

Glazing

Any glazing which, if broken, would permit release of the internal handle or thumb turn by hand or arm entry should be laminated.

Framed wall construction

Lightweight timber or steel framed walls next to doors fitted with locks operated internally with a handle or thumb turn should incorporate either timber sheathing (minimum 9mm thick) or expanded metal, 600mm wide and the full height of the door.

Door and frame connections

Connections between door and/or frame components which can be easily released from the outside should not be used. This includes accessible screw connections.

Windows

Opening lights on ground floor windows and others which are readily accessible from the outside may be fitted with lockable devices which cannot be released without a key.

6.7.7 Timber doors and windows

Also see: Chapter 3.3 and 9.5

Timber and wood-based materials shall be of suitable quality and be naturally durable or suitably treated. Issues to be considered include:

a) quality assurance
b) classification and use
c) drying shrinkage
d) preparation and finish.

Quality assurance

Manufacturers of timber doors and windows should hold appropriate third-party certification to assure the fitness for purpose and quality of their products.

Classification and use

Timber windows should:

- conform to BS 644
- have a minimum 15mm rebate where double glazed units are to be installed.

Timber and wood-based materials should conform with the relevant requirements of BS EN 942 as shown in Table 3.

Table 3: Relevant requirements of BS EN 942

Component	Requirement
Glazing beads	European Redwood
Casements and sash windows	J classes
All other elements	Table 1 of BS EN 942

In England, Wales, Northern Ireland, and the Isle of Man, planted stops are not permitted on frames to external doors.

External doors should be 42.5mm minimum (44mm nominal) in thickness.

Drying shrinkage

To minimise drying shrinkage, the moisture content of joinery, when fixed, should not exceed the value given in Table 4.

Table 4: Moisture content of joinery

Joinery items	Moisture content (%)
Windows and frames	17
Internal joinery: Intermittent heating Continuous heating Near to a heat source	 15 12 9

Note
On delivery, the moisture content should be within +/-2% of the values specified.

Preparation and finish

The following elements of timber doors and windows should be of naturally durable timber or timber pre-treated against fungal decay:

- external door frames
- windows
- timber surrounds to metal windows
- external doors, other than flush doors.

Where material is:

- to be painted, it should be primed before fixing
- to be stained, it should have the first coat applied before delivery to site.

Compatibility between preservative treatment or primer, with glazing compounds, sealants, and finishes, should be checked with the relevant manufacturers.

Prefabricated items should conform with the relevant parts of BS 1186: Part 2, including:

- the fit and construction of joints and moving parts
- the construction of finger joints
- gluing and laminating
- surface finishes.

6.7.8 Non-timber doors and windows

Doors and windows of materials other than timber shall be of suitable quality. Issues to be considered include:

a) quality assurance

b) standards.

Quality assurance

Manufacturers of non-timber doors and windows should hold appropriate third-party certification to assure the fitness for purpose and quality of their products.

Standards

Non-timber doors and windows should conform to relevant standards as shown in Table 5.

Table 5: Relevant standards for non-timber doors and windows

Standard/ Specification Number	Standard/ Specification Name
BS 4873	Aluminium alloy windows and doorsets. Specification
BS 6510	Steel-framed windows and glazed doors. Specification
BS 7412	Specification for windows and doorsets made from unplasticized polyvinyl chloride (PVC-U) extruded hollow profiles
BS EN 12608-1	Unplasticized polyvinylchloride PVC-U profiles for the fabrication of windows and doors. Classification, requirements, and test methods - Non-coated PVC-U profiles with light coloured surfaces
BS 7414	Specification for white PVC-U extruded hollow profiles with heat welded corner joints for plastics windows: materials type B
BS 8529	Composite doorsets. Domestic external doorsets. Specification

6.7.9 Ironmongery

Ironmongery shall be suitable for the intended use.

Ironmongery should be provided in accordance with the design. Materials used for critical functions should comply with the appropriate standards given in Table 6:

Table 6: Relevant British standards for ironmongery

Standard/ Specification Number	Standard/ Specification Name
BS EN 1935	Building hardware. Single-axis hinges. Requirements and test methods
BS 3621	Multipoint locking assemblies Keyed egress
BS 8621	Multipoint locking assemblies' Keyless egress
BS 10621	Multipoint locking assemblies' Dual mode egress
BS EN 1906	Building hardware. Lever handles and knob furniture. Requirements and test methods
BS EN 12209	Building hardware. Locks and latches. Mechanically operated locks, latches and locking plates. Requirements and test methods
BS EN 1154	Building hardware. Controlled door closing devices. Requirements and test methods

Ironmongery for windows should be supplied as follows:

- hinges and fastenings of opening lights of windows should be of a type which prevents them from being opened from the outside when in the closed position
- where the windows are required by Building Regulations to have background ventilation, they may be fitted with trickle vents or some other means of providing ventilation which is controllable and located to avoid undue draughts. Windows with 'night vent' positions are not accepted as meeting this requirement.

Where doors to rooms containing a bath or WC have a securing device, it should be of a type capable of being opened from the outside in an emergency.

In sheltered accommodation, additional special provisions may be needed for all door locks, limiters, and other fasteners, to enable wardens to gain access when necessary.

6.7.10 Material storage and protection

Joinery, door and window components shall be adequately protected against damp and decay. Issues to be considered include:

a) storage

b) cut ends.

Storage

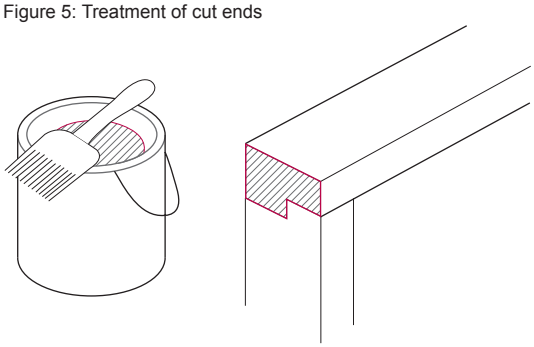
Where joinery is stored on site, precautions should include:

- avoiding wetting during unloading
- stacking external joinery on bearers off the ground and covering with waterproof material
- storing internal joinery in a weather protected condition.

Cut ends

Where pre-treated joinery is cut or adjusted on site, the affected surfaces should be retreated with appropriate preservative in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Figure 5: Treatment of cut ends



6.7.11 Installation

Doors and windows shall be correctly located and securely fixed. Issues to be considered include:

a) construction tolerances
b) workmanship and fixing
c) hanging doors and opening lights
d) general ironmongery
e) door hinges
f) window boards
g) bay windows.

Construction tolerances

Construction tolerances for structural openings, doors, and windows should be in accordance with chapter 9.1 A consistent approach to finishes.

Workmanship and fixing

Doors and windows should be installed plumb and square within the structural opening in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The completed installation should be without twist, racking or distortion of any member so that they operate correctly.

Wherever practical all four sides of the frame should be secured as follows:

- corner fixings should be between 150mm and 250mm from the external corner
- fixings should be a minimum of 150 mm from the centre line of a mullion or transom
- there should be a minimum of two fixings on each jamb and sill, with intermediate fixings at centres no greater than 600 mm.

Notes
1. The number and spacing of fixings at the head depend upon the frame width and frame material.
2. The manufacturer's instructions should be followed.

Internal door frames and linings should:

- match the thickness of the wall, partitions and finishes
- be blocked off walls wherever possible, to allow for full architraves
- be securely fixed, to prevent curling.

Timber trim should be:

- sufficiently wide to mask joints
- fixed to minimise movement and shrinkage.

Architraves should be:

- parallel to frames and linings
- accurately mitred, or scribed, to fit neatly and tightly
- fixed with an equal margin to each frame member
- fixed securely.

When fixing components:

- nails should be punched below the surface of the timber with holes stopped
- damage should be avoided.

Hanging doors and opening lights

Opening lights and door leaves should:

- hang square within the frame or lining
- fit neatly with minimum gaps.

Where a standard flush door is reduced in height, the bottom rail should be replaced where necessary.

General ironmongery

Hinges and other ironmongery should be:

- housed neatly and flush with the surface
- supplied with a full set of matching screws.

Locks should:

- turn easily
- not be fitted in mortises too tightly
- have keyholes which are properly aligned.

Door hinges

To reduce twisting, doors should be hung on hinges in accordance with Table 7.

Table 7: Summary of appropriate hinges for different door types

Type of door	Hinges
External	1½ pairs x 100mm
Internal door	1 pair x 75mm
Fire door	In accordance with the door manufacturer's recommendations
Airing or cylinder cupboard	1½ pairs x 75mm

Window boards

Window boards should:

- have a flat and level top surface
- be fixed close to the frame and adequately secured against twisting and other movement, particularly any back slope towards the frame
- be of a moisture resistant grade where MDF is used.

Bay windows

Bay windows should be:

- adequately supported and secured to the structure to prevent sagging or twisting
- properly linked to DPCs at reveals.

6.7.12 Completed work

Completed work shall be free from damage.

Work should be to an appropriate level of finish for other trades. Finishing trades should not be relied upon to correct untidy work.

Completed work should be protected as follows:

- internal doors should be kept covered with polyethylene or original wrapping
- door frames and linings should be protected with timber strips or plywood by a minimum of 1m above skirting level
- thresholds and windowsills should be covered
- scaffolding and walkways should be kept away from frames
- joinery should be protected from paint splashes and other damage
- temporary coverings should be removed after all other work has been completed and before handover.

Figure reference table

Figure reference table 6.7			
Fig No	**Title/Description**	**Clause**	**Page**
Figure 1	Water bar and weatherboard to external doors	6.7.3	2
Figure 2	Throating to window cill – cavity masonry wall	6.7.3	2
Figure 3	Throating to window cill – stone cill	6.7.3	3
Figure 4	Check reveal	6.7.3	3
Figure 5	Treatment of cut ends	6.7.10	12

Chapter

6.8

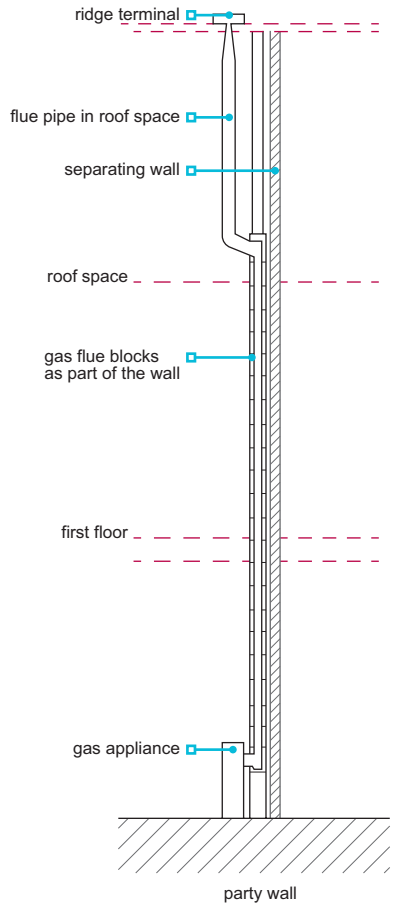
NHBC

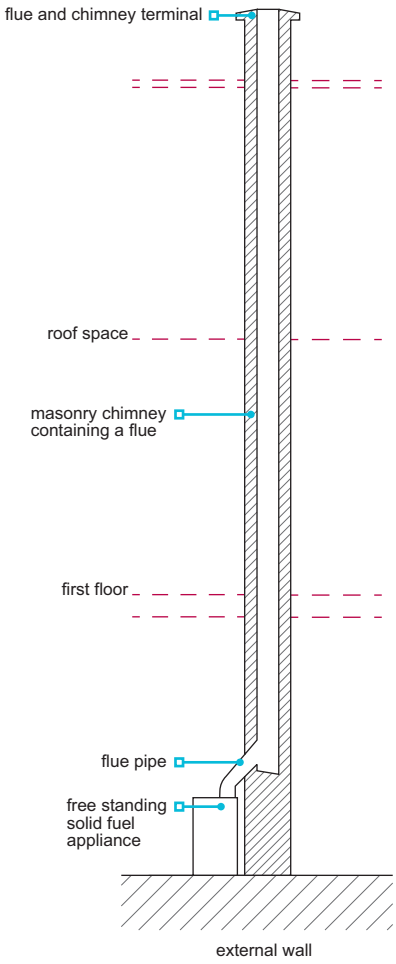
Fireplaces, chimneys and flues

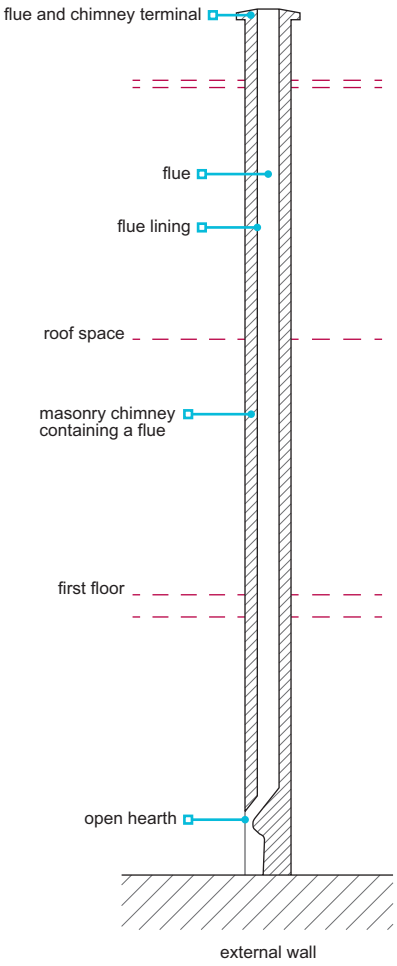
This chapter gives guidance on meeting the Technical Requirements for fireplaces, chimneys and flues.

Introduction

In this chapter, the following terms are used:







6.8.1 Compliance

Also see: Chapter 2.1

Fireplaces, chimneys and flues shall comply with the Technical Requirements, working fireplaces shall be designed to ensure efficient operation of the appliance, an adequate supply of combustion air and protection for the building fabric. False chimneys ie, GRP shall comply with R3 and passed satisfactory assessment by an appropriate independent technical approvals authority accepted by NHBC.

Fireplaces, chimneys and flues which comply with the guidance in this chapter will generally be acceptable.

Installations should be provided with an adequate supply of combustion air:

- as stipulated by statutory requirements and building regulations
- to ensure satisfactory combustion of fuel and the efficient working of flues and chimneys
- where a fixed combustion appliance is provided, appropriate provisions shall be made to detect and give warning to the release of carbon monoxide.

Where a chimney or flue is provided:

- it should be continuous from the hearth or appliance to the outside air
- a notice plate containing safety information about any hearths and flues should be securely fixed in an unobtrusive but obvious position within the home.

The design of homes which incorporate chimneys and flues should ensure that all details of the associated elements are considered and appropriate provisions made. This should include the following:

- fire risk and separation
- hearths and the constructions adjacent to hearths and flues
- chimneys and flues, including projections through the building
- terminals and outlets
- limitations on the appliance or open fire which can be installed, and fuel which can be used.

Good workmanship and effective supervision during construction are essential to ensure that fireplaces, chimneys and flues function correctly in use.

Fireplaces, chimneys and flues should be designed and installed to minimise the risk of the building catching fire. The design of timber frame construction should ensure that combustible material is:

- suitably separated from heat sources, or
- shielded, where permitted.

6.8.2 Provision of information

Designs and specifications shall be produced in a clearly understandable format, include all relevant information and be distributed to the appropriate personnel.

Clear and fully detailed drawings should be available on site to enable work to be carried out in accordance with the design. Designs and specifications should be issued to site supervisors, relevant specialist subcontractors and suppliers, and include the following information:

- position and size of hearths, fireplaces, chimneys and flues
- position and proximity of combustible materials
- position and details of flue terminals or outlets
- position of DPCs and flashings
- construction details of fireplace openings and chimney connections
- details of materials to be used
- limitations of the type of appliance or open fire that can be installed and fuel that can be used
- details of the tests required on chimneys and flues, including who is responsible for carrying them out.

6.8.3 Solid fuel – fireplaces and hearths

Fireplaces and hearths shall safely accommodate the fire or appliance for which they are designed. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) provision of hearths and recesses

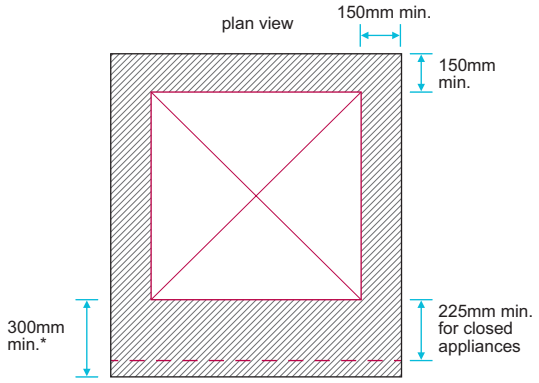
b) separation of hearths from walls.

Where appliances are not provided, it is important to construct fireplaces and hearths to suit the appliance most likely to be fitted.

Provision of hearths and recesses

Constructional hearths should be:

- provided for open fires or closed combustion appliances in accordance with Building Regulations and the manufacturer's recommendations
- a minimum of 840mm in any direction for freestanding appliances
- the adjacent diagram shows the minimum dimensions from the appliance to the edge of the hearth.



*applies to open and closed appliances which can be used when the appliance door is open

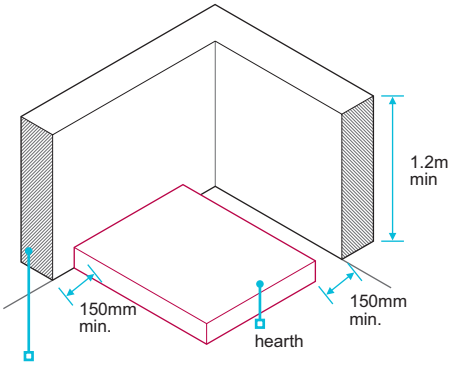
Recesses for open fires or closed combustion appliances:

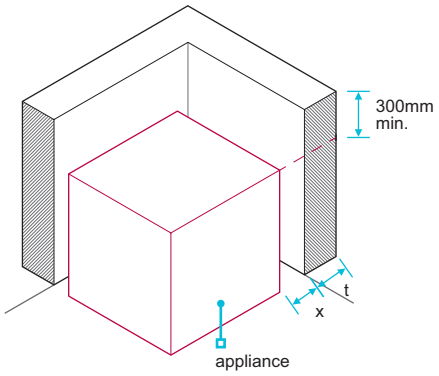
- should be provided to comply with Building Regulations and the manufacturer's recommendations
- should be lined with a fire back or fire bricks
- where the opening is less than 500mm x 550mm, should have a 200mm diameter flue (or square section flue of an equivalent area)
- where the opening is larger than 500mm x 550mm, should have a flue equivalent to 15% of the recess opening.

Separation of hearths from walls

Walls near appliances and their hearths should be:

- located to minimise the risk of fire
- non-combustible, or the appliance should not be positioned closer to the wall than as shown in the following diagram.





t = thickness of solid non-combustible material as follows:
x less than 50mm = t (200mm min.)
x more than 50mm = t (75mm min.)

6.8.4 Solid fuel – combustion air

Installations shall be provided with an adequate supply of combustion air.

Solid fuel appliances should have an air supply from external air, either directly or indirectly, to comply with statutory requirements and the manufacturer's recommendations. Full details of ventilation requirements for all types of appliances are contained in relevant Building Regulations.

Table 1: Combustion air to solid fuel appliances

	Solid fuel up to 50kW output	
	Open	**Closed appliance**
England, Wales and the Isle of Man	50% of throat area(1)	If design air permeability is less than 5.0m³/h, then 300mm²/kW for first 5kW of appliance is the rated output and 850mm²/kW for the balance of appliance rated output. If design air permeability is greater than 5.0m³/h then 850mm²/kW of appliance is the rated output
Scotland	For fireplaces up to 450mm wide (measured between fire bricks), 1500mm². For fireplaces wider than 450mm, manufacturer's details should be followed	Above 5kW rating, 550mm²/kW
Northern Ireland	50% of throat area(1)	Up to 6kW rating, 550mm². Over 6kW, add 550mm² for each kW above 6kW

Notes

1 Where the fire has a canopy, the open air vents should be 50% of the flue area.

6.8.5 Solid fuel – flue pipes

Flue pipes shall be correctly designed to connect an appliance to a flue safely. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) size, direction and jointing

b) separation from combustible materials.

Size, direction and jointing

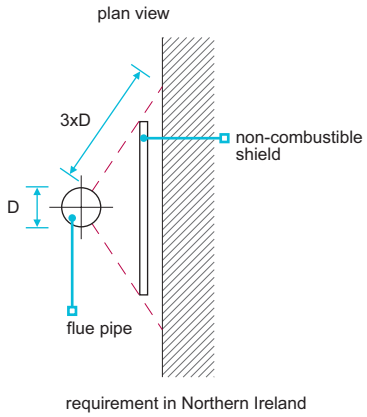
Flue pipes should have a cross-section which is equal to the outlet of the appliance they serve and should not be inclined more than 45° from vertical. A horizontal section no longer than 150mm may be used to connect a back outlet appliance to a flue.

Socket joints should be fitted socket up.

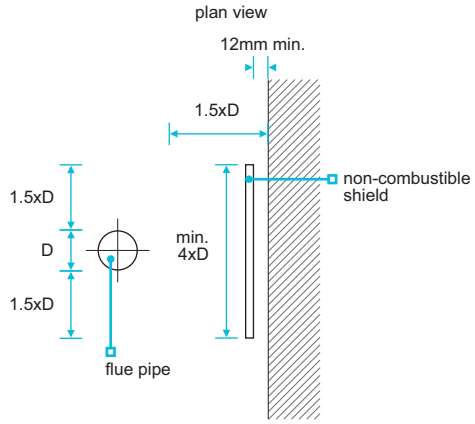
Separation from combustible materials

Flue pipes should be separated from combustible materials in accordance with Building Regulations, and:

- by a minimum 200mm of non-combustible material
- by an air space which is a minimum of 4xD, or
- be shielded by a non-combustible shield at least 4xD in width, and extended at least 1.5xD either side of the flue pipe; the shield should be at least 12mm from the combustible material, and the flue pipe at least 1.5xD from the combustible material.



requirement in Northern Ireland



requirement elsewhere

(D = external diameter of the flue pipe)

6.8.6 Solid fuel - Chimneys

Chimneys shall incorporate flues capable of safely conducting products of combustion to the external air. The structure shall be capable of supporting the flue lining and shall provide adequate protection to the adjacent structure. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) separation from adjacent spaces and materials
b) flue liners
c) resistance to frost attack
d) resistance to weather.

Flues for solid fuel appliances should:

- not serve more than one appliance
- be of a sufficient cross-section to remove all combustion gases from the open fire or appliance they serve
- where possible, be vertical (where this cannot be achieved there should not be more than two bends; bends should not be more than 45° from vertical)
- be a minimum of 4.5m high (measured above the fireplace opening).

Where a chimney is not directly over an appliance or opening, an accessible soot box should be formed.

Factory-made insulated chimneys should:

- be designed in accordance with BS EN 1856 and BS EN 1859
- have a minimum operating life of 30 years
- be installed in accordance with BS EN 15287 or be assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Separation from adjacent spaces and materials

Combustible materials close to any brickwork or blockwork chimney (not applicable to floorboards, skirting, dado or picture rails, mantelshelves or architraves) should be:

- a minimum of 200mm from the inside surface of the flue, or
- in all areas except Scotland, 40mm from the face of the chimney.

Where the home is of timber frame construction, full details of the separation proposal should be included in the design.

Materials used for chimneys should be capable of resisting fluctuating temperatures up to 1100°C.

Flues should be formed within masonry walls. The walls should be:

- a minimum of 100mm thick, or
- a minimum of 200mm thick where separating the flue from another compartment of the same building, another building or another home.

Where there is more than one flue in a chimney, the flues should be separated by a minimum of 100mm of masonry.

Flue liners

Flue liners should:

- have rebated or socketed joints installed with the socket or internal rebate facing uppermost
- be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- be non-combustible
- be properly jointed at their junctions with the starter block, or lintel, and the outlet terminal
- be reasonably smooth on the inside
- be correctly jointed with mortar (the space between the liners and the brickwork should be filled with weak insulating concrete unless the manufacturer recommends an alternative)
- have any changes in direction formed using purpose-made bends (cut pipes are not acceptable).

Resistance to frost attack

Where clay brick chimneys are above roof level and are not protected by a capping with an adequate overhang and drip (see Clause 6.8.7c), the chimney should be constructed using F2,S1 or F2,S2 bricks to BS EN 771. They should be bedded in mortar, either:

- 1:½:4 to 4½, cement:lime:sand, or
- 1:3 or 4, cement:sand with plasticiser.

Where external chimneys built with clay bricks of F2,S1 designation are rendered, sulfate-resistant cement should be used.

In Scotland, external facing brickwork should be constructed using frost-resistant bricks.

Resistance to weather

In areas of severe or very severe exposure, cavities should be continuous up to roof level. This applies to:

- cavities below roof level where the stack forms part of an external cavity wall
- the complete chimney structure, including the fireplace recess.

In areas of severe or very severe exposure, and where the chimney breast is gathered in, the lower projecting masonry should be protected against damp penetration with a suitable capping and cavity trays (see Clause 6.8.28b).

Above the roof:

- chimney DPCs should link with flashings; where the roof is steeply pitched (where the difference in level between the lower and higher intersection of the chimney with the roof will be more than 450mm) two DPCs should be used at suitable levels
- plastic DPCs are not suitable
- face brickwork should not have recessed joints
- where lead trays are in contact with mortar, they should be protected with a thick coat of bitumen or bitumen paint
- where chimneys are to be rendered, render should be in accordance with Chapter 6.11 'Render'.

6.8.7 Solid fuel – outlets and terminals

Outlets and terminals shall be adequately separated from combustible material and other parts of the home, enable the satisfactory discharge of flue gases and prevent the ingress of damp. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) outlet position
b) terminals
c) chimney cappings.

Outlet position

The flue will generally function more effectively where the outlet is in a low pressure zone, taking account of prevailing winds.

A low pressure zone generally occurs:

- on the lee side and at the ridge of a pitched roof
- close to the windward side of a flat roof.

Where the efficiency of the flue may be affected by adjacent trees or buildings in the 'low pressure' zone, the design should account for their effects.

Where down draughts occur, eg on hillsides or near tall trees and buildings, the height of the flue outlet may have to be increased or a fan-assisted flue installed.

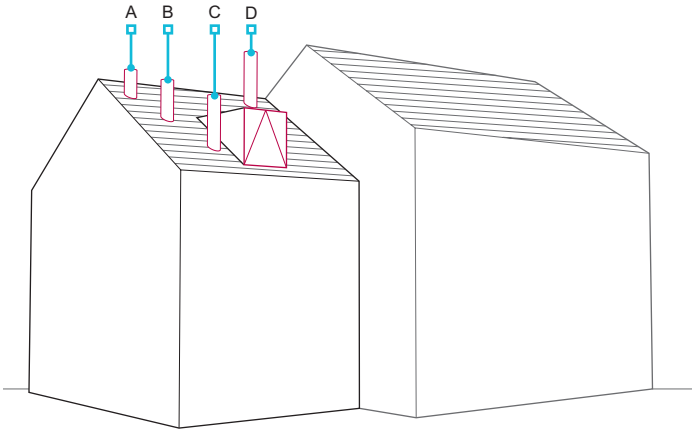


Table 2: Positions of outlets for solid fuel appliances[4]

	Point where flue passes through weather surface[1 & 2]	Minimum clearance from the flue outlet
A	Up to 600mm from ridge	Over 600mm above the ridge
B	Elsewhere on a roof (whether pitched or flat)	A minimum of 2.3m horizontally from the nearest point on the weather surface and: • a minimum of 1m above the highest point of intersection of the chimney and the weather surface, or • as high as the ridge
C	Below (on a pitched roof) or within 2.3m horizontally from an openable rooflight, dormer window or other opening[3]	A minimum of 1m from the top of the opening
D	Within 2.3m to adjoining or adjacent building, whether or not beyond the boundary[3]	A minimum of 600mm above the adjacent building

Notes

1 The weather surface is the building's external surface, such as its roof, tiles or external walls.

2 A flat roof has a pitch less than 10°.

3 The clearance given for A or B, as appropriate, will also apply.

4 Flue outlet positions for solid fuel appliances to easily ignited roof coverings need to comply with ADL diagram 18.

Terminals

Terminals should be:

- purpose-made components
- built into the top of the masonry to a minimum of 125mm or 0.25x the length of the terminal, whichever is the greater
- sealed to the flue liner.

An acceptable terminal can be achieved where the top flue liner projects a minimum of 20mm above the chimney capping.

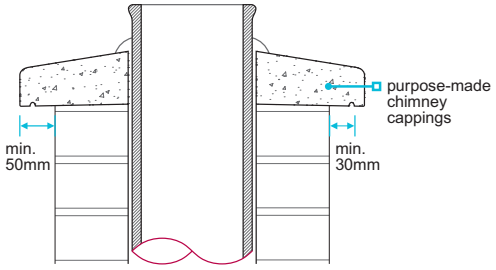
Chimney cappings

Chimney cappings should:

- be weathered, monolithic slabs
- be designed to protect the masonry below
- project a minimum of 50mm, and have a drip 30mm from the face to shed water clear of the masonry.

Cappings may be designed as a cover slab supported on piers (to reduce rain penetration into the top of the flue). The height of the supporting piers should be sufficient to allow a free opening equivalent to a minimum of 2x the area of the flue outlet.

Brick chimneys which do not have this type of capping should be constructed using frost-resistant masonry.



flue lining acting as flue terminal

6.8.8 Gas – fireplaces and hearths

Fireplaces and hearths shall safely accommodate the fire or appliance for which they are designed. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) separation from combustible materials

b) provision of hearths and recesses.

Gas appliances should be:

- fitted by a Gas Safe Register (GSR) installer, and
- comply with the Gas Safety (Installation and Use) Regulations 1998.

Separation from combustible materials

Appliances should not be closer than 75mm to combustible material. This applies to:

- the back, sides and top of the appliance
- draught-diverters.

It does not apply:

- where a 25mm thick non-combustible shield is used, or
- to gas-fired appliances with UKCA (CE, UKNI), installed in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions, which clearly indicate such separation is not necessary.

Provision of hearths and recesses

Solid fuel effect appliances

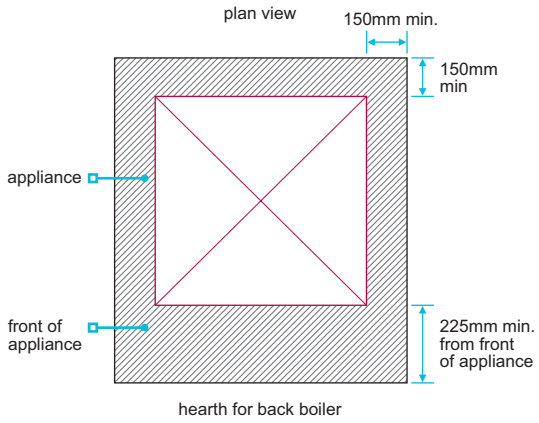
Hearths and recesses for solid fuel effect appliances should be:

- in accordance with BS 5871
- in accordance with the requirements for solid fuel appliances (see Clause 6.8.3), or
- where the appliance has been tested by an approved authority, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Back boilers

Hearths for back boilers should be constructed of solid non-combustible materials, a minimum of:

- 125mm thick, or
- 25mm thick and placed on non-combustible supports which are a minimum of 25mm high.



Other gas appliances

Hearths for other types of appliance should be constructed of non-combustible materials which:

- are a minimum of 12mm thick
- comply with the plan dimensions for back boilers.

In some cases, the provision of a hearth is not required, eg where the flame or incandescent material is at least 225mm above the floor.

For all forms of gas appliances the hearths should be marked at the edges to:

- provide a warning to the home owner
- discourage combustible floor finishes, such as carpet, from being laid too close to the appliance (this can be achieved by introducing a change in level).

6.8.9 Gas – combustion air

Installations shall be provided with an adequate supply of combustion air.

Table 3: Combustion air to gas appliances

	Gas[1] up to 70kW net input
England, Wales and the Isle of Man	If design air permeability is less than 5.0m³/h/m², then 500mm²/kW of the appliance is the rated (net) input. If design air is permeability greater than 5.0m³/h/m²), then 500mm²/kW of the appliance is the rated input (net) over 7kW
Scotland	As BS 5440-2 (as England and Wales)
Northern Ireland	Up to 8kW rating, 450mm². Over 8kw, add 450mm² for each kW above 8kW

Notes

1 Decorative fuel effect gas appliances should have a provision for combustion air complying with the relevant part of BS 5871 and relevant Building Regulations. (Generally, a minimum of 10,000mm² of purpose-provided ventilation is required. Air vents should be direct to the external air or to an adjacent room or internal space, which has an air vent or vents to the external air of at least the same free area. Air vents should have an aperture dimension no smaller than 5mm).

6.8.10 Gas – flue pipes

Flue pipes shall safely connect an appliance to a chimney, or a flue to a terminal. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) size, direction and jointing

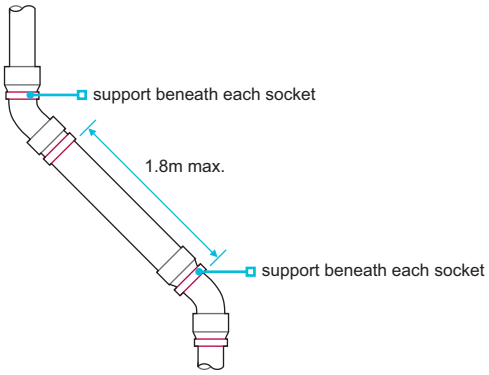
b) separation from combustible materials.

Size, direction and jointing

Gas flue pipes should:

- not have adjustable draught control
- have a free area which is at least the same size as the outlet of the appliance
- not be horizontal (does not apply to balanced flues)
- be vertical where possible (where this is not possible, pipes should not be more than 45° from vertical)
- be fixed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- be fixed socket up and correctly aligned
- where the pipes are long, have support directly below each socket, with a maximum spacing of 1.8m.

When connecting flue pipes to flue blocks and ridge terminals, purpose-made connections should be used.



flue pipe serving a gas appliance

Separation from combustible materials

Single wall flue pipes should be separated from combustible materials by:

- a minimum of 25mm
- a non-combustible casing material with at least half the fire resistance of the separating wall or floor, where they pass through a compartment wall or compartment floor, or
- a non-combustible sleeve with a minimum 25mm air space around the pipe, where it passes through a wall, floor or roof.

Where double-walled pipes are used, the 25mm separation distance may be measured from the outside of the inner pipe.

6.8.11 Gas – chimneys

Chimneys shall incorporate flues capable of safely conducting products of combustion from an appliance to the external air. The structure shall be capable of supporting the flue and providing adequate protection to adjacent materials. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) flues and flue liners

b) chimneys.

Flues and flue liners

Flue blocks for use with gas appliances should comply with BS EN 1858 (Concrete) or BS EN 1806 (Clay).

Table 4: Gas flue sizes

	Serving	Minimum flue size
Non fan-assisted individually flued gas burning appliances up to 70kW input, excluding balanced flue	Gas fire	Either: • a circular flue with a minimum 12000mm^2 cross-sectional area (125mm diameter), or • a rectangular flue with a minimum 16,500mm^2 cross-sectional area and a minimum dimension of 90mm.
	Any other	• at least the cross-sectional area of the outlet from the appliance.
Inset live or decorative gas fuel effect appliances	Open fire within a fireplace opening up to 500mm x 550mm	• either a circular or rectangular flue with a minimum dimension of 175mm.

Rigid flue liners should comply with BS EN 1856 or be as described in Clause 6.8.6. Flexible flue liners are not acceptable in a new build.

Chimneys

Chimneys for gas appliances must not incorporate an adjustable draught control.

Masonry chimneys

Flues within masonry chimneys should be in accordance with the requirements relevant to flues for solid fuel appliances (see Clause 6.8.6b).

Brickwork or blockwork chimneys for gas appliances should, at minimum, have the same level of fire resistance as each compartment wall or floor which it forms part of, or passes through. The compartment wall may form the chimney wall where it is a masonry material.

Terminals to masonry chimneys should:

- where proprietary, comply with BS EN 1856, BS EN 1858 and the appliance manufacturer's recommendations
- where proprietary products are not used, have a free opening area a minimum of 2x the area of the flue; there should be openings (6-25mm in diameter) distributed uniformly around the terminal or on two opposite faces.

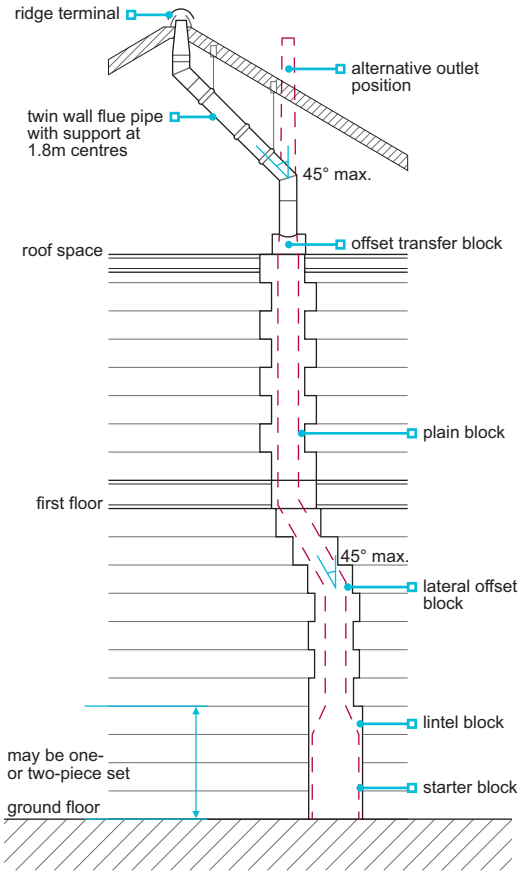
Flue block chimneys

Flue block chimneys can only be used for certain types of gas appliances and should be:

- compliant with BS EN 1858 or BS EN 1806 with a minimum performance class of FB4 N2
- constructed using units suitable for the appliance
- constructed, jointed and weatherproofed in accordance with the design and the manufacturer's instructions
- correctly bonded to the flanking masonry
- clean and sealed
- checked for suitability, before connecting any appliance.

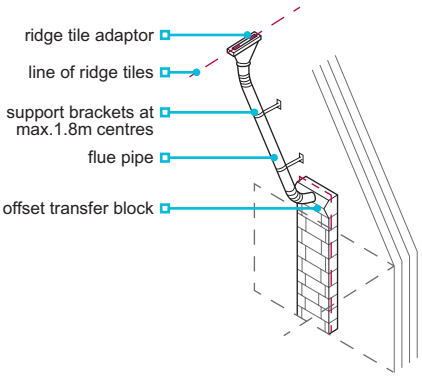
Connections between flue blocks and ridge terminals should be made:

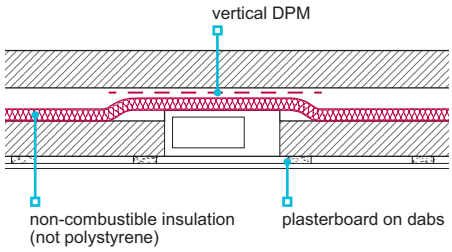
- in accordance with the design
- using the correct fittings and supports as specified by the manufacturers of the flue blocks, flue pipe and ridge terminal.



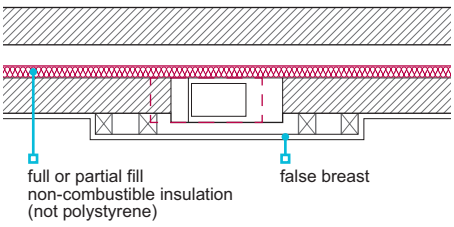
Gas flue blocks are at least 140mm wide. Where this is wider than the wall leaf:

- the extra thickness should be incorporated by increasing the overall width of the cavity
- the flue block should be installed flush with the inside of the cavity and project into the room as a false chimney breast, or
- where the cavity is reduced, the flue block should be protected by a vertical DPM supported by a layer of non-combustible insulation, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.





cavity wall with insulation and vertical DPM



Flue blocks should not be:

- built into separating walls unless it can be shown that the wall has adequate sound resistance
- plastered; a plasterboard lining with an air space or non-combustible insulation behind it should be provided (insulated dry lining may be unsuitable in this situation unless separated from the flue block).

Factory-made insulated chimneys

Factory-made insulated chimneys should:

- be assembled, erected, anchored and protected in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions
- comply with BS EN 1856 and be installed in accordance with BS 6461, BS EN 15287-1 or BS 5440.

6.8.12 Gas – outlets and terminals

Outlets and terminals shall be adequately separated from combustible material and other parts of the home, and prevent the ingress of damp.

Relevant standards for gas appliances, chimneys, and flue terminals

BS 5440 pt1	Flues.
AD J	Combustion appliances and fuel storage.
IGE/UP/7	Gas installation in timber framed and light steel framed buildings.

Table 5: Minimum separation distances for gas outlets (mm)

Location		Balanced flue			Open flue	
		Natural draught		Fanned draught	Natural draught	Fanned draught
A	Below an opening[1]	Appliance rated heat input (net)		300	[3]	300
		0-7kW >7-14kW >14-32kW >32-70kW	300 600 1500 2000			
B	Above an opening[1]	0-32kW >32-70kW	300 600	300	[3]	300
C	Horizontally to an opening[1]	0-7kW >7-14kW >14-70kW	300 400 600	300	[3]	300
D	Below gutters, soil pipes or drain pipes	300		75	[3]	75
E	Below eaves	300		200	[3]	200
F	Below a balcony or car port roof	600		200	[3]	200
G	From a vertical drainpipe or soil pipe	300		150[4]	[3]	150
H	From an internal or external corner, or to a boundary alongside the terminal[2]	600		300	[3]	200
I	Above ground, roof or balcony level	300		300	[3]	300
J	From a surface or a boundary facing the terminal[2]	600		600	[3]	600
K	From a terminal facing the terminal	600		1200	[3]	1200
L	From an opening in the car port into the building	1200		1200	[3]	1200
M	Vertically from a terminal on the same wall	1500		1500	[3]	1500
N	Horizontally from a terminal on the same wall	300		300	[3]	300
P	From a structure on the roof	N/A		N/A	1500 (for a ridge terminal) 2000 (for any other terminal, as given in BS 5440-1)	N/A
Q	Above the highest point of intersection with the roof	N/A		Site in accordance with manufacturer's instructions	Site in accordance with BS 5440-1	150

Notes

1 An opening here means an openable element, such as an openable window, or a fixed opening, such as an air vent. However, in addition, the outlet should not be nearer than 150mm (fanned draught) or 300mm (natural draught) to an opening into the building fabric formed for the purpose of accommodating a built-in element, such as a window frame.

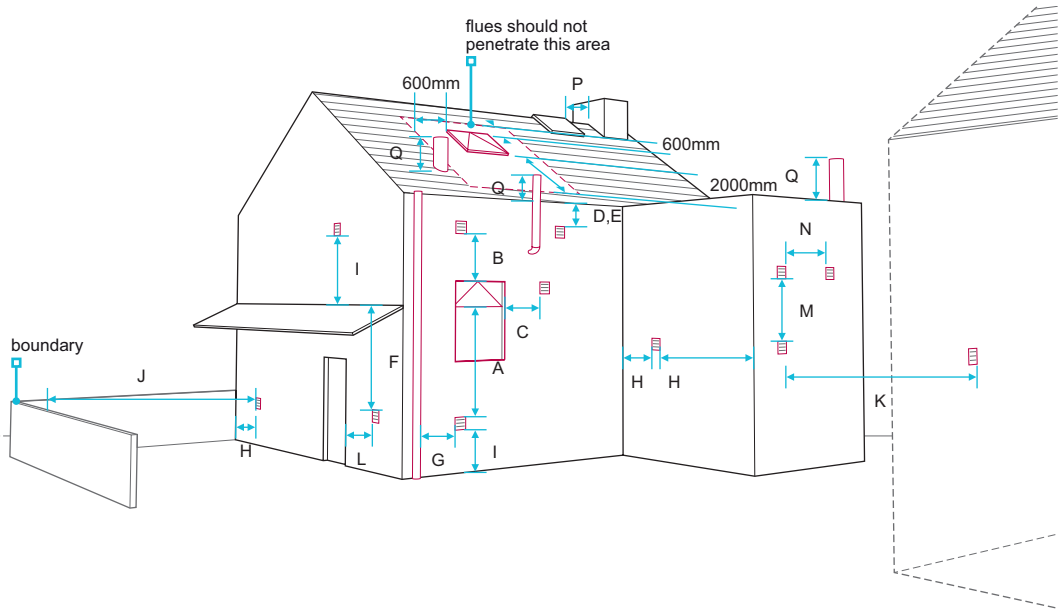
2 Boundary as defined in paragraph 0.4. of Approved Document J: smaller separations to the boundary may be acceptable for appliances that have been shown to operate safely with such separations from surfaces adjacent to, or opposite, the flue outlet.

3 Should not be used.

4 This dimension may be reduced to 75mm for appliances of up to 5kW input (net).

Where a flue outlet is not serving a balanced flue appliance, it should be:

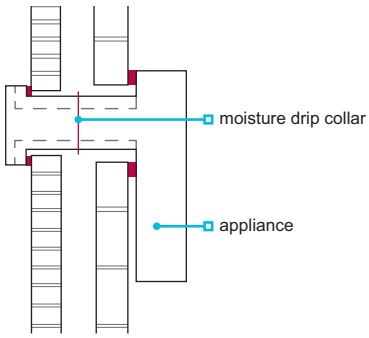
- situated at roof level, so that air can pass freely across it at all times
- a minimum of 600mm from openings
- fitted with a flue terminal where the flue diameter is less than 170mm (larger diameter flues should be fitted with a terminal where required by Building Regulations).



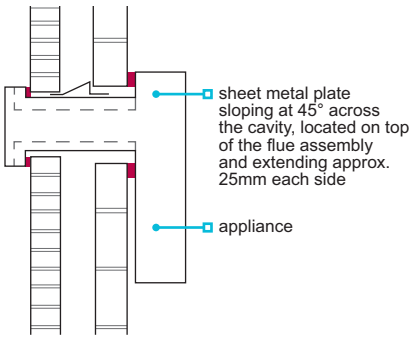
Precautions should be taken, where appropriate, to prevent damp penetration in accordance with the requirements for resistance to frost attack and weathering for solid fuel appliances (see Clause 6.8.6).

All flues which bridge the cavity of an external wall should have a means of preventing moisture crossing the cavity, eg a moisture drip collar set in the centre of the cavity. For timber frame construction the guidance in IGE/UP/7 should be adopted in relation to non combustible sleeving and to maintain the integrity of the vapour control layer.

Where cavity trays and weepholes are used they should be in line with chapter 6.1.



circular flues



rectangular flues

6.8.13 Oil – fireplaces and hearths

Fireplaces and hearths shall safely accommodate the fire or appliance and be suitably separated from combustible materials.

Where the temperature of the hearth below the appliance is:

- likely to exceed 100°C, or the temperature is not known, precautions should be in accordance with the requirements for hearths for solid fuel appliances (see Clause 6.8.3).
- unlikely to exceed 100°C, the appliance may stand on a rigid, non-combustible imperforate sheet of material without a constructional hearth.

Where appliances are likely to have back or side temperatures exceeding 100°C, hearths and shielding should be in accordance with the requirements for gas appliances (see Clause 6.8.8).

6.8.14 Oil – combustion air

Installations shall be provided with an adequate supply of combustion air.

Table 6: Combustion air to oil appliances

	Oil up to 45kW output
England, Wales and the Isle of Man	550mm²/kW rating for an appliance in a room or space
Scotland	
Northern Ireland	Up to 6kW rating, 550mm². Over 6kW, add 550mm² for each kW above 6kW

6.8.15 Oil – flue pipes

Flue pipes shall safely connect an appliance to a chimney.

Flue pipes should:

- have a free area which is at least the same size as the outlet of the appliance
- be vertical where possible, or no more than 45° from vertical; a horizontal section, less than 150mm, long may be used to connect a back outlet appliance to a flue.

6.8.16 Oil – chimneys

Chimneys shall incorporate flues capable of safely conducting products of combustion from an open fire or other appliance to the external air. The structure shall be capable of supporting the flue lining and shall provide adequate protection to adjacent materials. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) stability, size and direction
b) separation from adjacent spaces, materials and combustible materials
c) flue liners
d) resistance to frost/chemical attack
e) resistance to weather.

Stability, size and direction

Flue pipes should:

- have a free area which is at least the same size as the outlet of the appliance
- where possible, be vertical (where this cannot be achieved, there should be no more than two bends, which should not be more than 45° from vertical).

Factory-made insulated chimneys should:

- be designed in accordance with BS EN 1856 and BS EN 1859 and installed in accordance with BS EN 15287, or be assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3
- have a minimum operating life of 30 years
- where they are part of a component system, comply with BS EN 1856 and installed in accordance with BS 5440.

Separation from adjacent spaces, materials and combustible materials

Table 7: Protecting buildings from hot flues for flue gas temperatures not more than 250°C

Flue within:	Protection measures
Connecting flue pipe	Flues should be a minimum of 25mm from any combustible material. This is measured from the outer surface of the flue wall and the inner wall of multi-walled products.
Factory-made chimney complying with BS EN 1856	Where flues pass through a combustible wall, floor or roof (other than a compartment wall, floor or roof) separation can be achieved through the use of a non-combustible sleeve around the flue pipe or chimney with a 25mm air space to the relevant flue wall. The air space could be wholly, or partially, filled with non-combustible insulating material.
Factory-made chimney complying with: BS EN 1856	Refer to appropriate British Standards and manufacturers' recommendations.
Masonry chimney	Provide a minimum of 25mm of masonry between flues and any combustible material.
Flue block chimney	Provide flue block walls a minimum of 25mm thick.
Flue assemblies for roomed-sealed appliances	Flues passing through combustible walls should be surrounded by a minimum of 50mm insulating material. Provide a minimum clearance of 50mm from the edge of the flue outlet to any combustible wall cladding.

Flue liners

As for gas flue pipes where the flue gases are unlikely to exceed a temperature of 250°C (see Clause 6.8.10). As for solid fuel flue pipes where the flue gases are likely to exceed a temperature of 250°C or the temperature is not known (see Clause 6.8.5).

Flexible flue liners are not acceptable for new build.

Resistance to frost/chemical attack

Resistance to frost attack as for solid fuel (see Clause 6.8.6).

Resistance to weather

Resistance to weather as for solid fuel (see Clause 6.8.6).

6.8.17 Oil – outlets and terminals

Outlets and terminals shall be adequately separated from combustible material and other parts of the home.

Balanced flue terminals should be positioned to allow free intake of air to the appliance.

Where terminals are of masonry construction, they should be in accordance with the requirements for solid fuel appliances (see Clause 6.8.7b), otherwise they should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Table 8: Minimum separation distances for oil terminals

	Location of outlet[1]	Appliance with pressure jet burner (mm)	Appliance with vaporising burner (mm)
A	Below an opening[2 & 3]	600	Should not be used
B	Horizontally to an opening[2 & 3]	600	
C	Below a plastic/painted gutter, drainage pipe or eaves, where combustible material protected[4]	75	
D	Below a balcony or a plastic/painted gutter, drainage pipe or eaves without protection to combustible material	600	
E	From vertical sanitary pipework	300	
F	From an external or internal corner, or from a surface or boundary alongside the terminal	300	
G	Above ground or balcony level	300	
H	From a surface or boundary facing the terminal	600	
J	From a terminal facing the terminal	1200	
K	Vertically from a terminal on the same wall	1500	
L	Horizontally from a terminal on the same wall	750	
M	Above the highest point of an intersection with the roof	600[6]	1000[5]
N	From a vertical structure to the side of the terminal	750[6]	2300
O	Above a vertical structure which is less than 750mm (pressure jet burner) or 2,300mm (vaporising burner) horizontally from the side of the terminal	600[6]	1000[5]
P	From a ridge terminal to a vertical structure on the roof	1500	Should not be used

Notes

1 Terminals should only be positioned on walls where appliances have been approved for such configurations when tested in accordance with BS EN 303-1 or OFTEC standards OFS A100 or OFS A101.

2 An opening means an openable element, such as an openable window, or a permanently open air vent.

3 Not withstanding the dimensions above, a terminal should be at least 300mm from combustible material, eg a window frame.

4 To provide protection to combustible material, fit a heat shield at least 750mm wide.

5 Where a terminal is used with a vaporising burner, the terminal should be at least 2.3m horizontally from the roof.

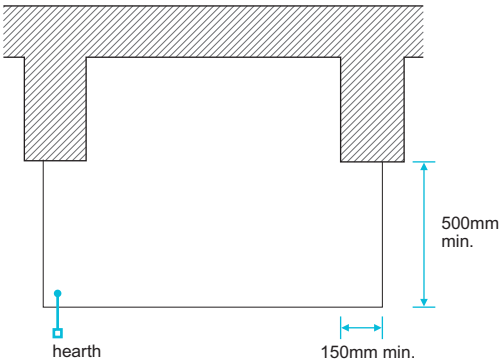
6 Outlets for vertical balanced flues in locations M, N and O should be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

6.8.18 All – fireplaces and hearths

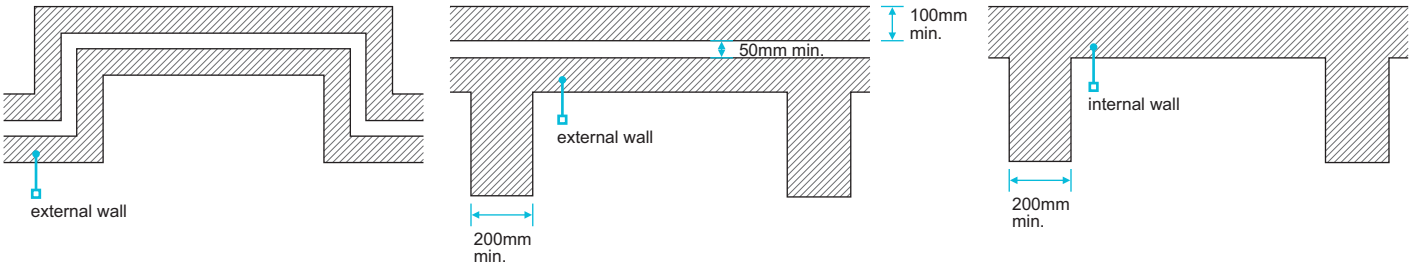
Fireplaces and hearths shall safely accommodate the appliances for which they are designed.

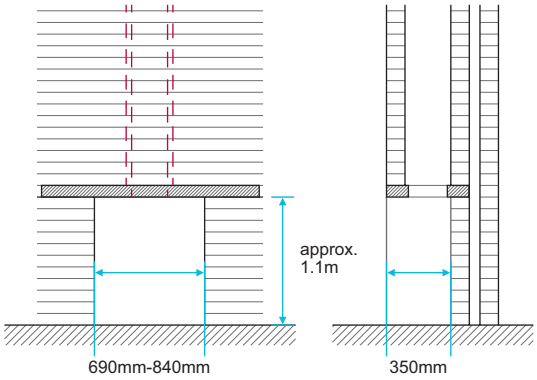
Combustible material should not be placed under a constructional hearth unless it is:

- to support the edges of the hearth
- at least 250mm from the material to the top of the hearth, or
- separated from the underside of the hearth by an air space of at least 50mm.

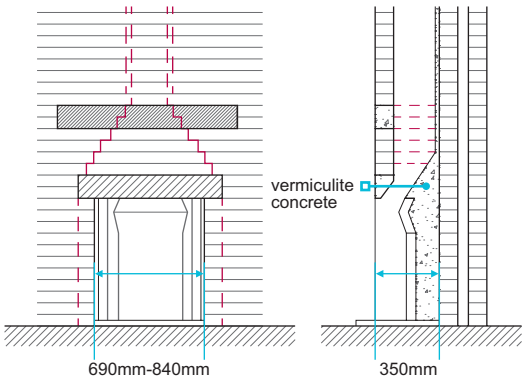


Fireplace recesses should be constructed of solid non-combustible material as follows (dimensions in the diagrams are based on a 125mm concrete hearth below an open fire). The space between a fire back and masonry forming the recess should be filled with vermiculite concrete (1:4, lime:vermiculite with water).





appliance recess with raft lintel:
suitable for free-standing room heater



fire place recess for inset open fire (without boiler unit)

6.8.19 All – fireplace surrounds

Fireplace surrounds and their fixings shall be designed, specified and installed to ensure adequate in-service performance and durability.

The fixing and support should safely accommodate the proposed type of fireplace surround (which could be manufactured in one or a number of pieces), taking into account its size and weight. The walls and floors of the building should safely accommodate the additional load of the proposed fireplace surround.

Fireplace surrounds should be installed by competent operatives, strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and fixing specification, and fixed to the structure using mechanical fixings, giving full consideration to:

- the type of material used to manufacture the surround
- the configuration of the surround
- the size and weight of the surround
- the potential for overturning of the surround or parts thereof
- the type of supporting walls and floors, including the structure (eg framed or solid structure) and its finish (eg wallboard or wet finish)
- the type, material, number and location of fixings.

Fixings should be of durable material and be appropriate for the type of surround and the supporting wall or floor to which the surround is to be fixed. Fixings should generally be of stainless steel to BS EN ISO 3506 'Mechanical properties of corrosion-resistant stainless steel fasteners' and be specified to provide suitable strength and durability. Materials that comply with recognised standards which provide equal or better performance are also acceptable.

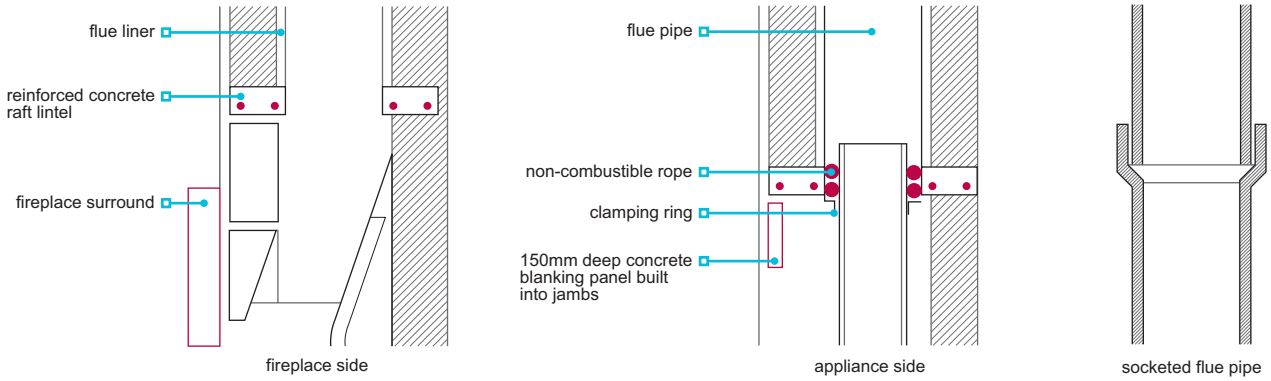
Methods that rely solely on adhesive for fixing fireplace surrounds to the structure are not acceptable.

More information on the installation of all types of natural and artificial stone fireplace surrounds can be found in the Stone Federation Great Britain 'Fireplace Surrounds' data sheet (**www.stonefed.org.uk**).

6.8.20 All – flue pipes

Flue pipes and terminals shall be suitable for their purpose and provide unrestricted passage for combustion gases between the fireplace, or appliance, and the outlet.

The connection between a fireplace, or appliance, and the flue should be correctly constructed.



Where the bottom of the flue is not directly over an appliance, it should be provided with a means of access for cleaning and inspection.

Adjustable flue draught control units are not permitted where gas burning appliances are installed. Where adjustable throat units are specified, they should be fitted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Flue pipes should be jointed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, fixed socket up and correctly aligned.

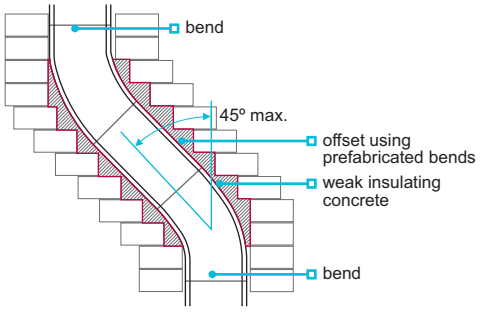
Table 9: Acceptable standards for flue pipes

Flue material	Guidance
Flue pipes for gas appliances	BS EN 1856
Cast iron flue pipes	BS EN 1856
Mild steel flue pipes	BS 1449 (minimum 3mm wall thickness)
Stainless steel flue pipes	BS EN 10088 (minimum 1mm thick) and be one of the following grades: 1.4401, 1.4404, 1.4432 or 1.4436
Vitreous enamelled flue pipes	BS EN 1856, low carbon steel coated internally and externally with acid-resisting enamel

6.8.21 All – flue liners

Flue liners shall be unaffected by flue gases and suitable for their purpose.

To produce a suitable flue path, appropriate components should be selected to keep cutting and joints to a minimum. At changes in direction, including bends, offsets and tees, purpose-made components should be used.



chimney with flue liner suitable for solid fuel

Flue liners should be:

- clay or purpose-made concrete, as specified in the design
- handled carefully to prevent chipping or cracking
- installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the design
- sealed at their joint with the starter block or throat unit (no cavity should be formed between the linings and the starter elements)
- placed with the sockets or rebate ends facing up.

Liners suitable for solid fuel appliances, and generally suitable for other fuels, include liners whose performance is at least equal to the designation T450 N2 S D 3, as described in BS EN 1443, such as:

- clay flue liners with rebates or sockets for jointing meeting the requirements for class A1 N2 or class A1 N1 as described in BS EN 1457
- concrete flue liners meeting the requirements for the classification type A1, type A2, type B1 or type B2 as described in prEN 1857(e18) January 2001, or
- other products that are independently assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Alternatively, imperforate clay pipes with sockets for jointing as described in BS 65:1991 are acceptable.

Joints should be made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, generally using:

- fire cement, or
- refractory mortar.

Joints should be fully filled, and surplus material cleared from the inside of each joint as the flue is built.

Spaces between the lining and the surrounding masonry should be:

- filled with weak insulating concrete, or
- in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, with the specified material providing adequate protection.

Ordinary concrete should not be used to fill the space between the lining and the surrounding masonry.

Suitable mixtures for weak insulating concrete include:

- one part ordinary Portland cement to 20 parts suitable lightweight expanded clay aggregate, minimally wetted
- one part ordinary Portland cement to six parts vermiculite, or
- one part ordinary Portland cement to 10 parts perlite.

6.8.22 All – flues

Flues shall be suitable for their purpose and adequately separated from combustible materials.

Flues should be:

- suitable for the type and size of appliance which they serve
- constructed in accordance with the design and the manufacturer's recommendations
- tested in accordance with this chapter.

Combustible materials close to any brickwork or blockwork chimney should be:

- 200mm minimum from a flue
- 40mm from the face of the chimney, in Scotland, and
- metal fixings in contact with combustible materials should be a minimum of 50mm from the flue.

This does not apply to a floorboard, skirting, dado or picture rail, mantel shelf or architrave.

Twin wall flue systems should comply with:

- BS EN 1856, or
- be assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

6.8.23 All – chimneys

Chimneys shall provide fire protective casing for flues, and shall be capable of adequately supporting the flue liner, while resisting damp penetration and the products of combustion. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) construction of chimneys
b) typical construction details
c) damp penetration and weatherproofing
d) coring and drying.

Construction of chimneys

Masonry chimneys should be properly bonded to, or supported by, the adjoining walls of the building.

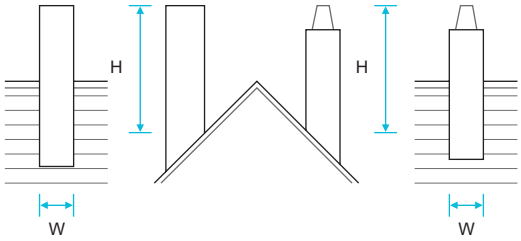
Foundations to a chimney should:

- be the same depth as adjacent wall foundations
- be designed to avoid uneven settlement

Height (H) of an unrestrained chimney should:

- not exceed 4.5x the smallest dimension on plan of the chimney (W) (where the density of the masonry is a minimum of 1500kg/m^3), or
- be designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

- where the chimney forms part of the wall, be a minimum of 100mm wider than the chimney base.



Chimneys which:

- are of block, brick or stone should have a minimum wall thickness of 100mm, excluding the lining thickness
- are built in a cavity separating wall should form two leaves, each a minimum of 100mm, between the flue and adjoining building
- form part of a compartment wall, and are not back to back with an adjacent chimney, should have a minimum wall thickness of 200mm separating it from the other building or home.

Factory-made insulated chimneys should be assembled, erected, anchored and protected in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Masonry for chimneys:

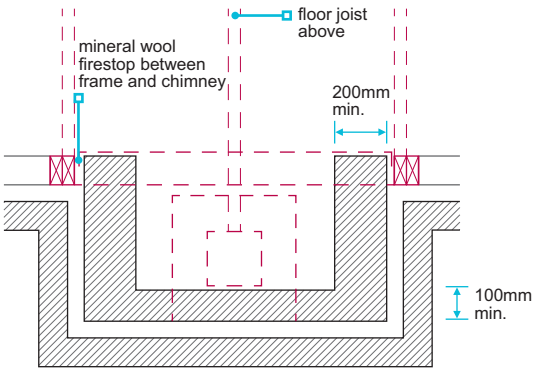
- below roof level may be constructed using the same bricks and mortar as used for the general brickwork
- constructed with hollow or cellular blocks should be suitable for the construction of chimneys and filled with concrete as the work proceeds
- should be frost resistant above the roof unless protected by a capping projecting by a minimum of 50mm (in Scotland, frost-resistant bricks should be used for all facing brickwork).

Connections between flue blocks and ridge terminals should be made:

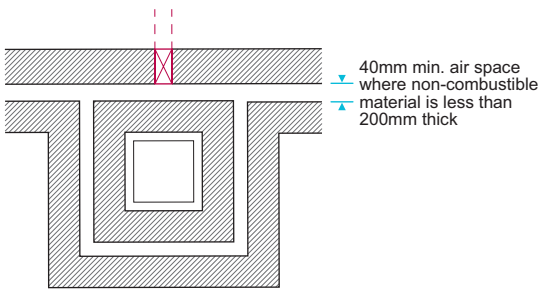
- as detailed in the design
- using the correct fittings and supports as specified by the manufacturers of the flue blocks, flue pipe and ridge terminal.

Typical construction details

External fireplace recess and chimney

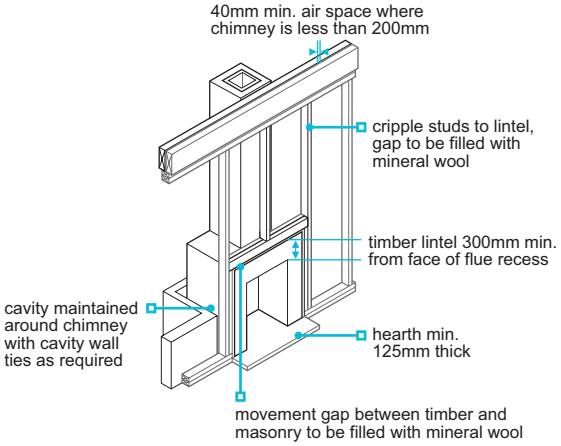


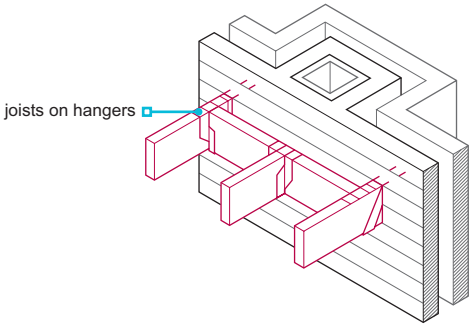
plan of recess



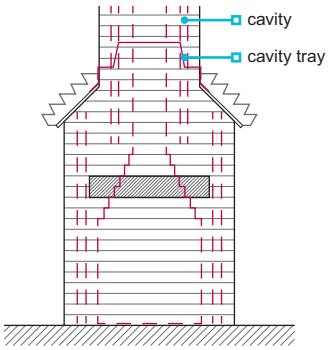
plan of chimney at upper floor level

Timber chimney frame construction

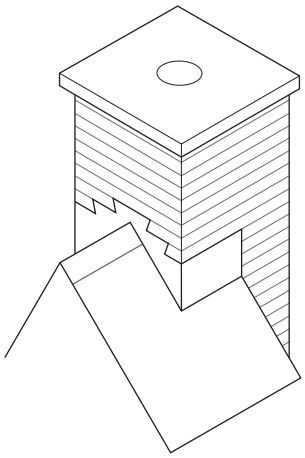


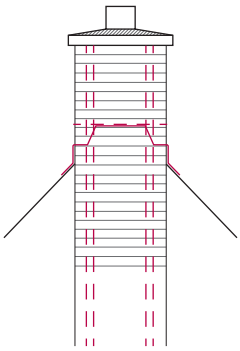


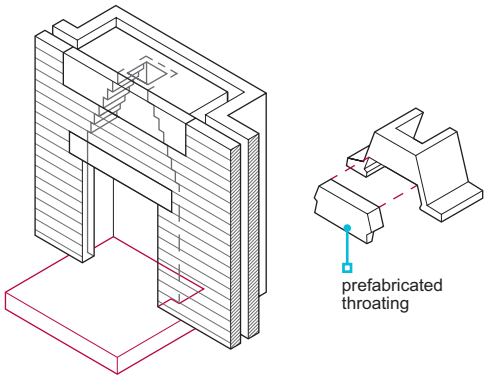
In Scotland, joists, etc. should be min. 200mm from the inner surface of the flue; brickwork or blockwork in chimney construction should be min. 100mm thick with a min. density of 1 600 kg/m^3; aircrete blocks should be min. 150mm thick.



External chimney breast with masonry inner leaf







Other alternatives may be suitable, provided they meet the appropriate performance standards.

Damp penetration and weatherproofing

Where chimneys exit close to the ridge of a pitched roof, occasional damp penetration may occur below roof level. In this situation:

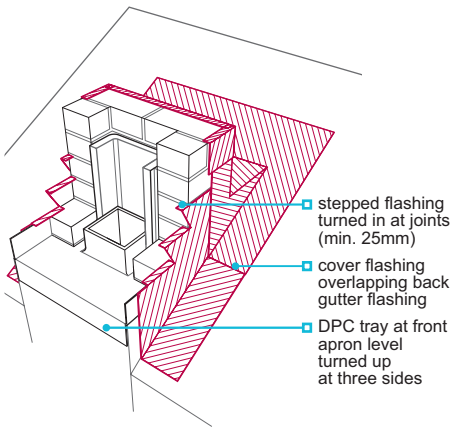
- the roof space should be well ventilated
- any dampness penetrating downwards should not reach the living areas.

Where chimneys exit close to the eaves of a pitched roof or through a flat roof, trays and flashings should be installed in the chimney so that all damp penetration is prevented.

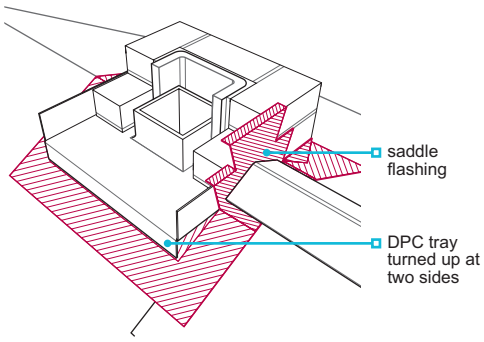
DPCs, flashings and gutters should be provided at the intersection point of the chimney with the surface of the roof through which the chimney passes. DPCs to the main walls should be carried through the base of chimneys.

Flashings should be made from compatible non-ferrous metal. Lead trays should be bitumen coated where in contact with cement.

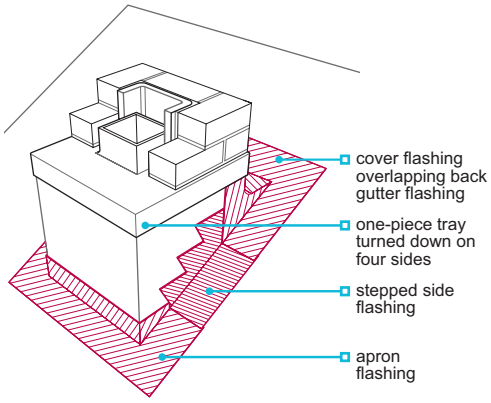
In areas of severe and very severe exposure, the following details should be used. In lower exposure zones, the tray upturn may be on the outside of the flue liner. All other details are the same.



chimney on outside wall



chimney stack at ridge



combined with DPC tray and flashing

Coring and drying

Where a core (eg a sack full of loose straw, or similar) is used to prevent mortar dropping into the flue liner during construction, the builder should ensure that it is removed on completion of the chimney.

A chimney should be allowed to dry naturally for a minimum period of 14 days before use.

6.8.24 Masonry

Masonry shall be capable of supporting intended loads and have appropriate resistance to the adverse effects of frost and sulfates.

Masonry, including bricks, blocks, stone for masonry and reconstructed stone, should:

- be in accordance with BS 6461 or BS EN 15287-1 and BS EN 771
- where clay bricks are used in external chimney stacks, be of durability rating F2,S1 (as described in BS EN 771) or protected by a projecting capping
- where blocks are used, have a minimum block density of 1500 kg/m^3 unless designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

In Scotland:

- frost-resistant bricks should be used for all external facing brickwork
- where 100mm blocks are used for chimney construction, they should have a minimum density of 1,500 kg/m^3.

6.8.25 Mortar

Also see: Chapter 6.1

Mortar shall be batched and mixed to achieve adequate strength and durability.

Mortar should be in accordance with Chapter 6.1 ‘External masonry walls’, and include sulfate-resisting cement where flue gases are liable to affect the masonry, eg above roof level.

6.8.26 DPC

Materials for damp proofing shall adequately resist the passage of moisture into the building.

The following are acceptable for use as DPCs:

- bitumen to BS 6398
- polyethylene to BS 6515 (not to be used in the chimney stack above roof level)
- proprietary materials assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

6.8.27 Flashings

Flashings and trays shall be capable of adequately resisting the entry of moisture into the building.

Suitable materials for flashings and trays include:

- milled sheet lead (minimum code 4) to BS EN 12588
- zinc alloy complying to BS EN 988 and 0.6mm thick
- proprietary materials assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

6.8.28 Terminals

Flue terminals shall be suitable for their purpose and assist the functioning of the flue. Issues to be taken into account include:

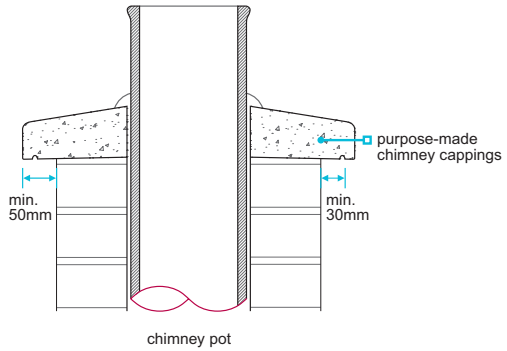
a) draught improvement **b) chimney capping.**

Relevant standards for flue terminals

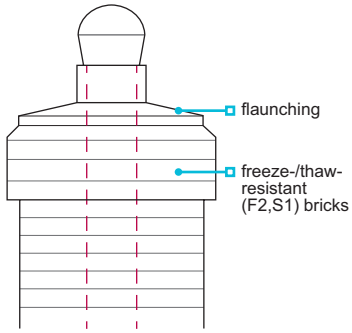
BS EN 13502	'Chimneys. Requirements and test methods for clay/ceramic flue terminals'.
BS EN 1858	'Chimneys. Components. Concrete flue blocks.'
BS EN 1856	'Chimneys. Requirements for metal chimneys'.

Terminals should be:

- purpose-made or formed by extending the flue lining a minimum of 20mm above the head of the chimney
- embedded a minimum of 125mm into the chimney, excluding any flaunching, or 0.25x the length of the terminal, whichever is the greater
- the same cross-sectional area as the flue (solid fuel has a minimum requirement of a 200mm diameter).



chimney pot



chimney details with brick capping

The terminal of a masonry flue should be jointed to the flue lining with cement mortar to form a seal.

Draught improvement

Where downdraughts may occur, terminals designed to increase updraught should be fitted. However, a terminal will not overcome problems caused by high pressure zones. Where relevant, the Solid Fuel Association or other authoritative body should be consulted.

Chimney capping

Where a chimney is to be capped:

- a single unjointed concrete or stone capping should be used
- it should project and be throated to cast water away from the face of the chimney
- the slab should project 50mm beyond the sides of the chimney, and the withes between flues should be carried to the underside of the slab.

Decorative brick cappings should be carefully constructed to avoid rain penetration and frost damage. The use of frost-resistant bricks may be required.

In Scotland, bricks used for facing brickwork should be frost-resistant.

6.8.29 Flue testing

Installations shall be tested before use.

Flues should be checked during construction to ensure:

- there are no obstructions in the flue
- mortar or other blockages are removed
- when the flue is complete, a visual check should be made and obstructions cleared.

Coring ball test for solid fuel appliances

When a visual test cannot be conducted, or is inconclusive, the coring ball test should be conducted as follows:

- a suitable concrete or metal ball should be attached to a strong cord or rope
- the ball should be slowly lowered from the flue outlet to the bottom of the flue (the fireplace recess or the appliance connection)
- where a blockage or obstruction is found, it must be removed and the test repeated until the flue is completely clear of obstruction.

Smoke test for solid fuel appliances

This test is designed to show that a flue draws adequately and that there are no leaks between the appliance and the terminal. It must be conducted when neither the flue to be tested or adjacent flues are in use. The test should be conducted as follows:

- the flue should be warmed for 10 minutes with a heat source such as a blow lamp. Where an appliance is fitted, all doors, including flue access doors, should be closed.
- two purpose-made smoke pellets should be placed in the appliance firebox or in the bottom of the flue and ignited, then, closed or sealed off and the smoke allowed to rise.
- when smoke appears at the top of the flue, the outlet should be sealed with a blow-up rubber ball or other airtight closing system
- the whole structure forming the flue should be inspected externally for smoke leakage. This should include the top of cavity walls and any other possible smoke paths, even those terminating some distance from the flue
- the test should be continued for a minimum of five minutes.

Flues for gas appliances

For gas appliances, more sophisticated flue tests may be required and should be conducted by the appliance installer.

Flues for oil appliances

Flues for oil fired appliances should be tested as required by the appliance manufacturer.

6.8.30 Further information

- *Approved Document J - Combustion appliances and fuel storage systems.*
- *Building Standards (Scotland) Regulations*
- *Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) Technical Booklet L 'Combustion appliances and fuel storage systems'*
- *Institution of Gas Engineers publications: 'Guide for gas installation in timber framed housing' and 'Specification for flues for Class II appliances in timber framed housing'.*

Chapter

6.9

Curtain walling and cladding

This chapter gives guidance on meeting the Technical Requirements for curtain walling and cladding.

Introduction

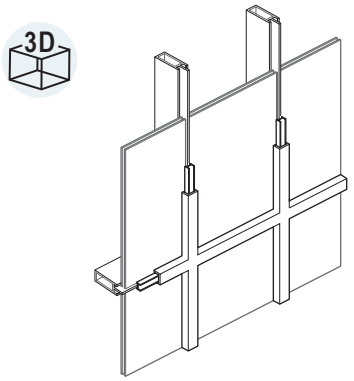
This chapter gives guidance on the forms of curtain walling and cladding acceptable to NHBC. Curtain walling and cladding systems that do not conform to the descriptions in this chapter will not generally be acceptable. Conservatories are not covered by this chapter.

Guidance on the use of other types of cladding, including brickwork, rendered masonry, vertical tile and slate cladding and timber cladding, is given in Chapter 6.1 'External masonry walls' and Chapter 6.2 'External timber framed walls'.

Curtain walling

Comprising a prefabricated or site assembled support framework with infill panels and/or wall sections with glazing systems which include:

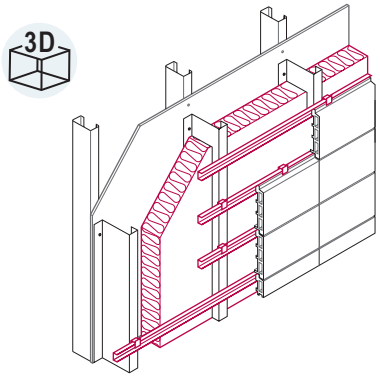
- structural silicone glazing
- mechanically fixed structural glazing
- slope glazing, excluding patent glazing
- coupled door and window frame assemblies (including spandrel panels) which are one storey or more in height, or not contained between a floor and ceiling.



Rainscreen cladding

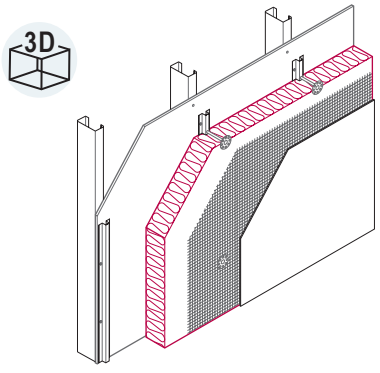
Comprising:

- an outer skin of panels which have unsealed, open, baffled or labyrinth (rebated) joints
- a minimum 50mm pressure equalised air gap between the insulation and the panels
- an insulated and airtight backing wall.



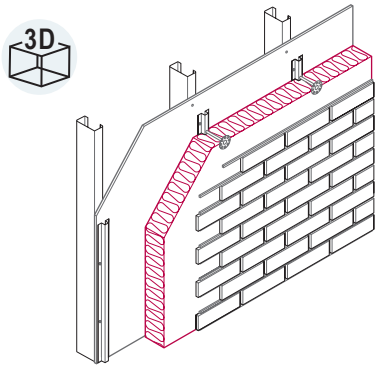
Insulated render

Comprising insulated render systems fixed to a backing wall.



Brick slip cladding

Comprising brick slip cladding fixed to a backing wall.



Stone and precast concrete cladding

Stone and precast units should be designed as curtain walling or rainscreen cladding in accordance with this chapter.

Definitions for this chapter

Air barrier	A continuous layer that limits air leakage through the backing wall
Air cushion	Balancing external and internal air pressure to create a cushion within the air gap
Air gap	The space between the back of the cladding panels and the external face of the insulation in a rainscreen system
Backing wall	A framed or masonry wall to which the system is fixed
Brick slip cladding system	A brick slip system fixed to masonry or framed backing walls, generally supported by a proprietary carrier
Cavity	The space between the cladding system and the backing wall. The cavity should be adequately drained, and ventilated where required
Cladding panels	The outer units of a rainscreen cladding system which provide some protection
Compartmentation	The provision of baffles and cavity closers to form compartments within the air gap of a rainscreen cladding system to equalise pressure
Curtain walling	A form of enclosure that supports no load other than its own weight and the environmental forces that act upon it, eg wind, water and solar.
Curtain walling system	The vertical building enclosure system, including frames, brackets, fixings, flashings, gutters, copings, glass, panels, gaskets and sealant, that forms the assembly
CWCT	The Centre for Window and Cladding Technology at Bath University
CWCT Standard	The current Centre for Window and Cladding Technology Standard for systemised building envelopes
Design life	The period for which materials, products and systems should be designed to be durable, assuming routine inspection and maintenance
DPC/DPM	Prevents the passage of moisture. In curtain walling terminology, a DPC is often referred to as a DPM
Façade	The external facing part of the building envelope.
Fire and smoke stopping	Prevention of the transmission of fire and smoke through voids or cavities
Fixing	Componentry used to attach or secure other components, eg curtain walling or a cladding system, to the structure
Gasket	A compressible material used to form an airtight and/or watertight seal
In-service performance	The manner or quality of functioning of a material, product or system
Insulated render system	A cladding system applied externally to an insulating layer which is fixed to a backing wall
Interstitial condensation	Condensation caused by vapour from within the building condensing on colder surfaces within the wall construction, often occurring due to a cold bridge
Negative pressure	Where the air pressure on the internal face of the system is greater than that on the external face
Positive pressure	Where the air pressure on the external face of the system is greater than that on the internal face
Primary components	Components and parts of the system that are not easily replaceable. These may include: • cladding panels • fixings • framing • insulation • vapour control layers • weathering components.
Pressure equalisation	The creation of an air cushion within the cavity to reduce the amount of water passing through the joints of a rainscreen. Compartmentation and adequately large joints are required to achieve pressure equalisation
Rainscreen	The part of the assembly, generally the outermost, that prevents the majority of rain from penetrating the wall. Some water may pass through the joints of a rainscreen, but this should be limited by appropriate detailing of open joints or the provision of baffled or labyrinth joints
Rainscreen cladding system	A façade that provides a barrier to wind and rain and which typically includes a vapour control layer, air barrier, supporting framework and fixings, insulation, breather membrane, cavity/air gap and cladding panels. Traditional tile hanging and timber cladding are not classed as rainscreen cladding systems under the definitions of this chapter
Replaceable components	Those which are readily replaceable without compromising the design and durability of the building or the need for progressive dismantling of the envelope. Where this cannot be achieved, components should be designed as primary components. A method statement should be provided to demonstrate how components will be replaced with specific reference to accessibility as detailed in this chapter
Secondary components	Components and parts of the system that are easily replaceable. These may include: • cladding panels • external finishes • glazing and gaskets • internal linings • seals and sealant • window and door furniture.

Separating floors and walls	Floors and walls designed to provide separation between homes.
Slope glazing	A drained and ventilated sloped roofing system.
Systems	For the purposes of this chapter, this term refers to acceptable forms of curtain walling, rainscreen cladding, insulated render systems and brick slip cladding systems.
Spandrel panel	A panel used in place of glazing units to hide the edges of floor slabs, ceiling details, insulation, and other building elements.
Test pressure	The pressure at which testing is conducted.
Vapour control layer	A layer used to restrict the passage of water vapour into the construction to reduce the risk of interstitial condensation.

6.9.1 Compliance

Also see: Chapter 2.1

Curtain walling and cladding systems shall comply with the Technical Requirements.

Curtain walling and cladding systems that comply with the guidance in this chapter will generally be acceptable.

6.9.2 Provision of information

Designs and specifications shall be produced in a clearly understandable format, include all relevant information and be distributed to appropriate personnel.

Clear and fully detailed drawings should be available on site to enable work to be carried out in accordance with the design. Design and specification information should be issued to site supervisors, relevant specialist subcontractors and suppliers, and include the following information:

- a full set of drawings
- a schedule of revisions
- manufacturer's specification
- specific details of all interfaces
- fixing schedules
- manufacturer's recommendations for proprietary items
- details of the on-site testing regime.

6.9.3 Certification

Curtain walling and cladding systems shall be adequately tested, certified and designed in accordance with appropriate standards.

Curtain walling and cladding systems should have certification confirming satisfactory assessment, undertaken by an independent technical authority. Where applicable, certification should be in accordance with CWCT Standard for systemised building envelopes (or a suitable alternative acceptable to NHBC). Independent technical approvals authorities acceptable to NHBC include:

- British Board of Agrément (BBA)
- Building Research Establishment (BRE), or
- certification bodies considered by NHBC to be a suitable alternative.

Certification and test documentation should be:

- made available to NHBC before work begins on site
- used as reference to ensure compliance.

The use of the system should be within the scope of the certification and test documentation.

6.9.4 Loads

Curtain walling and cladding systems, including brackets and fixings, shall allow movement without causing damage or deformation, and safely transfer loads to the building.

Dead loads and live loads should:

- be transferred safely to the building's structure without undue permanent deformation or deflection of any component
- be calculated in accordance with BS EN 1991-1-1 and BS EN 1991-1-4, and take account of internal and external pressures, the location, shape and size of the building.

The following should be accommodated without any reduction in performance:

- thermally induced loading due to differential stresses caused by temperature gradients within materials or components
- stresses in components and materials (these should not exceed the permissible values recommended by the product manufacturer)
- movement within the curtain walling or cladding.

Causes of movement include:

- dead and live loads
- changes in temperature
- changes in the moisture content of components
- freezing of retained moisture
- creep.

Allowance for movement should be provided in accordance with the design.

6.9.5 Support and fixings

Curtain walling and cladding systems shall be securely fixed with suitably durable fixings to ensure adequate in-service performance.

The cladding system and associated fixings should be correctly located and securely fixed in accordance with the design and the manufacturer's recommendations. Fixings and supports, including the type, size and positioning of anchors, fixing rails, frames, fixings, fasteners and bracketry, should be in accordance with the design, and:

- accommodate specified loads
- account for packing of brackets to achieve surface tolerance, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- be accurately set out
- generally be stainless steel, suitable non-ferrous metal or appropriate plastics
- be installed ensuring dissimilar metals are separated to avoid bimetallic corrosion
- be installed ensuring aluminium components are separated from direct contact with cementitious surfaces.

Mechanically fixed systems should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and fixings should:

- have the correct embedding, spacing and edge distances
- be installed to the correct torque settings
- have suitable locking nuts and washers.

Fixings should be manufactured from:

- phosphor bronze
- silicon bronze
- BS EN ISO 3506 stainless steel
- mild steel with coatings to BS EN ISO 2081, BS EN 1461, or other appropriate treatment in accordance with BS EN ISO 12944 or BS EN ISO 14713
- BS EN 573 and BS EN 755 aluminium alloy
- appropriate plastics
- materials assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Materials that comply with recognised standards and which provide equal or better performance to those above will generally be acceptable to NHBC.

Pull-out or destructive testing of anchors and fixings should:

- comply with BS8539 and BS5080
- comply with the Construction Fixings Association Guidance Note 'Procedure for Site Testing Construction Fixings'
- be carried out in accordance with the design
- carried out at a frequency agreed with NHBC.

The test report should be made available to NHBC.

Adhesive-fixed systems should be installed to a suitably prepared backing wall, providing:

- an assessment of the backing wall is available to confirm suitability
- it is used in accordance with the design.

Adhesive fixing of rails, frames, fixings and fasteners should:

- only be specified where there is no suitable alternative
- be used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Timber should only be used where it is:

- easily inspected and replaced without disturbing the curtain walling system
- treated in accordance with Chapter 3.3 'Timber preservation (natural solid timber)'.

6.9.6 Durability

Also see: Chapter 3.3

Curtain walling and cladding systems shall provide satisfactory durability (subject to routine inspection and maintenance). Timber shall be either naturally durable or preservative treated to provide adequate protection against rot and insect attack.

The system should be designed to avoid the need for disproportionate work when repairing or replacing individual components. In addition:

- primary components should provide satisfactory in-service performance for the design life of the building
- secondary components should provide satisfactory in-service performance for a minimum of 25 years.

The curtain walling system should be constructed with corrosion resistant or adequately protected materials. The risk of bimetallic corrosion should be avoided by the isolation of dissimilar metals.

Systems should not include materials liable to infestation by micro-organisms, fungi, insects or vermin.

6.9.7 Interfaces

Curtain walling and cladding systems shall have suitable interfaces and resist the penetration of water and wind.

The design should indicate the contractor responsible for constructing interfaces.

Interfaces, including those between curtain walling and cladding systems, and those between curtain walling and cladding systems and other elements of the building (eg walls, roof, doors and windows), should be carefully designed and detailed to be weather resistant, and prevent moisture reaching parts of the wall that it could adversely affect.

The design should take account of:

- differing profile characteristics
- movement
- continuity of insulation, vapour barriers and breather membranes
- tolerances and deviation
- the erection sequence
- planned maintenance.

6.9.8 Insulation

Insulation shall be suitable for the intended use.

Insulation should be:

- in accordance with the design and the manufacturer's recommendations
- installed correctly to minimise the risk of thermal bridging, surface and interstitial condensation
- securely fixed to the support frame or backing wall with appropriate fixings and/or adhesive in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- returned into window and door openings, and continuous around penetrations through the wall
- neatly cut around fixings and brackets.

Insulation materials should:

- be inert, durable, rot and vermin proof
- not be adversely affected by moisture
- be one of the materials listed in Table 1.

Table 1: Materials for insulation

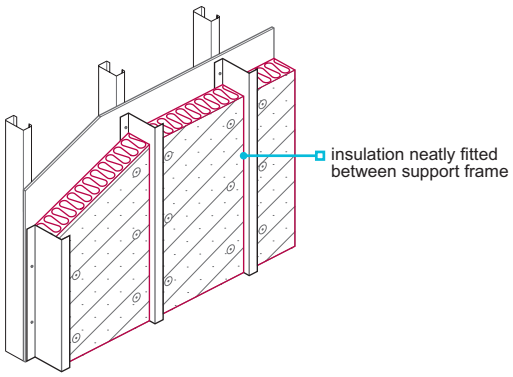
Insulation type	Relevant standard
Mineral wool	BS EN 13162
FR grade (flame retardant) expanded polystyrene	BS EN 13163
FR grade (flame retardant) extruded polystyrene	BS EN 13164
Rigid polyurethane foam and polyisocyanurate	BS EN 13165
Phenolic foam	BS EN 13166
Cellular glass	BS EN 13167
Other materials	Technical Requirement R3

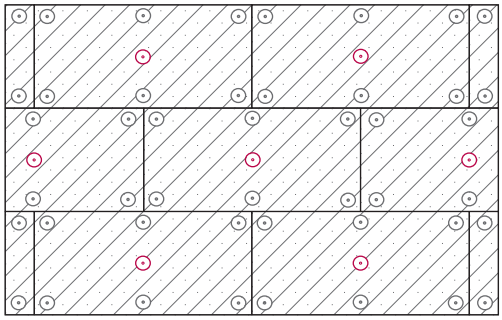
Reference should be made to BRE document BR135 – 2003 'Fire performance of external thermal insulation for walls of multi-storey buildings' when specifying the type of insulation system to be installed.

Rainscreen cladding

The backing wall should be adequately insulated, particularly at exposed areas. Where open joints are used, a continuous and durable breather membrane should be provided over the outer face of the insulation.

Where the insulation is fixed to the backing wall, a minimum of one non-combustible fixing per 1m² or per insulation batt, whichever is the lesser, should be provided in addition to the other fixings.

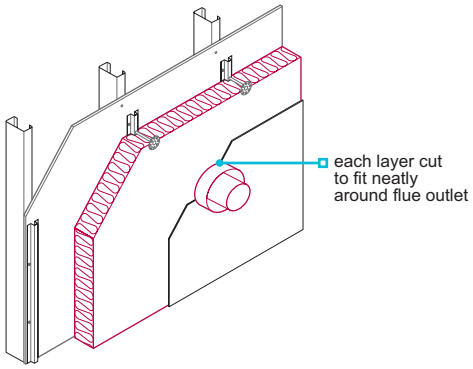




Insulated render

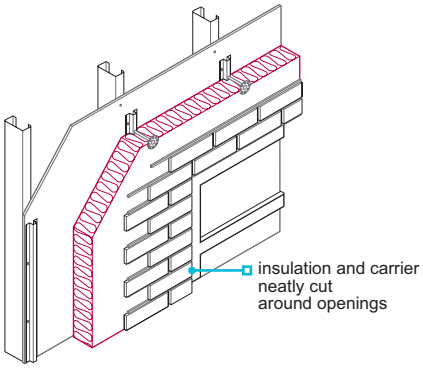
A minimum of one non-combustible fixing per 1m² or per insulation batt, whichever provides the greater number, should be provided in addition to the other fixings. Non-combustible fixings should be fixed through the mesh reinforcement.

Insulation should be suitable to receive the render finish, and keyed where appropriate.



Brick slip cladding

Where the insulation is fixed to the backing wall, a minimum of one non-combustible fixing per 1m² or per insulation batt, whichever is the lesser, should be provided in addition to the other fixings.



6.9.9 Damp proofing and vapour control

Curtain walling and cladding systems, including damp proofing materials and breather membranes, shall adequately resist the passage of water into the building and allow water vapour to pass outwards.

Damp proofing should:

- be installed correctly to provide a physical barrier to the passage of water, and to ensure water is directed to the outside
- include cavity trays with stop ends at the base of the system, above openings, above cavity barriers, interfaces and other interruptions to the cavity where necessary
- use DPCs/DPMs where necessary, including the junction between the system and any other component or systems
- use only appropriate tapes and sealant (but not solely rely on sealant) in accordance with the design and the manufacturer's recommendations.

For curtain walling systems, the DPC/DPM should extend the full height of the system and have appropriate details at each interface (including floors, walls, roofs, balconies and terraces).

DPCs/DPMs and flexible cavity trays

Damp proofing should be:

- formed from materials which are compatible with adjoining components
- the correct dimensions to suit the detailed design
- constructed from preformed components at complicated junctions.

The following materials are acceptable for use as DPCs/DPMs:

- BS 6515 polyethylene
- EPDM
- neoprene
- materials assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Flashings

The following materials are acceptable as flashings:

- BS EN 12588 rolled lead sheet (minimum Code 4)
- BS EN 485 and BS EN 573 aluminium and aluminium alloys
- BS EN 988 zinc alloys
- stainless steel.

Breather membranes

Breather membranes should:

- comply with BS EN 13859-2: 2014 (Type 1 in areas of very severe exposure), or
- be in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

6.9.10 Installation and tolerances

Also see: Chapter 9.1

Curtain walling and cladding systems shall:

a) be installed by competent operatives

b) be installed to achieve design tolerances and established standards.

Installation

Systems should be installed by operatives who:

- are competent
- are familiar with the system being installed
- hold a certificate confirming that they have been trained by the system manufacturer, supplier or installer.

Tolerances

Systems should be completed, within reasonable tolerances, in accordance with the design, and allowing for the line, level, plumb and plane of the completed wall to be within reasonable tolerances for the materials involved.

6.9.11 Electrical continuity and earth bonding

Curtain walling and cladding systems shall ensure electrical continuity and earth bonding.

Curtain walling and rainscreen cladding should comply with:

BS 7671	'IET Wiring Regulations Requirements for Electrical Installations', formerly 'IEE Wiring Regulations'
BS EN 62305	'Protection against lightning. General principles'
BS EN 62305-3	'Physical damage to structures and life hazard'

6.9.12 Maintenance

Curtain walling and cladding systems shall have appropriate access arrangements for the purposes of cleaning, inspection, maintenance and repair.

Provision should be made for safe future access to the façade. Access should generally be provided from a safe working platform, such as a cradle or mobile elevating platform.

Appropriate arrangements should be made for the replacement of failed insulating glass units without incurring excessive costs for gaining access.

6.9.13 Glazing, gaskets and sealants

Glazing shall be carried out in accordance with relevant standards. Materials used for glazing, gaskets and sealants shall provide satisfactory performance.

Glazing, including insulating glass units, should be in accordance with Chapter 6.7 'Doors, windows and glazing'.
Extruded rubber gaskets should comply with BS 4255 or assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Sealant and tapes should be selected and applied in accordance with:

- BS 6213
- BS EN ISO 11600.

Sealant used in locations where differential movement may be expected, eg interfaces between the façade and the structure, should be one of the following:

- one or two part polysulphide
- one part silicone
- one or two part polyurethane
- materials assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

6.9.14 Cavity barriers and firestops

Materials used for cavity barriers and firestops shall be capable of producing adequate resistance to fire and smoke.

Materials are acceptable where they are:

- specified in Building Regulations
- assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Systems incorporating proprietary intumescent materials should follow the guidance provided by:

- the Intumescent Fire Seals Association (IFSA)
- the Association for Specialist Fire Protection (ASFP).

6.9.15 Ventilation screens

Ventilation openings shall be protected from the entry of birds and animals.

Where openings are larger than 10mm, a screen to prevent birds and animals entering the cavity should be provided:

- in accordance with the design
- at the top and bottom of the rainscreen
- at penetrations through the cladding.

6.9.16 Handling and storage

Materials, products and systems shall be protected and stored in a satisfactory manner to prevent damage, distortion, uneven weathering and degradation.

The handling and storage of curtain walling or cladding system should ensure:

- components are transported, lifted, handled and stored in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- insulated glass units are carefully stored and protected in a sheltered dry area.

Practical steps should be taken to avoid the risk of damage to the curtain walling or cladding system during construction.

6.9.17 Curtain walling

Curtain walling shall ensure adequate in-service performance. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) acoustic performance
b) weather resistance
c) thermal bridging condensation
d) air infiltration
e) opening doors and lights
f) off-site testing
g) site testing.

Acoustic performance

Noise from the curtain walling system caused by loads, movements and changes in the environmental conditions should be accommodated without being intrusive.

The curtain walling system should be designed to resist the passage of airborne and impact sound within the building. To reduce flanking transmission, precautions may be required at the:

- edges of separating floors
- outer ends of separating walls
- outer ends of partition walls
- junctions with roof constructions and parapets.

Weather resistance

Curtain walling systems should have:

- external and internal air and water seals with a drained and ventilated cavity at each interface
- drained and ventilated glazing rebates including gaskets and seals.

The following illustrations show typical interfaces and general design principles:

Figure 1: Curtain walling to insulated render system: horizontal section

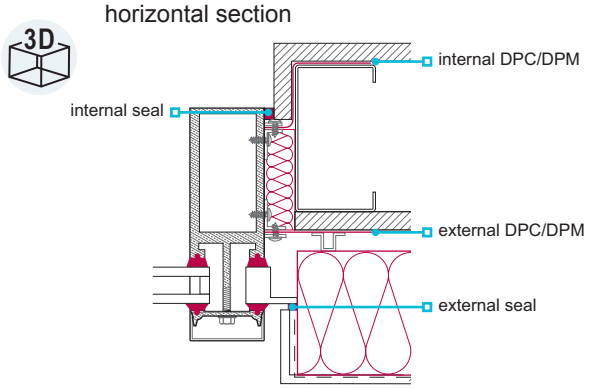


Figure 2: Curtain walling to balcony/terrace: vertical section

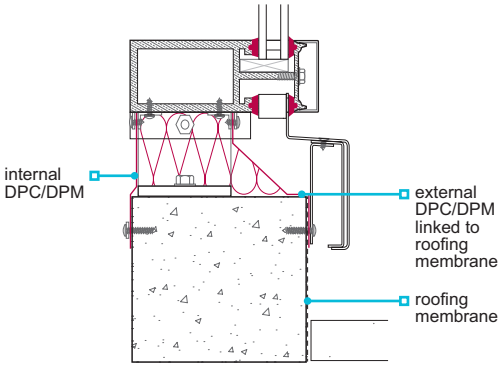


Figure 3: Curtain walling to conventional brick and block wall: horizontal section

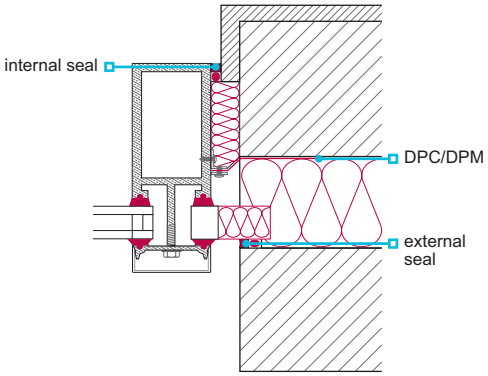


Figure 4: Curtain walling to soffit: vertical section

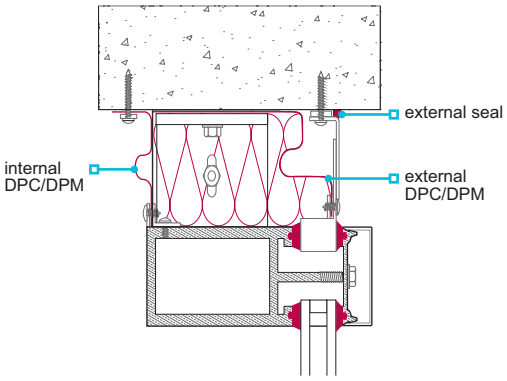
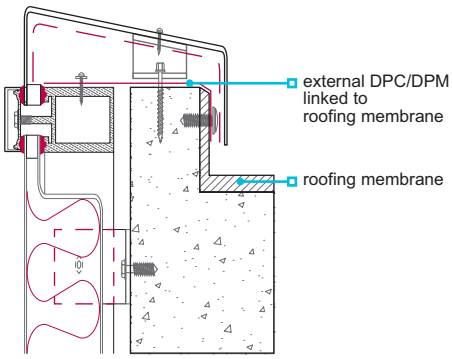


Figure 5: Curtain walling to roof, including coping detail: vertical section



Thermal bridging and condensation

The design and construction of curtain walls should:

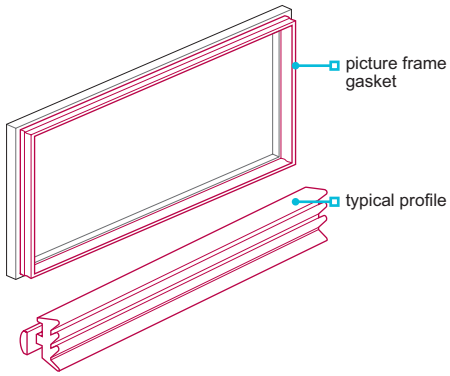
- ensure interfaces are adequately insulated and installed in accordance with the design
- minimise the risk of surface and interstitial condensation by providing thermal breaks and a continuous and durable vapour control layer in accordance with the design
- ensure thermal bridging is controlled so that no part of the curtain wall is more at risk from surface condensation than the glazing.

Air infiltration

Curtain walling systems should be sealed with preformed factory-moulded 'picture frame' type vulcanised EPDM or silicone internal gaskets. Gaskets and sealants should:

- be used to resist the flow of air from the outside to the interior surface of the curtain walling system
- comply with BS 6213 and be used in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

Particular attention should be given to the interfaces between the curtain walling system and the walls, roof, doors, windows and cladding system.



Opening doors and lights

Opening doors and lights should:

- hang square within the curtain wall frame
- fit neatly and with minimal gaps to ensure effective weatherproofing.

Off-site testing

Air and water testing of the 'prototype' curtain walling system should be carried out in accordance with, and pass, the CWCT Standard (test sequence A or B), when tested at a test pressure of 600 pascals. Panels tested should be of a similar size and configuration to those to be used on the building.

Where the maximum calculated design wind pressure is above 2400 pascals, the test pressure should be increased to 0.25 x the design wind pressure.

The 'prototype' should remain watertight during and after the test.

At a test pressure of 600 pascals, an air infiltration rate no higher than 1.5m^3/hr/m^2 for fixed glazed panels is permissible, provided there is no evidence of concentrated leakage.

Wind resistance, serviceability and safety testing should be carried out in accordance with the CWCT Standard.

Site testing

Site testing should:

- be conducted to determine resistance to water penetration, including joints and interfaces which are intended to be permanently closed and watertight
- ensure a representative sample of the finished installation is hose tested in accordance with the current CWCT Standard for curtain walling
- ensure a minimum of 5% of the completed curtain walling system is tested, especially in vulnerable areas such as joints and interfaces.

Other testing may be acceptable where it is considered to be a suitable alternative by NHBC.

The results of the test should be made available to NHBC.

6.9.18 Rainscreen cladding

Rainscreen cladding systems shall ensure adequate in-service performance. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) acoustic performance
b) weather resistance
c) thermal bridging and condensation
d) air infiltration
e) compartmentation
f) certification
g) site testing.

Acoustic performance

Noise from the rainscreen cladding system caused by rain striking the outer surface of panels should be accommodated without being intrusive through the use of material that is:

- noise absorbing, or
- anti-drumming.

Weather resistance

To ensure moisture is directed to the outside, DPC/DPM arrangements should be correctly formed with suitable upstands and stop ends, including at the junction between the rainscreen cladding and any other component or system. External and internal air and water seals and a drained cavity should be provided at all interfaces.

The air gap between the face of the insulation and the back of the panels should be of sufficient width and have suitably sized drainage, allowing any water passing the joints to:

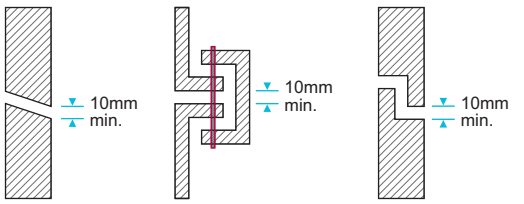
- run down the back of the rainscreen panels
- be discharged externally without wetting the insulation or the backing wall.

Free drainage

Air gaps should be adequately ventilated and the following minimum widths maintained behind all rainscreen panels:

- 50mm for panels with open joints, or
- 38mm for panels with baffled or labyrinth (rebated) joints.

Open, baffled or labyrinth (rebated) joints should have a minimum 10mm opening, unless specified otherwise.



Thermal bridging and condensation

The system should:

- be designed to minimise the risk of thermal bridging, surface and interstitial condensation
- be assessed using a BS 5250 condensation risk analysis
- generally include a vapour control layer fixed to the warm side of the wall insulation.

Air infiltration

Before installation of the system, the backing wall should be reasonably airtight with:

- masonry walls jointed to a high standard, ie, each joint filled
- framed walls, including a rigid sheathing on the cavity face, with each joint taped or sealed.

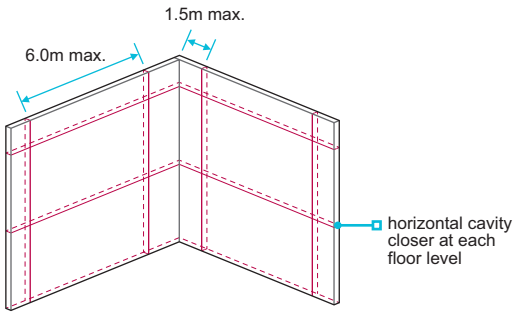
Where reasonable airtightness cannot be achieved:

- a separate continuous vapour permeable air barrier should be provided on the outer face of the backing wall
- joints should be taped or sealed.

Compartmentation

Rainscreen cladding systems that have open joints between the panels should be designed to be pressure equalised. The cavity should be compartmented by:

- a horizontal cavity closer at each floor level
- vertical cavity closers at centres not exceeding 6m
- vertical cavity closers at centres not exceeding 1.5m within 6m of an internal or external corner
- a vertical cavity closer as close as possible to an external corner, generally within 300mm.



The NHBC Standard for compartmentation is in addition to Building Regulations (to control the spread of smoke and fire), but may be used for the same purpose.

Cavity closers should:

- be rigid and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- enable ventilation and drainage to be maintained in accordance with the design.

Certification

Rainscreen cladding systems, including panels, should have current certification confirming satisfactory assessment by an appropriate independent technical approvals authority accepted by NHBC.

Site testing

On-site hose or sparge bar testing should be carried out with emphasis on interfaces that are designed to be permanently closed and watertight.

The building should remain watertight during and after the test.

6.9.19 Insulated render and brick slip cladding

Also see: Chapter 6.2

Insulated render and brick slip cladding shall be designed and installed to ensure adequate in-service performance. Issues to be taken into account include:

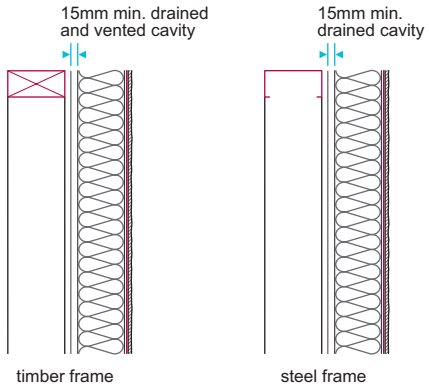
a) weather resistance
b) thermal bridging and condensation
c) air infiltration
d) insulated render: reinforcement and render
e) brick slip cladding: slips, carriers and joints.

Weather resistance

Timber and steel framed backing walls should have a cavity between the wall and the insulation which is:

- a minimum of 15mm wide
- drained and vented (for timber frame)
- drained (for steel frame).

A cavity can increase the risk of damage from impact, especially at low level, around balconies and where cradle systems etc can come into contact with the façade. Suitable precautions to resist impact damage should be provided eg by the provision of a rigid board behind the insulation whilst maintaining the cavity.



The following illustrations show typical interfaces and general design principles:

Figure 6: Insulated render system to windows and doors: horizontal section

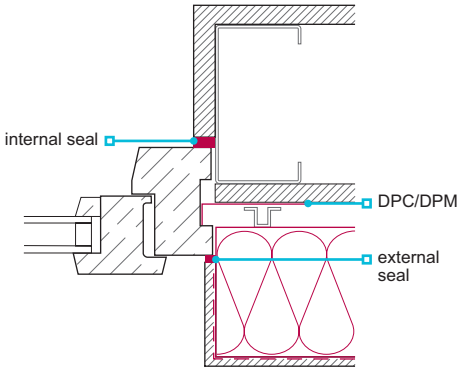


Figure 7: Penetration of gas flue through insulated render system on light gauge steel frame: horizontal section

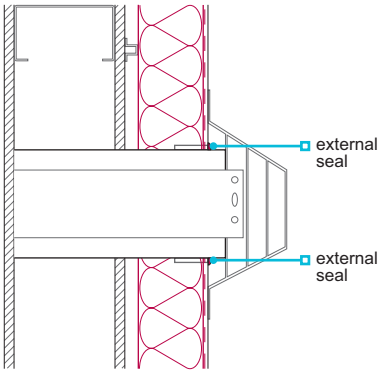
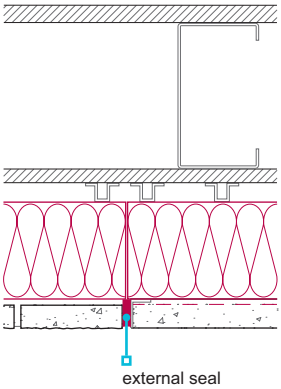


Figure 8: Brick slip cladding to insulated render system: horizontal section



Movement joints in the backing wall should be:

- continued through the insulated render system
- formed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Thermal bridging and condensation

The system should:

- be designed to minimise the risk of thermal bridging, surface and interstitial condensation
- be assessed using a suitable condensation risk analysis
- generally include a vapour control layer, fixed to the warm side of the wall insulation.

Air infiltration

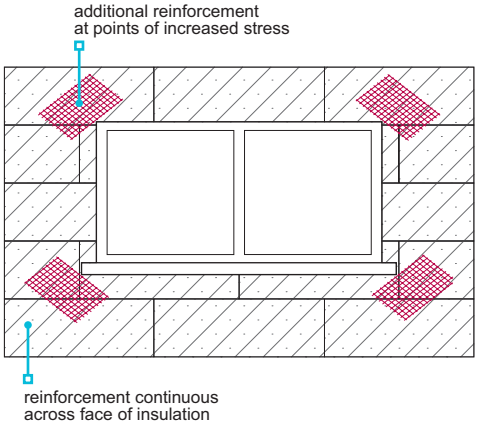
Before installation of the system, the backing wall should be reasonably airtight with:

- masonry walls jointed to a high standard ie, each joint filled
- each joint taped or sealed on framed walls, including a rigid sheathing on the cavity face.

Insulated render: reinforcement and render

Reinforcement should:

- be detailed in the design and be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- be formed with appropriate trim at openings, corners, angles, interfaces and movement joints
- include additional mesh where there may be increased stress in the render system, ie, at the corners of window or door openings
- be lapped to a minimum of 100mm.



Render should:

- not be applied where the surface has contamination, dust or loose particles
- have the appropriate number and thickness of coats in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- be mixed to ensure colour consistency where coloured pigments are specified
- be specified and used with the appropriate trims to form corners, returns and features in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

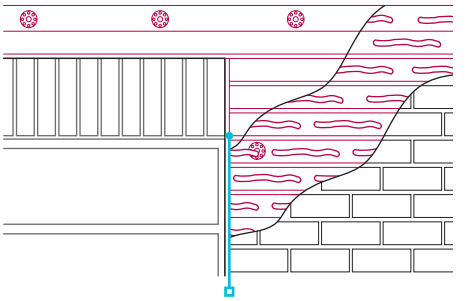
Brick slip cladding: slips, carriers and joints

Brick slip systems, including proprietary carriers forming an integral part of the system, should:

- be specified and fixed in accordance with the design and the manufacturer's recommendations, taking account of relevant height restrictions
- be set out and designed to ensure that excessive cutting of brick slips is avoided, ie, in the storey heights, at corners and around openings
- have coursing arranged to suit lintel heights.

Mortars, proprietary mortars and grouts should be specified:

- to enable each joint to be adequately filled and appropriately struck
- in accordance with the system manufacturer's recommendations.



Chapter

6.10

Light steel framed walls and floors

This chapter gives guidance on meeting the Technical Requirements for light steel framed walls and floors and:

- **applies specifically to 'warm frame' and 'hybrid construction' using 0.45-4.0mm thick framing**
- **does not apply to light steel framed walls used in basements.**

For figure reference tables in this chapter, please go to the end of the chapter

Definitions for this chapter

Differential movement	Movement between the frame and cladding, eg due to thermal expansion, shrinkage (in concrete masonry) and moisture expansion (in clay masonry).
External infill	Walls which are built between the floors of steel or concrete frames and are designed to resist wind loading and to support the weight of the other wall components. They do not provide stability to the building or resist floor loading. External infill is considered as a secondary structural component.
Hybrid construction	Cavity construction where insulation is installed both between the studs and on the cavity side of the steel frame.
LSF	Light steel frame. In this chapter, 'LSF' refers to construction framing members made from cold-formed profiles 0.45-4.0mm thick. Structural members are typically at least 1.0mm thick.
Primary structural components	Elements of the structure designed to carry and transfer primary loads of the building as a whole, including self-weight, dead loads and live loads.
Secondary structural components	Elements of the structure which do not play a wider role in the structure, but carry loads directly imposed on them (and transfer them to the primary structure) such as self-weight, wind loads, cladding and openings.
Sheathing	Board applied to the outside of the steel frame (installed where required by the design).
Warm frame	Cavity construction where insulation is installed on the cavity side of the steel frame.

6.10.1 Compliance

Also see: Chapter 2.1

LSF structures shall comply with the Technical Requirements.

LSF structures (ie, walls, roofs and floors) that comply with the guidance in this chapter will generally be acceptable.

LSF structures may be:

- structurally independent (primary) and used to form whole buildings, additional storeys, annexes, extensions, penthouses, etc
- infill walls (secondary), or
- bespoke facades (where support may be required from other structural elements).

Construction should be 'warm frame' or 'hybrid' construction, with sufficient insulation outside the steel envelope to ensure that condensation does not occur within the depth of the light steel members.

Stud partitions are considered in Chapter 6.3 'Internal walls'. LSF systems that do not comply with the principles of this chapter should be assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Where the components of the LSF cannot be inspected on site (eg closed panels or fitted out volumetric or modular units) the system should be treated as a proprietary building system under Technical Requirement R3 and subject to assessment by an appropriate independent technical approvals authority or be assessed under the NHBC Accepts service - **see www.nhbc.co.uk/accepts**.

6.10.2 Provision of information

Designs and specifications shall be produced in a clearly understandable format, include all relevant information and be distributed to all appropriate personnel.

Clear and fully detailed drawings should be available on site to enable work to be carried out in accordance with the design. Designs and specifications should be issued to site supervisors, relevant specialist subcontractors and suppliers, and include:

- a full set of drawings and material specifications
- a typical wall build-up, including wall ties, breather membranes, sheathing and vapour control layers, where applicable
- fixing schedules and details of each connection that is to be made on site
- details of connections with other building elements, including roofs, floors and openings
- information on integration of services and work of subsequent trades
- positions and materials for fire stops and cavity barriers in accordance with relevant Building Regulations
- the number and spacing of bolts, screws and rivets
- the manufacturer's recommendations relating to proprietary items
- details of how wall panels are to be fixed to the substructure, adjacent panels, and floor and roof framing
- the specification for each type of fixing, including corrosion protection.

6.10.3 Structural certification

Contact us: ***technical@nhbc.co.uk***

The LSF system shall be adequately tested and certified. The design of superstructures with primary structural components formed from LSF shall be checked by an NHBC registered LSF certifier.

Primary structural components formed from LSF require two-stage certification confirming that both the system and the project have been checked. External infill does not require Stage 1 and 2 certification (see Clause 6.10.5).

Stage 1 – system certification

NHBC requires manufacturers of LSF systems, which form primary structural components, to submit a system manual to the Steel Construction Institute (SCI) for assessment. The manufacturer is the company which assembles the steel frame sections to form the wall and/or floor panels. If in doubt, consult NHBC Standards, Innovation and Research.

The manual should contain the information described in Table 1. Further performance issues may be considered at the discretion of SCI and the manufacturer (see Table 7).

Table 1: Items included in the system manual

Topic	Description
Description of system	• key features.
Application	• usage, eg maximum number of storeys and type of cladding
Durability	• demonstrate that design life is at least 60 years (including environment category) • grade of steel • corrosion protection • supplementary protection
Strength and stability	• structural design philosophy (including codes of practice referenced and test reports) • grade of steel (traceability) • section properties • loading • ultimate limit state • serviceability limit state • resistance to overturning • racking resistance • holding down • connections within the system • connections with other building elements • structural integrity • positions and sizes of holes through members
Additional checks where LSF is used in volumetric construction	• module-to-module connections (strength as well as accuracy) • module-to-foundation connections • rigidity in transportation • lifting

Where there are various configurations (eg types of claddings), the manufacturer will need to specify which options SCI is to consider in its assessment. Upon satisfactory completion, SCI will approve the manufacturer's system manual and issue a numbered 'system certificate' which includes:

- a detailed description of the system
- details of usage limitations
- information for reference by the designer and LSF project certifier.

Stage 2 – project certification

The design of all primary structural components should be subject to a Stage 2 certification check by an NHBC registered LSF certifier.

The LSF certifier should:

- be listed on NHBC's list of LSF certifiers
- be a suitably qualified and experienced civil or structural engineer with appropriate professional indemnity insurance
- not be the designer of the LSF or be employed by the same practice
- check supporting details and calculations
- ensure the Stage 1 system certificate is valid and current
- ensure that the proposals are in accordance with the manufacturer's Stage 1 system certificate (issued by SCI) and this chapter
- provide confirmation that the requirements have been satisfied for the project
- provide the registered builder with the completed and signed project certificate confirming assessment of structural adequacy for each specific project.

The registered builder should ensure that the completed Stage 2 certificate is available on site for inspection by NHBC.

Contact NHBC Standards, Innovation and Research via **technicalsupport@nhbc.co.uk**:

- if you require contact details of frame certifiers, or
- to apply to become an LSF certifier.

6.10.4 Structural design of load-bearing floors and walls

LSF floors and walls shall be designed to support and transfer loads safely and without undue movement. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) structural floors
b) structural walls
c) overall stability.

Structural floors

Floors should:

- be of the correct type
- be fitted in the specified location
- have suitably sized trimmers around floor openings
- have a typical maximum joist spacing of 600mm, although greater spacings may be applied when designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5 or covered by an SCI system-specific Stage 1 assessment with the project-specific application reviewed and checked by an NHBC registered LSF certifier.

Light steel joists should be fixed to supporting walls by either:

- web cleats
- 'Z' or 'L' hangers
- a track connection
- direct attachment to wall studs, or
- bearing onto the supporting structure (bearing stiffeners may be required).

Joist support cleats should:

- be of the correct type
- be fitted in the specified location
- use fixings as specified in the design.

Where required, web stiffeners should be properly fitted.

Where joists are fitted directly to light steel wall studs, pre-drilled holes should be correctly aligned before making the final connection.

Fixing holes should not be enlarged, and additional holes should not be cut without prior approval of the designer.

Figure 1: Joist bearing onto structure with stiffener

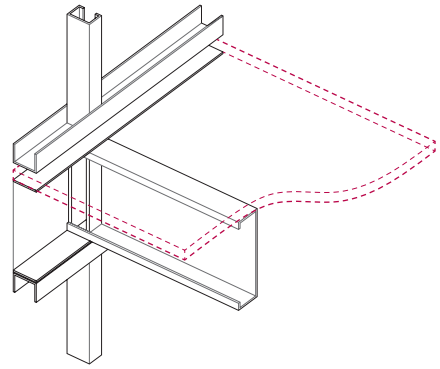


Figure 2: Web cleat connection

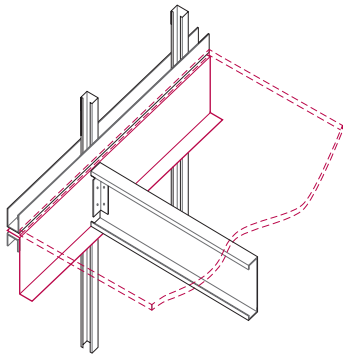
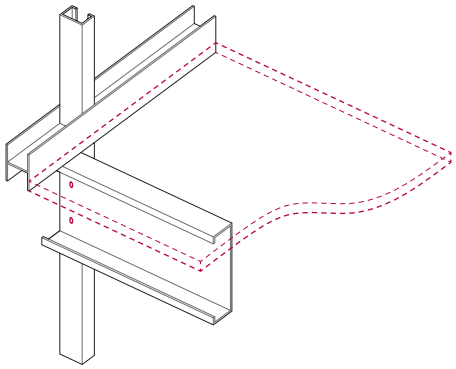


Figure 3: Bolted web to web connection



Static criteria for the maximum permissible deflection of a single joist due to:

- imposed load, limited to (span/450)
- dead and imposed loads, limited to the lesser of (span/350) or 15mm.

Dynamic criteria:

- the natural frequency of the floor should not be less than 8Hz for dead load plus 0.2 x imposed load; this can be achieved by limiting the deflection of a single joist to 5mm for the given loading.
- the deflection of the floor (ie, a series of joists plus the floor decking) when subject to a 1kN point load should be limited to the values in Table 2.

Table 2: Deflection with point loads of 1kN

Span (m)	Maximum deflection (mm)
3.5	1.7
3.8	1.6
4.2	1.5
4.6	1.4
5.3	1.3
6.2	1.2

The deflection of a single joist is dependent on the:

- overall floor construction
- number of effective joists that are deemed to share the applied 1kN point load (typical values are given in Table 3).

Table 3: Typical values

Floor configuration	Number of effective joists	
	400mm joist centres	600mm joist centres
Chipboard, plywood or oriented strand board	2.5	2.35
Built-up acoustic floor	4	3.5

Light steel ground floor construction

Provision should be made to prevent ground moisture affecting light steel floors. This can be achieved by covering the ground below the floor with either:

- 50mm oversite concrete or 50mm fine aggregate on 1200 gauge (0.3mm thick) polyethylene membrane laid on 50mm sand blinding, or
- 100mm oversite concrete on a compacted clean, inert hardcore bed. Where necessary, this concrete should be protected against sulfate attack by the use of a lapped polyethylene DPM, not less than 1200 gauge (0.3mm thick) or 1000 gauge where assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Floors should have a 150mm minimum void below the floor which is ventilated by:

- openings on at least two opposite sides
- 1500mm^2 per metre run of external wall or 500mm^2 per m^2 of floor area (whichever provides the largest area).

Where there is shrinkable soil, heave can occur. The minimum underfloor void ventilation requirement should be increased as follows:

- high potential – 150mm (300mm total)
- medium potential – 100mm (250mm total)
- low potential – 50mm (200mm total).

See Chapter 4.2 ‘Building near trees’ for definitions of high, medium and low volume change potential.

For concrete ground floors refer to Chapters 5.1 ‘Substructure and ground-bearing floors’ and 5.2 ‘Suspended ground floors’.

Concrete upper floors

Concrete floors may be used with LSF and may be constructed using either thin precast units or in-situ concrete placed on steel decking. The deflection of simply supported composite floors should be limited to take account of the long-term effects of creep and shrinkage. Composite floors should be appropriately propped until the concrete reaches the required strength and should not be overloaded during construction. Guidance can be found in Section 6.3 of SCI publication P402 ‘Light steel framing in residential construction’.

Structural walls

The structural design of the building should ensure adequate resistance to loadings including dead loads, imposed loads, wind loads and snow loads, in accordance with:

- BS EN 1991-1-1
- BS EN 1991-1-3
- BS EN 1991-1-4.

Further guidance on deflection limits can be found in SCI guidance P402 ‘Light steel framing in residential construction’.

Individual studs should generally:

- be sized to meet structural requirements, allowing for board fixings at joints and construction tolerances
- have a maximum spacing of 600mm
- consider deflection if not designed to carry vertical loading from the primary structure.

Alternative stud arrangements should be agreed with NHBC.

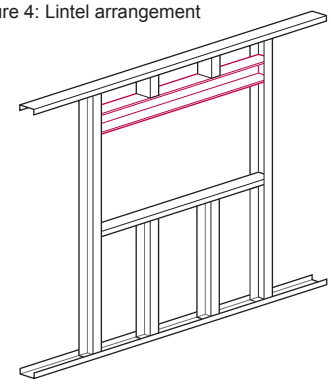
Lintels, including trussed lintels, should be:

- provided to any opening in load-bearing panels where one or more studs is cut or displaced to form the opening, but are not required where an opening falls between studs
- securely fixed to supporting studs to ensure that loads are fully transferred.

At openings, additional studs may be required to provide support or fixing points for wall ties, cladding and wall linings.

Multiple studs should be included to support multiple joists, unless otherwise specified by the designer.

Figure 4: Lintel arrangement



Where panels are diagonally braced with a flat strip, the brace should be fixed to each stud at the intersection to minimise bowing in the bracing member. Alternatively, bracing may be tensioned using alternative methods where included in the scope of the Stage 1 certification.

Appropriate holding-down devices should be provided to resist uplift, where necessary. The anchorage for holding-down devices should have sufficient mass to resist the uplift forces (See Clause 6.10.10).

Where roof trusses sit directly on a top track, the design should consider all loads, such as:

- wind uplift
- lateral support
- vertical loading (assuming that trusses may be offset from studs).

Where included in the design, timber wall plates should be:

- fixed to the head rail of wall panels onto which timber roof trusses bear
- sized (including the head rail) to permit single timber trusses to be positioned at any point between studs.

Allowance for movement, including at openings and penetrations, should:

- prevent load transfer onto services or flues
- consider elastic shortening of the LSF and movement potential of any panels, cladding or boards
- be fully coordinated with the whole building design.

Overall stability

Methods to provide overall stability should either:

- be designed to BS EN 1993-1-1, or
- be tested to BS EN 594.

Wall panels may provide stability using one or more of the following techniques:

- internal bracing
- crossed flat bracing
- external sheathing board in accordance with Clause 6.10.20
- rigid frame action.

Internal lining boards can be used where demonstrated to be suitable for the purpose.

6.10.5 Structural design of infill walls

Also see: Chapters 7.1 and 7.2

Infill walls shall be designed to support and transfer loads to the structure safely and without undue distortion or movement.

Infill panels should be designed to resist the expected wind loads, any loads transferred by the cladding system, and those imposed by windows and doors within the panels. Load concentrations resulting from the presence of openings should also be considered. The design should be in accordance with BS EN 1993-1-3. Additional information can be found in SCI publication ED017 'Design and installation of light steel external wall systems'.

6.10.6 Roofs

Roofs supported by LSF constructions shall be designed to support the roof coverings and transfer loads safely and without undue movement.

Connections between LSF walls and timber or LSF pitched roofs require careful consideration in the design.

LSF pitched or flat roofs should only be used in warm-roof or hybrid construction, ie, with insulation over rafters (or joists in flat roofs).

Condensation risk should be considered in accordance with BS 5250.

6.10.7 Steel and fixings

Steel and fixings shall be suitable for the intended use. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) steel grade
b) protection against corrosion
c) connections and fixings
d) holes and notches.

Steel grade

Steel should be in accordance with BS EN 10346 and of any of the following grades:

- S280
- S320
- S350
- S390
- S420
- S450.

Protection against corrosion

All steel should be pre-galvanised in accordance with BS EN 10346 (minimum 275g/m^2 zinc coating (Z) or 150g/m^2 aluminium-zinc alloy coating (AZ)). Structural steel members should not be altered without the approval of the designer. Welded zones should be cleaned and treated with a zinc-rich paint to prevent corrosion.

Where the LSF floor is to be located at 150mm or more above the external ground level, the junction between the ground floor joists and their support should be designed to maintain the durability of the floor. Light steel floor joists and ring beams in such floors should be galvanised to 450g/m^2.

Alternatively, they can be galvanised to 275g/m^2 with additional protection of a two-coat bitumen-based coating to BS 1070, BS 3416 or BS 6949, or have a two-coat liquid asphaltic composition applied. Ring beams to ground floors should be totally protected, and joists protected for a minimum of 300mm adjacent to an external wall support or ring beam.

Where steel is used less than 150mm above ground level the guidance in Clause 6.10.16 should be considered.

Connections and fixings

Where two metals are to be joined, they should either be:

- compatible and not cause bimetallic corrosion, or
- isolated from each other.

Connections should be:

- properly installed
- securely made by clinching, crimping or by one of the methods detailed in Table 4
- justified in accordance with BS EN 1993-1-3 or a test method acceptable to NHBC.

Table 4: Types of connections

Type of connection	Relevant standard
Cleats	BS EN 1993-1-1
Countersunk bolts (tightened to the correct torque)	BS 4933
Hot-dip galvanised fasteners	BS EN ISO 10684
Rivets, including self-piercing rivets	Manufacturer's recommendations
Screws	BS EN ISO 10666 BS EN ISO 15480 BS EN ISO 15481 BS EN ISO 15482 BS EN ISO 15483 (also see BS EN ISO 4042)
Welded connections	BS EN 1011 and BS EN 1090
Zinc-plated bolts	BS 7371-3

Holding-down devices

Holding-down devices should be suitable for the environment they will be exposed to, and manufactured from:

- mild steel with zinc coating to BS EN ISO 1461
- stainless steel to BS EN 10095 (suitable for most environments).

Holes and notches

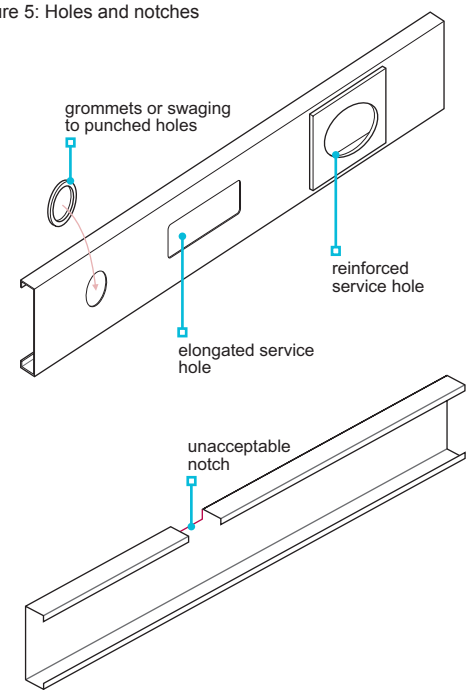
Joists and studs should not be altered without the approval of the steel frame designer, and the drilling, cutting or punching through of members shall only be undertaken to an engineer's design in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

To prevent damage to services, holes and penetrations should be fitted with grommets or swaged under factory conditions.

End notching of light steel joists may be required for the interconnection of trimming joists and should be in accordance with the design. Notches elsewhere in the span are not acceptable.

Also see Clause 6.10.22.

Figure 5: Holes and notches



6.10.8 Detailing of steel joists

Steel joists, fixings and connections shall be suitably detailed and provide satisfactory performance. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) installation details

b) prevention of roll.

Installation details

Joists or floor beams should be:

- spaced as shown in the design
- accurately cut to length in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations to ensure a tight fit
- joined with the correct type, size and number of fixings.

Where light steel joists are supported by steel joists, cleats or web stiffeners should be used in accordance with the design.

Joists may be doubled up to support partitions or to form trimmers.

Continuous joists on load-bearing intermediate walls should be reinforced as required by the design.

Figure 6: Web stiffeners for continuous joists over load-bearing intermediate wall

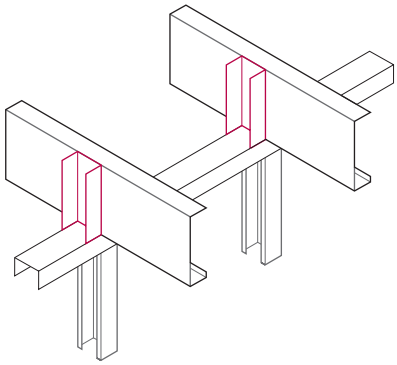
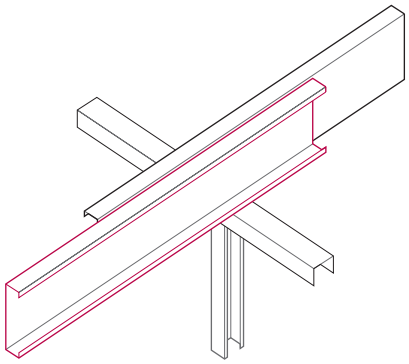


Figure 7: Joists overlapping on load-bearing intermediate wall



Where joists overlap on load-bearing intermediate walls, they should be fixed together with bolts or screws. This is to prevent the floor decking being pushed up, or the ceiling being cracked, when the cantilevered part of the joist moves upwards.

Prevention of roll

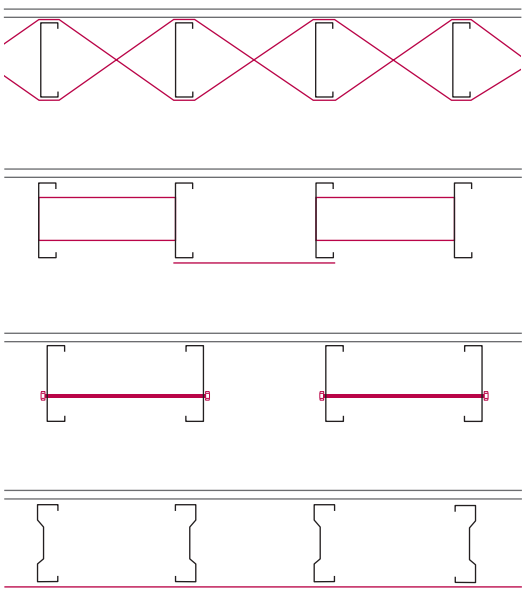
Bridging and blocking should be provided in accordance with the design to prevent roll.

Floors constructed using joists with an asymmetric web, eg of C or Sigma profile, can cause the floor to roll. To avoid roll, unless otherwise specified in the design, one of the following alternatives should be used where the span exceeds 3.5m for C joists or 4.2m for Sigma joists:

- a continuous line, or lines, of proprietary steel herringbone struts provided between the joists; the pairs of struts should have a physical gap between them so that they do not rub against each other at the cross-over point and create noise.
- solid blocking provided to every alternate pair of joists with ties between them as shown.
- joists alternately reversed and tied together in pairs.
- joists alternately reversed and continuous ties (eg resilient bar) fixed to the joist flanges.

Where joists bear onto steelwork or are supported by cleats, blocking is not necessary adjacent to the supports.

Figure 8: Floor bracing examples



6.10.9 Restraint

Restraint strapping shall be provided in accordance with the design.

Where external walls, not constructed from LSF, are to be stabilised by a connection to the floor, straps may be required. Straps will generally be fixed to the web of the joist, to suit the masonry courses.

Where joists run parallel to the wall, straps should be supported on noggings fixed between the joists. Straps should be placed at a maximum of 2m apart and carried over three joists. Packing should be provided between the wall and the first joist.

Straps should be fixed with suitable bolts, screws or rivets and should bear on the centre of bricks or blocks, not across mortar joints.

6.10.10 Construction of load-bearing walls and external infill walls

Construction of load-bearing walls and external infill walls shall ensure adequate stability. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) preparation
b) anchoring
c) accommodation of deflection.

Preparation

The following should be in accordance with the design:

- the setting out of the structure onto which the LSF is to be erected.
- the transfer of loads from the LSF.

The supporting structure may have local deviations in level along its length, and packing will be required to achieve the required tolerances and to provide for effective load transfer.

Concrete kickers should be carefully formed, ensuring that the concrete is adequately compacted and the top surface is suitably flat and level.

Figure 9: Floor edges

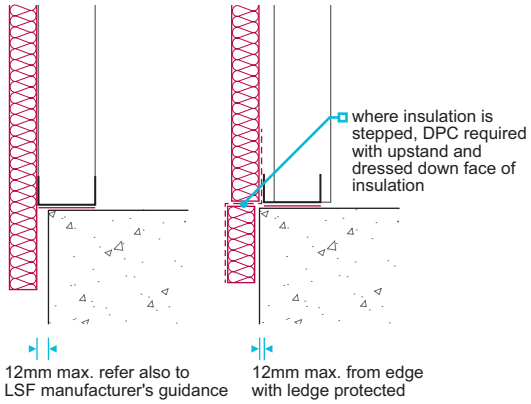


Table 5: Acceptable methods of packing under frames

Gap under base rail	Acceptable packing
Less than 10mm	Provide shims under each stud position
10-20mm	Provide shims under each stud position, and grout under the whole length of the base rail with cement: sand mortar
More than 20mm	Obtain advice from the frame designer/manufacturer. Remedial work to the substructure may be required before erection commences

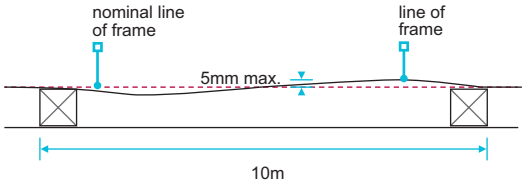
Shims should be of pre-galvanised steel (the galvanised coating being at least equivalent to that of the member/s being packed) or other suitable material, ie, not timber or plastic.

Wall frames should be checked to ensure that they are dimensionally accurate before erection commences.

LSF should be correctly positioned, square and plumb, and within the following tolerances:

- the vertical position of members should be within +/-5mm per storey relative to the base
- the horizontal position of base rails should not vary in alignment by more than 5mm in 10m.

Figure 10: Correct positioning



Anchoring

The frame should be anchored to resist both lateral movement and uplift in accordance with the design, including bolt-down brackets where required.

Figure 11: Strap anchor example

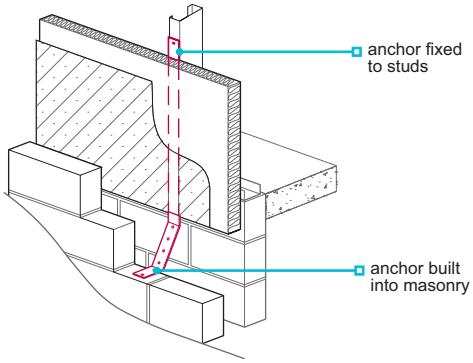
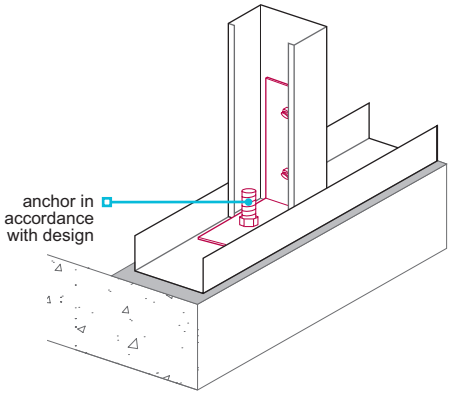


Figure 12: Bolt-down anchor example



Anchoring should ensure:

- that appropriate edge details are provided and minimum edge distances specified by the fixing supplier are maintained, to avoid spalling of masonry or concrete
- where fixings are into masonry, they are into solid concrete blocks with a minimum crushing strength of 7.3N/mm^2 and positioned to receive fixings.

Where the design incorporates gas membranes (methane or radon), fixings should not puncture them, but where this is unavoidable, the penetration should be sealed.

Accommodation of deflection

Infill walls should accommodate anticipated deflection within the primary frame in accordance with the structural design.

6.10.11 Interfaces with staircases

Also see: Chapter 6.4

Floors and walls shall be designed to accommodate installation of any staircases without compromising performance.

Wall linings should be continuous behind the string of staircases.

Fixing connections should be coordinated to ensure fire protection continuity and structural adequacy.

6.10.12 Fixing floor decking and ceilings

Floor decking and ceilings shall be adequately fixed using a material of adequate strength and moisture resistance.

Joist spacing and decking thickness should be compatible. Material standards and minimum board thicknesses for domestic loads (imposed load of 1.5kN/m^2) are shown in Table 6.

Table 6: Joist spacing and decking type

Material	Standard	Minimum thickness of decking (mm)	
		400mm joist centres	600mm joist centres
Chipboard	BS EN 312 moisture-resistant type P5	18	22
Plywood	BS EN 636	15	18
Oriented strand board type OSB3	BS EN 300	15	18
Other materials	In accordance with Technical Requirement R3		

In England and Wales, the thicknesses listed above may not achieve the 15 kg/m^2 mass required to meet sound insulation requirements.

Flooring should be fixed at maximum 300mm centres using self-tapping screws or fixings approved by the LSF manufacturer and in accordance with Chapter 6.4 'Timber and concrete upper floors'.

Plasterboard should be fixed in accordance with Chapter 9.2 'Wall and ceiling finishes', using self-drilling, self-tapping screws.

6.10.13 Other design issues

The home shall be designed to adequately address all critical performance issues.

The designer should ensure that all critical performance issues listed in Table 7 are appropriately addressed.

Table 7: Critical performance issues requiring the designer's consideration

Topic	Description
Behaviour in relation to fire	• compliance with Building Regulations • internal linings • fire stops and cavity barriers • penetrations
Acoustic performance	• compliance with Building Regulations
Moisture control, including thermal performance, condensation risk and water ingress	• type, thickness and location of insulation material • protection from water ingress at low levels • condensation risk analysis and management of water vapour in the structure
Wall construction	• acceptable claddings (see Chapter 6.9 'Curtain walling and cladding') • provision of cavity • type of wall ties • sheathing
Balconies, terraces and parapets	• specific design considerations: structural design, durability, weather-tightness

Guidance for some of the performance issues listed in Table 7 may be included in the Stage 1 certificate.

6.10.14 Behaviour in relation to fire

LSF walls and floors shall be in accordance with applicable Building Regulations.

Guidance within supporting documents to the Building Regulations should be fully considered in the design and construction of LSF walls, floors and roofs.

Detailing and specification of components should be in accordance with the steel frame manufacturer's recommendations and/or guidance from SCI (see guidance in P424 'Light steel framing in fire') and supported with representative test evidence to appropriate standards such as BS 476:21 or BS EN 1365:1 for load-bearing walls, BS 476:22 or BS EN 1364:1 for infill walls and BS EN 1365:2 for floors.

The performance of specific details should be taken into account, including:

- fire protection to the structure around openings
- detailing of cavity barriers, including moisture protection to the barrier
- detailing around service penetrations
- compartmentation including interfaces with fire doors.

6.10.15 Acoustic performance

LSF walls and floors shall have adequate resistance to the passage of sound.

Internal walls and floors should be in accordance with relevant Building Regulations.

Separating walls

Separating walls should be in accordance with the design. Care should be taken to avoid gaps:

- between mineral wool quilt or batts
- between internal lining board layers
- between cavity barriers
- around openings for services.

Separating floors

The floating part of a floor should be separated from the main structure and surrounding walls by a resilient layer. Where boards are laid loose over insulation without battens, joints should be glued.

6.10.16 Moisture control

The structure shall be adequately protected from the effects of moisture. Details for LSF at low level shall fully consider the durability of materials, protection of the building from moisture ingress and thermal bridging. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) cavities in external walls
b) protection of steel at low level
c) DPCs, DPMs and cavity trays.

Cavities in external walls

A clear cavity in accordance with Table 8 should be provided between the cladding and insulation.

Table 8: Minimum cavity widths

Cladding	Cavity width
Masonry	50mm
Render on board background	25mm
Vertical tile hanging(1) where a breather membrane is provided and fixed to the sheathing	Dependent on batten support layout and spacing(1)
Other cladding(1)	15mm

Notes
1 See Chapter 6.9 ‘Curtain walling and cladding’.

The cavity should:

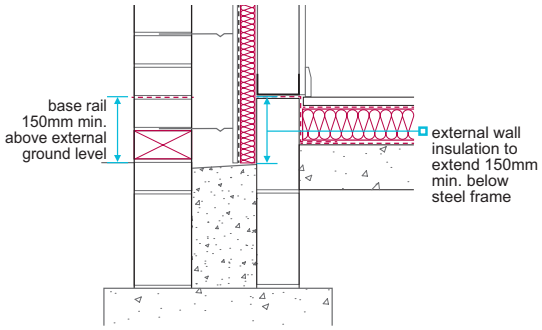
- extend at least 150mm below the DPC
- be kept clear to allow drainage
- be provided with weepholes or other suitable means of drainage.

Protection of steel at low level

The base rail of LSF should be kept a minimum of 150mm above the external ground level (or waterproofing layer of a flat roof, balcony or terrace) and cavity fill. In such cases, the LSF may be protected against corrosion in accordance with Cl. 6.10.7

Locally raised ground levels (up to the internal floor finish) to less than 15% of the external perimeter (of an individual building, eg row of terraced homes, apartment blocks and detached garages, measured on plan) to accommodate level thresholds can be accepted. The cavity should be kept clear and allow drainage. Wall insulation should overlap the base rail by a minimum of 150mm.

Figure 13: Ground level interface



Alternatively, where the base rail or lowest steel is less than 150mm above ground level (or waterproofing layer of a flat roof, balcony or terrace), the design should consider the following:

- factory-applied protection to the steel frame to achieve a design life of 60 years. This may be LSF:
  – Galvanised to 600g/m^2, or
  – Galvanised to 275g/m^2 with the addition of two coats of heavy duty bituminous paint, 200µm total thickness
- sheathing, or backing boards to waterproofing, used below 150mm, should be service class 3 in accordance with BS EN 13986
- drainage of the cavity (ground conditions should be considered where the cavity discharges below ground level)
- insulation to limit thermal bridging and interstitial condensation. NHBC may ask for thermal modelling of the junction to demonstrate that these issues have been sufficiently limited.

Where levels are raised above the base rail or lowest steel:

- local areas of LSF walls (less than 15% of the external perimeter) retaining up to a maximum of 600mm of ground can be acceptable, subject to appropriate waterproofing design
- in addition, where more than 15% of the external perimeter has ground levels above the internal floor finish (up to a maximum of 600mm), the structure should be designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

Waterproofing should be designed by a waterproofing design specialist and be in accordance with Chapter 5.4 ‘Waterproofing of basements and other below ground structures’.

The manufacturer of the waterproofing system should confirm compatibility between the waterproofing and sheathing board, which should be supported by test evidence.

DPCs, DPMs and cavity trays

DPCs, DPMs and cavity trays should:

- be provided at openings to prevent rain penetration
- be installed underneath the full width of the base rail and lap with the DPM where present.

Materials acceptable for use as DPCs include:

- BS 6515 polyethylene
- BS 6398 bitumen
- materials assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

6.10.17 Insulation

Also see: BRE Report ‘Thermal insulation:avoiding risks’

Insulation shall be correctly installed, be of a suitable material and thickness to comply with Building Regulations and reduce the risk of interstitial condensation.

Insulation should:

- be inert, durable, rot and vermin proof, and should not be adversely affected by moisture or vapour
- cover the whole external face of the wall and be complete within the frame
- extend 150mm below the base rail to minimise thermal bridging and maintain a warm frame
- be tightly butted with joints of rigid board insulation taped, where required by the design.

Foil-faced insulation boards with an integral facing on one side only should be fixed with the foil face on the cavity side.

Table 9: Acceptable insulation materials

Material	Relevant standard
Mineral wool	BS EN 13162
Flame retardant (FR) grade expanded polystyrene	BS EN 13163
FR grade extruded polystyrene	BS EN 13164
Rigid polyurethane foam and polyisocyanurate	BS EN 13165
Phenolic foam	BS EN 13166
Cellular glass	BS EN 13167
Other insulation materials	Technical Requirement R3

Account should be taken of Accredited Construction Details where applicable.

Reference should be made to BRE document BR 135 ‘Fire performance of external thermal insulation for walls of multi-storey buildings’ when specifying the type of insulation system to be installed.

6.10.18 Air and vapour control layers

Air and vapour control layers (AVCLs) shall restrict the passage of vapour from within the home to the steel frame and be correctly installed.

An AVCL should be provided, unless a condensation risk analysis shows it is not necessary. An analysis in accordance with BS EN ISO 13788 (Glaser method), using the following boundary conditions, will generally be acceptable:

- >60% internal RH
- at 21ºC internally
- at -2ºC externally.

Split layers of AVCL-type material should be avoided, except where condensation risk analysis shows it to be acceptable.

Where they are provided, AVCLs should be:

- 500g polyethylene sheet, vapour control plasterboard, or material assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3
- fixed on the warm side of the wall insulation and frame
- in accordance with the design
- placed to cover the external wall, including base rails, head rails, studs, lintels and window reveals
- overlapping the base rail
- fully sealed and punctures made good.

Where polyethylene sheet is used:

- each joint in the AVCL should be located on studs or noggings and lapped by a minimum of 100mm
- double-sided tape or adhesive should be used as a temporary fixing before the wall board is fixed.

Where vapour control plasterboard is used:

- joints between sheets should be positioned on studs or noggings
- care should be taken not to displace the vapour control material when cutting vapour control plasterboard.

6.10.19 Breather membranes

Breather membranes shall be capable of allowing vapour to pass into the cavity, and provided to protect the sheathing and frame from external moisture.

Breather membranes should be:

- vapour resistant to less than 0.6MNs/g (0.12 Sd) when tested in accordance with BS EN ISO 12572 using the set of conditions C and using five test specimens
- capable of resisting water penetration
- self-extinguishing
- durable
- installed so that each joint is protected and moisture drains outwards
- lapped to a minimum of 100mm at horizontal joints and a minimum of 150mm at vertical joints
- At least Class W2 to BS EN 13859-2 with no water leakage during testing. In areas of very severe exposure (see Clause 6.1.6 for classification of exposure zones) or where liquid water penetration of the cladding is anticipated, for example open-jointed cladding, Class W1 should be used. When open-jointed claddings are used or the membrane likely to be left exposed during construction for a duration longer than normally to be expected (also see the membrane manufacturers recommendations on exposure times), performance should be based on artificial aged behaviour in accordance with BS EN 13859-2. Where a vented and ventilated cavity with full rainscreen and no gaps, for example masonry or rendered board claddings, are used, performance should be based on artificial aged behaviour in accordance with BS EN 13111.

Breathable membranes should be used to protect sheathing board and insulation. Breather membranes may be omitted where water resistant insulation boards with taped joints are used. Tape should be of a type recommended by the insulation manufacturer, breathable to allow water vapour to move freely and resist water penetration. Suitable taping should be applied at the lintel interfaces and other penetrations to direct water outside.

6.10.20 Cladding, lining and sheathing boards

Cladding panels, lining and sheathing boards shall be suitable for their intended purpose. Issues to be taken into account include:

a) external cladding
b) sheathing
c) internal lining boards.

External cladding

The design and construction of the external walls should fully consider:

- cavity drainage
- differential movement
- restraint
- fire resistance.

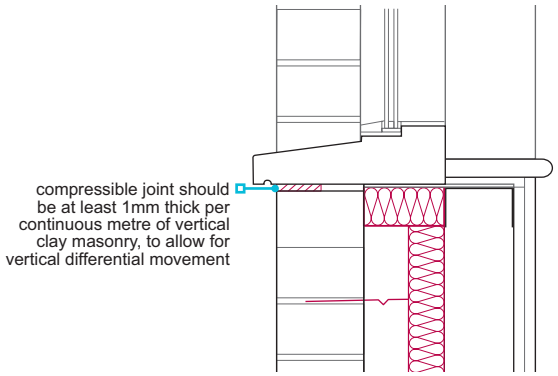
In external walls, a clear cavity should be provided between the external insulation and the cladding. The cavity should:

- be drained
- have cavity trays and weepholes installed where the cavity is not fully maintained, eg at cavity barriers
- be kept clean, free of obstructions and capable of draining freely
- have drainage at its base, equivalent to 500mm^2/m run, eg for masonry, one open perpend every 1.5m
- have drainage openings placed to prevent the ingress of rain.

Masonry cladding should:

- be constructed in accordance with Chapter 6.1 'External masonry walls'
- not be supported by the LSF walls unless designed in accordance with Technical Requirement R5
- be tied to the LSF walls with flexible wall ties fixed through to the studs
- include movement joints as appropriate (eg a 1mm gap per continuous metre of vertical clay masonry should be provided at openings and soffits) to allow for differential movement due to thermal expansion, shrinkage (in concrete masonry) and moisture expansion (in clay) in accordance with PD 6697. The brick/block manufacturer's advice should be sought on the level of movement to be expected.

Figure 14: Allowing for differential movement



Lightweight cladding should be:

- in accordance with Chapter 6.9 'Curtain walling and cladding'
- compatible with the LSF system construction
- supported by systems assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3 which ensure that cladding design loads are effectively transferred to the building structure.

Sheathing

Sheathing boards should be:

- of a suitable strength and quality
- compatible with the steel frame
- attached using suitable quality fixings.

Sheathing boards contribute to meeting many of the critical performance issues described in Table 7 and cannot be easily replaced, so they should be specified in accordance with the design life of the building.

Sheathing boards should be appropriate for the exposure of the building and suitable for use in humid conditions.

Table 10: Requirements for sheathing board materials

Material	Relevant standards	Minimum thickness (mm)
Cement bonded particle board	BS EN 13986 BS EN 634 BS EN 12467	By design
Oriented strand board (OSB3 required)	BS EN 300	8.0
Plywood	BS EN 13986 BS EN 636	5.5
Proprietary materials	Technical Requirement R3	Technical Requirement R3

Fixings used to apply sheathing boards should be selected in accordance with the board manufacturer's instructions and be suitably specified for strength and long-term durability in the anticipated exposure condition.

Sheathing boards should be adequately protected from weather during construction. This can be done through a combination of:

- the use of water resistant boards with accredited proof of performance in accordance with Technical Requirement R3
- the use of sealed jointed water resistant insulation to reduce water penetration
- the application of a breathable membrane to the sheathing board
- sequencing construction to minimise daily exposure with fully waterproof temporary coverings overnight and during inclement weather.

For all sheathing board types, junctions between adjacent boards, and at interfaces with other building elements, should be sealed and/or taped in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

A breather membrane should be used to provide protection to the building during and after construction in areas of very severe exposure to wind-driven rain.

Internal lining boards

Internal lining boards should be:

- fixed in accordance with the design and the manufacturer's recommendations
- attached to light steel studs using self-drilling, self-tapping screws at a maximum of 300mm centres.

In addition to the general guidance for internal lining boards, plasterboard should:

- be shown to provide adequate fire resistance where required
- comply with BS EN 520 and be in accordance with Chapter 9.2 'Wall and ceiling finishes'
- be a minimum of 9.5mm for stud spacing up to 450mm
- be a minimum of 12.5mm for stud spacing up to 600mm.

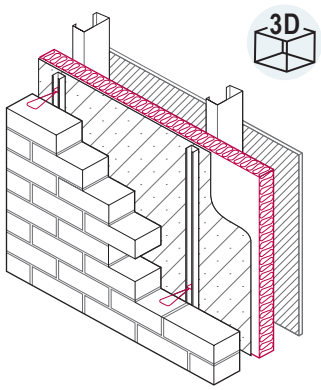
6.10.21 Wall ties

Wall ties shall be suitable to connect the steel frame to the cladding.

Generally, wall ties should be:

- in accordance with BS 845-1
- fixed to the studs and not the sheathing
- inclined away from the LSF
- austenitic stainless steel and of a type which accommodates the differential movement between the LSF and the cladding, or assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Figure 15: Providing wall ties



Wall ties for masonry cladding should be according to the design and:

- installed at a minimum density of 3.7 ties/m^2, eg spaced at a maximum of 600mm horizontally and 450mm vertically (except where alternative densities have been demonstrated by building specific calculation and accepted under the Stage 2 certificate)
- spaced at jambs of openings, a maximum of 300mm vertically within 225mm of the masonry reveal (additional studs may be needed to achieve this)
- kept clean and free from mortar droppings.

6.10.22 Services

Services shall be adequately protected from damage.

Service mains and service outlets should be:

- designed to ensure the fire resistance of walls and floors is not impaired
- designed to ensure that the required sound insulation of walls and floors is maintained
- installed in accordance with the design
- on the warm side of the insulation.

Light steel joists or studs should not be notched to accommodate services. Holing of structural light steel members should be carried out in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's recommendations. On-site hole cutting should be avoided, as badly cut edges can have an adverse effect on the durability of the frame and may cause damage to pipes and cables.

Where on-site adaptation of the frame is unavoidable, it should be undertaken by the manufacturer, with prior notification to NHBC, and completed in line with the steel frame designer's remedial details with all cut edges treated and badly cut edges avoided. Significant adaptations should be overseen by the design engineer.

Grommets should be used around the edge of service holes to protect electrical cables and reduce the risk of bimetallic corrosion between the LSF and copper pipes. Swaged holes for electric cables and plastic piping do not require grommets.

In Scotland, services are not permitted within:

- framed separating walls
- separating wall cavities.

6.10.23 Further information

- *The Steel Construction Institute (SCI) publications, Silwood Park, Ascot, Berkshire, SL5 7QN*
  SCI publications:
  - Building design using cold formed steel sections:construction detailing and practice (P165)
  - Modular construction using light steel framing: design of residential buildings (P302)
  - Light steel framing in residential construction (P402)
  - Design and installation of light steel external wall systems (ED017)

Figure reference table

Figure reference table 6.10

Fig No	Title/Description	Clause	Page
Figure 1	Joist bearing onto structure with stiffener	6.10.4	3
Figure 2	Web cleat connection	6.10.4	3
Figure 3	Bolted web to web connection	6.10.4	3
Figure 4	Lintel arrangement	6.10.4	5
Figure 5	Holes and notches	6.10.7	7
Figure 6	Web stiffeners for continuous joists over load-bearing intermediate wall	6.10.8	8
Figure 7	Joists overlapping on load-bearing intermediate wall	6.10.8	8
Figure 8	Floor bracing examples	6.10.8	8
Figure 9	Floor edges	6.10.10	9
Figure 10	Correct positioning	6.10.10	10
Figure 11	Strap anchor example	6.10.10	10
Figure 12	Bolt-down anchor example	6.10.10	10
Figure 13	Ground level interface	6.10.16	12
Figure 14	Allowing for differential movement	6.10.20	15
Figure 15	Providing wall ties	6.10.21	16

Chapter

6.11

Render

This chapter gives guidance on meeting the Technical Requirements for factory-made and traditional render applied to external walls and render onto board backgrounds.

Render intended for below ground waterproofing is outside the scope of this chapter (see Chapter 5.4 'Waterproofing of basements and other below ground structures'). Chapter 6.9 'Curtain walling and cladding' contains guidance for insulated render systems.

For figure reference tables, please go to the end of each chapter.

Introduction

This chapter is arranged in sections covering:

- **site and factory-made render**
- **render onto board backgrounds**
- **detailing.**

Definitions for this chapter

Background	The surface to which the render is applied
Base coat	The first render coat
Cured	The finished render state when all chemical reactions have taken place
Decorative finishes	An aesthetic finish not generally contributing to weathertightness
Dry dash	Aggregate applied to finish the render
Factory-made	Render mortar arriving on site premixed, generally including admixtures and colouring, and either ready to use or requiring only the addition of water
Final coat	The last render coat
Movement joint	A joint designed to accommodate predicted movement in the background or render
Preparation coat	An application to provide an appropriate key or bond, including a spatterdash or stipple coat
Proprietary render systems	Renders and their specified backgrounds with proven compatibility, which fall outside the guidance given for site and factory-made renders
Ribbed metal lathing	Metal lathing that can be used as a carrier for render
Site-made	Renders made on site to recognised designated or prescribed mix proportions
Structure	Structural elements of the building providing support to the render or proprietary render system
Substrate	The wall composition which offers support to the background intended to be rendered (the substrate and background may sometimes be the same)
Undercoat	The coats preceding the final coat
Wet dash	A traditional render consisting of aggregate bound in slurry applied to the undercoat prior to setting

6.11.1 Compliance

Also see: BS EN 13914-1 and BS 8000-0

Render, including site-made, factory-made and render onto board backgrounds shall comply with the Technical Requirements.

Render that complies with the guidance in this chapter will generally be acceptable.

6.11.2 Provision of information

Designs and specifications shall be produced in a clearly understandable format, include all relevant information, and be distributed to all appropriate personnel.

Design and specifications should be issued to site supervisors, relevant specialist subcontractors and/or suppliers and, where relevant, include the following:

- a full set of drawings indicating areas to be rendered, and construction details, eg the position of movement joints and how interfaces are formed
- the render manufacturer's technical information, including parts of the system design manual or installation guidance relevant to the specific site and construction type
- mix proportions for site-made render
- details of the substrate and background
- details of any technical assessments (ie, third-party certifications)
- details of interfaces and abutments, such as joints, junctions, and service penetrations
- ancillaries that form part of a rendering system.

Table 1: Process chart for the application of site and factory-made render to masonry backgrounds

Process	Steps	See clause
Structure design	Identify a suitable background material compatible with the intended render finish and consider any preparation requirements	6.11.4
	↓	
	Consider how movement will be controlled, ie, are movement joints or bed joint reinforcement needed?	6.11.5
Render design	↓	
	Select an appropriate render strength that is compatible with the background	6.11.6
	↓	
	Determine the exposure zone which will influence the render's thickness	6.11.6
	↓	
Construction	Protect the background from adverse weather conditions at the earliest opportunity during and following construction	6.11.3
	↓	
	Assess the likely weather conditions prior to and after rendering	6.11.3
	↓	
	Assess the background, eg suction and surface preparation, and apply a preparation coat where necessary	6.11.4
	↓	
	Protect the completed render as it cures	6.11.3

6.11.3 Weather conditions

Rendering shall only be carried out in suitable weather conditions unless appropriate precautions are taken.

Consideration should be given to likely weather conditions and, where required, measures taken to allow render to cure satisfactorily.

When applying render in wet conditions:

- the background should not be saturated
- downpipes or temporary downpipes should be used to prevent the background or completed render from becoming saturated
- curing render should be protected from heavy rainfall
- specialist preparation coats should be used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

When applying render in hot conditions the following precautions should be considered:

- avoid curing render from being directly exposed to strong sunlight
- lightly spray the render with clean water to prevent rapid drying.

When applying render in cold conditions:

- the air temperature should be at least 2°C and rising
- the background should be free from visual signs of frost
- the background should not be saturated.

Where the air temperature is at, below or likely to fall below 5°C, appropriate precautions such as covering with a hessian sheet should be used to protect curing render.

Factory-made render should be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for weather conditions.

Acrylic renders have different curing requirements which should be considered.

6.11.4 Backgrounds

Backgrounds shall be appropriate for their intended purpose and suitably prepared to receive render. Issues to be considered include:

a) preparation of masonry backgrounds
b) preparation of clay brick backgrounds
c) ribbed metal lath.

Preparation of masonry backgrounds

Masonry backgrounds should be constructed in accordance with Chapter 6.1 'External masonry walls' and include DPCs and cavity trays. The thickness of single-leaf masonry walls should be in accordance with PD 6697.

The surface to be rendered should be free from dust, loose particles, efflorescence, and organic growth, and, where applicable, be prepared in accordance with the render manufacturer's recommendations.

Masonry backgrounds with a smooth surface or close texture should be treated to provide an adequate key by either applying:

- lath, or
- a spatterdash or stipple coat.

The suction of the block should be appropriate for rendering. High or low suction will generally require a preparatory coat. The likely suction of the block can be gauged by applying a small quantity of water to the surface and observing the effects:

- water being absorbed instantly is an indication of high suction
- water running from the surface with little absorption suggests the background has low suction.

A spatterdash coat typically comprises cement and sand at a ratio of 1:3 mixed with water and often a bonding agent, such as styrene butadiene rubber (SBR) or ethylene vinyl acetate (EVA). The mix should be applied by dashing onto the background to give a rough texture approximately 3-7mm thick.

Generally, raking out mortar joints to blockwork will not sufficiently improve the key, and may extend the curing time of the base coat.

Preparation of clay brick backgrounds

The brick manufacturer's recommendations for rendering should be followed.

Where S1 bricks are used, the render mix should resist sulfate.

To provide an appropriate bond, clay brick backgrounds with a water absorption rate of between 9% and 15% should generally have sufficient suction to provide a mechanical key. Alternatively, when rendering onto bricks, one or more of the following methods of improving the key can be adopted:

- keyed bricks used
- a spatterdash coat applied
- mortar joints raked out to a depth of 10-12mm (although this may increase curing time).

Render on an external leaf of clay bricks (F2,S1 or F1,S1 designation bricks to BS EN 771) in severe or very severe exposures is not permitted where the cavity is to be fully filled with insulation.

Ribbed metal lath

Ribbed metal lath should be:

- fixed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- supported at 350mm and up to 600mm centres for stiffer metal profiles
- fixed with the correct side to be rendered facing out
- fixed with a 25mm drained and vented cavity when applied to framed structures
- austenitic stainless steel to BS EN 10088-1.

Render onto ribbed metal lath can be vulnerable to damage where impact is likely to occur, such as beside communal paths. Appropriate reinforcement may be used to help improve the render's impact resistance.

6.11.5 Accommodation of movement

Also see: PD 6697

Rendered walls shall be detailed to reduce the risk of damage due to movement in the background. Issues to be considered include:

a) movement in masonry background
b) dissimilar materials
c) movement in ribbed metal lath render.

The construction should include appropriate measures to reduce the risk of damage to the render caused by movement in the background, such as shrinkage, thermal or differential movement. The designer should follow the guidance in this chapter, together with the render/background manufacturer's recommendations. Alternatively, provision for movement should be designed by an engineer in accordance with Technical Requirement R5.

Areas of the building to be rendered should be identified prior to construction, and movement control considered as part of the design.

Movement in masonry background

Render and masonry backgrounds should be detailed to reduce the likelihood of cracking and crazing in the render. Issues to be considered include:

- the potential for movement in the background and render
- size, quantity, and positioning of openings
- compatibility with the background
- density of the masonry
- the size and geometry of rendered panels
- the orientation of the building
- thermal shock
- moisture content of the materials
- exposure conditions.

Where length/height ratios are greater than 3:1, consideration should be given to providing suitably designed:

- movement joints, or
- bed joint reinforcement.

Where movement joints are provided, they should:

- be continued through the background and render (including any horizontal beads)
- be made weathertight with an appropriate sealant
- not align with openings such as windows, doors, or meter boxes.

Austenitic stainless steel bed joint reinforcement conforming to BS EN 845-3 should be provided in the first two courses of the external masonry leaf above and below any opening to help distribute tensile stress and avoid localised cracking. Where possible, the reinforcement should project 600mm beyond the opening.

Figure 1: Typical movement joint

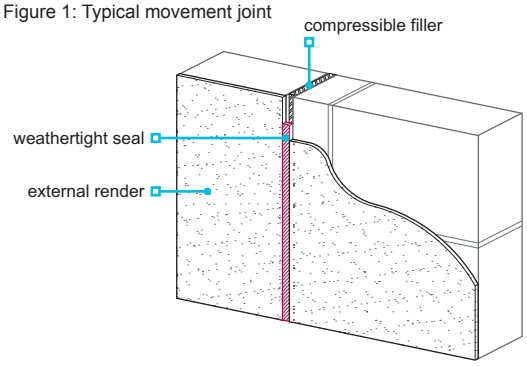


Table 2: Concrete block categorisation

Category	Compressive strength of the blockwork	Dry density
Low density aircrete	2.9-3.6N/mm^2	<500kg/m^3
Normal density aircrete	3.6-9.0N/mm^2	500kg/m^3+
Ultra lightweight aggregate	3.6-7.3N/mm^2	<950kg/m^3
Lightweight aggregate	3.6-7.3N/mm^2	950-1500 kg/m^3
Dense aggregate	7.3N/mm^2+	1,500kg/m^3+

Table 3: Preparation of blockwork backgrounds(1)

Category	Normal movement joint spacing	Maximum distance of joint from restrained end, ie, corners	Suction control
Low density aircrete	Specialist advice required(2)		
Normal density aircrete	6m	3m (half normal spacing)	Yes
Ultra lightweight aggregate	6m	3m (half normal spacing)	Not generally required
Lightweight aggregate	6m	Half normal spacing	Not generally required
Dense aggregate	7.5 - 9m(3)	Half normal spacing	Not generally required

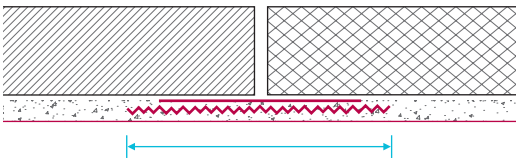
Notes:
1 The guidance in this table is generally acceptable for render coats in accordance with Table 5 and factory-made one-coat render based on 1:1:6 mix = 3.5N/mm².
2 Specialist advice from the block and render manufacturer should be sought.
3 Specialist advice should be sought where clay brick backgrounds are used.

Dissimilar materials

Backgrounds should not be constructed from materials of different densities. Where possible, render should not be continuous across dissimilar materials. Where this cannot be avoided the render should:

- be stopped at appropriately formed movement joints, or
- have austenitic stainless steel lath reinforcement carried across the joint with a separation strip, such as building paper, behind.

Figure 2: Metal lath reinforcement and separation strip (min. 300mm)



Where significant differential movement is likely to occur, such as the junction between masonry and board backgrounds, render should be stopped either side of an appropriately formed joint.

Movement in ribbed metal lath render

To avoid cracking, ribbed metal lath backgrounds should be divided with movement joints into bays no more than 5m wide and:

- site-made render should be applied in three coats
- factory-made render should be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

6.11.6 Mixes

Also see: Chapter 6.1

The render mix shall be appropriate for the intended purpose, be compatible with the background and be designed to minimise the risk of de-bonding, cracking, and crazing. Issues to be considered include:

a) sand
b) mix design
c) admixtures and bonding agents
d) coat thickness of site-made render
e) application of site-made render
f) factory-made renders
g) lime.

Render coats should not be stronger than the background or any previous coat to which they are applied. Weaker coats can be achieved by reducing the cement content of each coat or by using the same mix but decreasing the coat thickness.

Potable water should be used for mixing render.

Sand

Sand for render should be well-graded category 2, in accordance with BS EN 13139. Sand with excessive fine material, clay or silt can shrink and crack so should be avoided.

A sharp gritty or coarse sand is required for strength in the backing coats, but finer sand should be used for the finishing coat.

Typical sand grades should be:

- 5mm down to 0.075mm – undercoat(s)
- 1.18mm down to 0.075mm – final coat.

Mix design

Designation ii, iii and iv (strength class M6, M4 and M2) mixes are generally used for rendering.

Stronger mixes are generally more moisture resistant; however, they are also more prone to shrinkage, which increases the likelihood of the render cracking. Weaker mixes may be appropriate for weaker backgrounds in less exposed zones.

For exposure zone classification, see Clause 6.1.6.

Table 4: Designation mix proportions for cement-based mixes

	Mix designation	Mortar compressive strength class equivalent	Mix proportions by volume based on damp sand				
			Cement:lime: sand	Cement:ready-mixed lime/sand[1]		Cement:sand[1] (using plasticiser)	Masonry cement:sand[1]
				Ready-mixed lime:sand	Cement: ready-mixed material		
Weaker – stronger	i	M12	1:¼:3	1:12	1:3	-	-
	ii	M6	1:½:4 - 4½	1:9	1:4 - 4½	1:3 - 4	1:2½ - 3½
	iii	M4	1:1:5 - 6	1:6	1:5 - 6	1:5 - 6	1:4 - 5
	iv	M2	1:2:8 - 9	1:4½	1:8 - 9	1:7 - 8	1:5½ - 6½
	v	-	1:3:10 - 12	1:4	1:10 - 12	-	-

Notes:
1 With fine or poorly graded sands, the lower volume of sand should be used.
2 Where soluble salts could be present in the background, mixes should have sulfate-resisting properties.
3 Where pigments are specified, batching should be undertaken with care to ensure colour consistency pigments to BS EN 12878 can be used but should not exceed 10% of the cement weight, or 3% where carbon black is used (white Portland cement may be used).

Render mixes should be:

- in accordance with BS EN 13914 'Design, preparation and application of external rendering and internal plastering'
- appropriate to the strength of the background
- checked against the specification
- of adequate strength and thickness to achieve durability.

Where enhanced water-resisting properties are required:

- Portland cement with a waterproofing agent already incorporated may be used in the undercoat, or
- a waterproofing agent should be added to the render mix in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Rendering mortar should not be left turning over in the mixer for longer than necessary.

Admixtures and bonding agents

Admixtures and bonding agents should:

- be assessed in accordance with Technical Requirement R3
- be used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- be compatible with the render
- not be used with factory-made renders without the prior approval of the render manufacturer.

The effect on the adhesion of subsequent render coats should be considered when water-repelling agents are used.

Plasticisers and air entrainers should comply with BS EN 934 and not be used in mortars containing masonry cement.

Coat thickness of site-made render

The number of coats should be designed to take account of the background and exposure conditions of the site.

The mix and its application should be suitable for the specific background. Items to consider include:

- the number and thickness of coats
- the strength of the coat (subsequent coats should be weaker than the background or the previous coat).

Render should have a nominal total finished thickness of not less than:

- 16mm for sheltered and moderate exposure zones, or
- 20mm for severe and very severe exposure zones.

Table 5: Site-made render designation and typical thickness

	Typical two-coat application
Normal density aircrete	
Undercoat	8-12mm designation iii (M4)
Final coat	6-8mm designation iv (M2)(1)
Ultra lightweight and lightweight aggregate blockwork	
Undercoat	8-12mm designation iii (M4)
Final coat	6-8mm designation iv (M2)(1)
Dense aggregate blockwork	
Undercoat	8-12mm designation ii (M6)
Final coat	6-8mm designation iii (M4)
Clay brick	
Undercoat	8-12mm designation ii (M6)
Final coat	6-8mm designation iii (M4)
Ribbed metal lath	
First coat	8-12mm designation i (M12)
Undercoat	10-12mm designation ii (M6)
Final coat	6-8mm designation ii (M4)

Notes:
1 Designation iii (M4) should be used for the final coat in severe or very severe exposure zones.
2 For block classifications, see Table 2.
3 Specialist advice should be sought for low density aircrete backgrounds.

Where a three-coat render is used, this should include a second undercoat that is:

- the same thickness but a slightly weaker mix than the first undercoat, or
- a slightly thinner coat of the same strength mix.

Application of site-made render

When applying render, previous coats should be allowed to cure before applying the next coat (typically three to four days).

To avoid surface crazing:

- properly graded sand should be used with limits on fine sand proportions
- overworking (polishing) of the render should be avoided, as this causes laitance to be drawn to the surface.

Surfaces should be appropriately prepared to receive following coats. This can be achieved by either combing or scratching. The final coat should be applied to an undercoat that is suitably keyed.

The size of the background to be rendered should be assessed to determine if it can be rendered in the time available. This will help to establish the most suitable location for day joints.

The final coat should be of uniform thickness and not used to even out irregularities, which should be accommodated in previous coats.

Factory-made renders

Factory-made renders should be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, including those for ancillary components.

Factory-made renders with a declared mix in accordance with Table 4, applied to the thickness recommended in Table 6, and that otherwise comply with the recommendations for site-made renders, will generally be acceptable to NHBC.

Table 6: Minimum thickness of factory-made single-coat renders

Background	Sheltered and moderate exposure zone	Severe and very severe exposure zone
Single-leaf masonry wall	20mm	In accordance with the render manufacturer's recommendations.
Masonry cavity wall partially filled	15mm	
Masonry cavity wall fully filled	20mm	
Lath(1)	15mm	

Notes:
1 Lath backgrounds generally require two coats.
2 Alternative single-coat thicknesses may be acceptable when accompanied by appropriate third-party assessment in accordance with Technical Requirement R3.

Lime

Render mixes containing hydrated lime can improve the ability of the render to accommodate movement, improving resistance to cracking and crazing. The use of lime should be in accordance with BS EN 459.

Natural hydraulic lime (NHL) is used without cement, which can allow greater moisture vapour movement through the structure. Specialist advice may be required for the use of NHL render.

6.11.7 Detailing

Rendering shall be detailed to ensure appropriate weathertightness and durability. Issues to be considered include:

a) copings, cappings and sills
b) abutments and interfaces
c) weepholes
d) detailing at openings
e) exposed elements
f) ancillary items
g) render below the DPC
h) resistance to sulfate attack.

Copings, cappings or sills

Render should be protected from damage by copings, cappings or sills made of a material of low permeability or with suitably detailed DPCs. A minimum 40mm projection with a throating or drip detail should be provided to all copings, cappings and sills.

Extending sills or sub-sills beyond window reveals can help to disperse water and prevent staining.

Figure 3: Detailing of copings to protect render

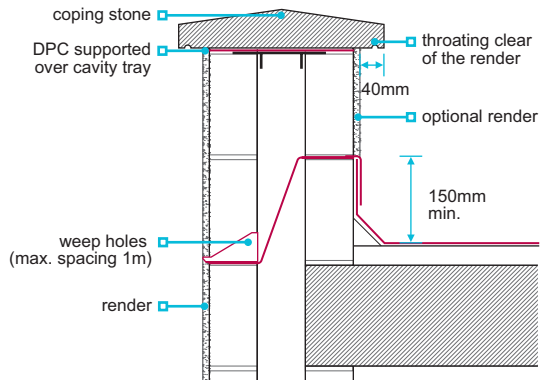
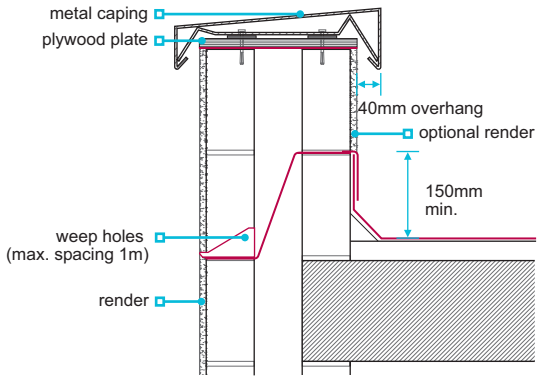


Figure 4: Detailing of capings to protect render



Abutments and interfaces

Where raked roof abutments occur against a rendered masonry wall, preformed cavity trays and appropriate flashings should be provided. Clauses 6.1.17 and 7.2.20 contain guidance for stepped cavity trays and flashings to masonry walls.

Cavity trays with stop ends are required above all openings. Where required a minimum of two weepholes per opening should be provided.

A site made or preformed cavity tray should be provided at horizontal abutments with weepholes at maximum 1m centres.

Render abutting exposed features, such as stone string courses or quoins, should be finish neatly without gaps.

Abutments between render and exposed masonry should be detailed to prevent moisture passing in behind the render or adversely affecting the building.

When rendering into window or door frames, the render should be stopped against a bead and sealed, or a bead of sealant applied between the frame and render.

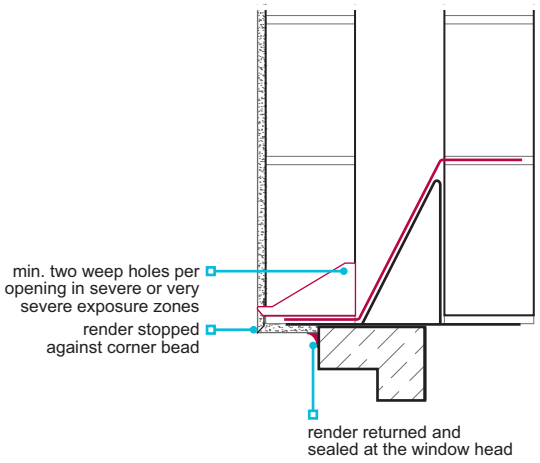
Weepholes

Weepholes should be provided:

- where required for ventilation to timber frame construction
- to cavity trays in parapet walls and horizontal roof abutments at not more than 1m centres
- to the last tray at stepped abutments
- in severe or very severe exposure zones where rendering is returned into the window or door head (weepholes are not required where the render is not returned).

To prevent staining, weepholes should be of a type which restricts the entry of wind-driven rain.

Figure 5: Provision of weepholes to window head



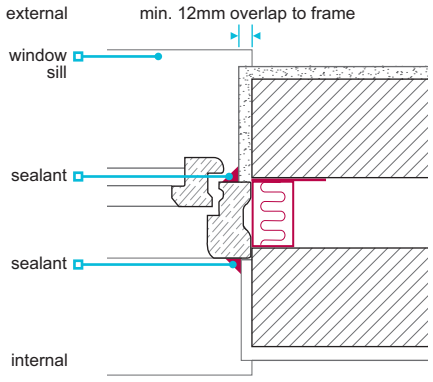
Detailing at openings

Design features around openings and at the head of the rendering should provide shelter and help shed water away from the surface below.

In areas of very severe exposure, and in Scotland, a check reveal should be provided at openings.

Proprietary render systems should be detailed at abutments in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Figure 6: Check reveal detail



Exposed elements

Render to exposed masonry elements, such as parapets, freestanding walls, pillars, retaining walls or chimneys, should be of a type appropriate for severe exposure conditions.

When rendering both sides of freestanding or parapet walls of single leaf construction, care should be taken to prevent damage caused by moisture becoming trapped. For example:

- the detailing should prevent the masonry from becoming saturated
- the wall should be protected from rain during construction
- rendering both sides of single leaf walls in areas of very severe exposure to frost attack should be avoided (see Clause 6.1.6c).

Bricks with S1 or S0 designation are not recommended for exposed elements that are to be rendered.

Ancillary items

Stop beads and render stops should be austenitic stainless steel or PVC. Long runs of steel beads and stops should be avoided due to their expansion potential.

Corner beads should have an appropriate projection to prevent thin tapering of the render which reduces its overall thickness.

Beads should be:

- adhesive-fixed using a material appropriate for external use and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, or
- mechanically fixed using suitably durable fixings.

Render below the DPC

To prevent damage caused by prolonged periods of wetting, it is preferable to stop the render at DPC level. Where rendering is continued below the DPC, the following precautions should be taken:

- for site-made render, use a stronger mix (M4) that is sulfate resisting, or
- factory-made render used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Consideration should be given to providing:

- appropriate drainage installed along the perimeter or ground falling away from the building
- adjacent surface finishes which do not promote splashing.

Admixtures may be required to enhance performance.

Resistance to sulfate attack

To prevent sulfate attack, the wall construction should restrict moisture from entering the background and having a detrimental effect on the performance of the render.

When detailing between the render and exposed brickwork, it is advisable to use appropriate materials resistant to, or without sources of, sulfate.

6.11.8 Render onto board backgrounds

Render onto board backgrounds shall be suitable for the intended use and detailed to provide satisfactory performance. Issues to be considered include:

a) provision of a system manual
b) compatibility between the render and background
c) fixing back to the structure
d) weather resistance
e) movement joints
f) board backgrounds.

Provision of a system manual

Where render is applied to a board background, the render manufacturer should clearly define the system in a manual, including:

- materials and components
- common details
- design guidance
- installation guidance.

The system should be used in full accordance with the manufacturer's guidance and third-party certification.

Compatibility between the render and background

The background should be appropriate for its intended use. Issues to be considered include:

- compatibility between the board and render
- durability classification of the board and its suitability for use in exterior conditions, including resistance to weather prior to the render being applied.

Render onto board backgrounds should:

- not be applied where the surface has contamination, dust or loose particles
- consider the effects of solar radiation (colour, orientation, and shading)
- be mixed to ensure colour consistency where coloured pigments are specified
- be specified and used with the appropriate ancillary items, such as trims to form corners and returns.

Boards should not be left exposed prior to rendering for longer than is necessary.

Fixing back to the structure

Board backgrounds should be fixed back to the structure in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and third-party certification.
The fixing design should consider:

- negative (suction) and positive (pressure) wind loads
- pull-out strength
- pull-through resistance
- anticipated movement
- self-weight.

A suitably qualified and experienced chartered engineer should check that an adequate number of fixings are used to attach the system.

Fixing battens and rails should be installed vertically and not block drainage paths. Timber battens should be suitably treated.

To reduce the risk of damage from impact, especially at low level, where people have access around balconies and where cradle systems etc can meet the façade, appropriate precautions such as closer supports should be considered.

Cavity barriers should be appropriately detailed to ensure satisfactory performance and:

- be provided in accordance with Building Regulations
- not block ventilation or drainage paths
- account for movement in the frame
- be used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Weather resistance

Timber and steel framed backing walls should be protected with breather membranes and have a minimum 25mm cavity.

Cavities to timber framed walls should be drained and vented, and cavities to steel framed walls should be drained.

Movement joints

Movement joints should be provided to accommodate movement in timber frame structures. Where board backgrounds are used, movement joints should be:

- formed in accordance with the system manufacturer's recommendations
- continued through the background board
- positioned to accommodate calculated deflection or movement
- provided at floor zones.

Board backgrounds

Board backgrounds to be rendered should be external grade and recommended for use in the render manufacturer's system manual and third-party certification.

Boards should be set out in accordance with the system manufacturer's recommendations, taking account of possible compression, deflection, and alignment of joints in relation to openings in the external wall, such as windows and doors.

The render should have alkali-resistant mesh embedded into the base coat across the whole surface.

Edges of boards should be suitably treated to provide protection from weather during construction and to maintain durability after the render is completed.

6.11.9 Finishes

Finishes shall be to a satisfactory standard. Issues to be considered include:

a) decorative finishes

b) appearance.

Decorative finishes

The choice of decorative finish should take account of:

- the exposure zone
- background movement potential.

Scraped or textured finishes can reduce the risk of crazing and can break up the drainage path of rainwater as it runs down the face of the wall.

Wet dash and dry dash finishes should have an aggregate size generally between 6mm and 14mm. Dry dash should be applied to the final coat before it has fully cured.

Appearance

Render on external walls should be reasonably consistent in texture, finish, colour, and line. Clause 9.1.2b provides further guidance on tolerances to render finishes.

Consideration should be given to detailing that will avoid obvious staining (eg the positioning of discharge pipes).

Completed render should be protected from damage that could be caused by construction activities.

Render may not be resistant to staining and may require periodic maintenance such as cleaning.

Figure reference table

Figure reference table 6.11

Fig No	Title/Description	Clause	Page
Figure 1	Typical movement joint	6.11.5	4
Figure 2	Metal lath reinforcement and separation strip (min. 300mm)	6.11.5	5
Figure 3	Detailing of copings to protect render	6.11.7	8
Figure 4	Detailing of capings to protect render	6.11.7	8
Figure 5	Provision of weepholes to window head	6.11.7	9
Figure 6	Check reveal detail	6.11.7	9

NHBC

Standards 2024

NHBC, NHBC House, Davy Avenue, Knowlhill, Milton Keynes, Bucks MK5 8FP

Effective from 01/24 V208b 01/24